

STATE LIBRARY OF PENNSYLVANIA



3 0144 00376060 0

S
CLASS 909

BOOK Sa34

VOLUME 6



PENNSYLVANIA
STATE LIBRARY



Modern History :
OR, THE
PRESENT STATE
Penn. State Library
ALL NATIONS.

DESCRIBING
Their respective Situations, Persons, Habits,
Buildings, Manners, Laws and Customs,
Religion and Policy, Arts and Sciences,
Trades, Manufactures and Husbandry, Plants,
Animals and Minerals.

By **Mr. S A L M O N.**

V O L. VI.

Containing, The Present State of the **R U S S I A N**, or
M U S C O V I T E Empire; and of the Kingdoms of
S W E D E N, **D E N M A R K**, and **N O R W A Y**: Treating
also of **G R E E N L A N D**, and other Countries near the
Pole; and shewing that *Greenland* is probably contiguous
both to *Asia* and *America*, and that there is Land and not
Sea about the Pole. It contains also some Account of the
Whale and Herring Fisheries; and shews the Advantage that
would accrue to *Britain* by the Encouragement of them.

Illustrated with **C U T S** and **M A P S**, accurately Drawn
according to the Geographical Part of this Work,
By **H E R M A N M O L L.**

The Second Edition.

L O N D O N :

Printed for **JAMES CROKATT**, at the *Golden-Key*,
near the *Inner-Temple-Gate*, in *Fleet-street*. 1728.

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTEN LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION

500 FIFTH AVENUE NEW YORK 17, N. Y.

1900

1901

1902

1903

1904

1905

1906

1907

1908

1909

1910



T H E
C O N T E N T S
O F T H E
Sixth V O L U M E.



The Present State of R U S S I A.

C H A P. I.

TREATS of the Situation and Extent of the Russian Empire; of the Air and Climate; and of the Seas, Lakes and Rivers with which it is Watered Page 1

C H A P. II.

Contains a Description of the Province of Samoieda, Mefleen, Dwina, Syrianes, Permia and Rubeninska 7

C H A P. III.

Contains a Description of the Provinces of Lapland, Finland, Carelia, and Ingria; giving a particular Account of the Capital City of Petersburgh, and Cronstot Island and Harbour; and of the Province of Livonia 11

C H A P. IV.

Treats of the Provinces of Great Novogorod, Belozero, Wologda, Jerislaw, Tweer, and Smolensko 29

C H A P. V.

Treats of the Province and City of Mosco, Roslow, Perislaw, Susdal, and Wolodimer 34

C H A P. VI.

Treats of the Provinces of Nise Novogorod, or Little Novogorod, Casan, Bulgar, Refan, Belgorod; the Territory of the Don Cossacks, the Land of Seefsk, Zernigof, and the Russian Ukrain 39

C H A P.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. VII.

Treats of the Stature, Complexion, Shape, and Habits of the Russians; of their Temper and Vices; of their Baths, Diet, Lodging, Diversions, Entertainments, and Ceremonies; and of their Posts, Roads, Carriages, and Manner of Travelling 44

CHAP. VIII.

Treats of the Nature of the Soil, their Husbandry and Gardening, and of their Plants, Animals, and Minerals; with some further Observations on the Air, Winds, and Seasons 66

CHAP. IX.

Treats of their Trade, Shipping, Navigation, Manufactures, and Coins 81

CHAP. X.

Treats of the Arms of Russia, of the Imperial Stile, the Prerogative of the Prince, the Constitution of the Government, Degrees of Nobility; and of the Forces and Revenues of the Empire 107

CHAP. XI.

Treats of the Civil Government, Laws, and Punishments of the Russians 144

CHAP. XII.

Treats of their Language, Characters, Learning, Chronology, Religion, Marriages, and Funerals 151

The Present State of SWEDEN.

CHAP. I.

Treats of the Situation and Extent of the Kingdom of Sweden, of the Air and Climate; and of its Seas, Lakes, and Rivers 162

CHAP. II.

Treats of the respective Provinces of Sweden; and of their chief Towns, Palaces, and publick Buildings; and of the Witchcraft and Magick with which the Laplanders are charg'd 164

CHAP. III.

Treats of the Persons and Habits of the Swedes; of their Genius and Temper, Diet, Exercises, Roads, and Way of Travelling 193

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. IV.

Treats of the Nature of the Soil ; and of their Plants and Animals 198

CHAP. V.

Treats of their Mines, Manufactures, Trade and Cammerce 203

CHAP. VI.

Treats of the Forces of Sweden, the Strength of its Situation and Frontier Towns , and of the publick Revenues 210

CHAP. VII.

Treats of the antient and present Constitution of the Government, and of the Revolutions it hath undergone 219

CHAP. VIII.

Contains a further Account of the Senate of Sweden ; of their respective Courts, or Colleges, for the Administration of publick Affairs ; and of their Courts of Justice, Laws, and Civil Government. 242

CHAP. IX.

Treats of their Religion, Learning, and Universities 248

CHAP. X.

Treats of their Marriages, their Children, and the Share they have in the Estates of their Parents ; giving also some Account of their Funerals 259

CHAP. XI.

Treats of the Arms and Titles of the Kings of Sweden, of the present Royal Family ; and of the Interest of that Kingdom, in Relation to the Succession of the Crown, and to the neighbouring Powers 262

The Present State of DENMARK and NORWAY.

CHAP. I.

Describes the Situation, Extent, and Boundaries of the Kingdoms of Denmark and Norway ; and treats also of the Air and Seasons ; and of the Seas, Lakes, and Rivers 271

CHAP. II.

Treats of the Provinces into which Denmark and Norway are divided, and of their chief Towns and Buildings 277

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

C H A P. III.

Treats of the Persons and Habits of the Danes ; of their Genius and Temper, Learning, Diet, and Diversions 298

C H A P. IV.

Treats of the Nature of the Soil, and Produce of the several Countries under the Dominion of the King of Denmark ; and of their Plants, Animals, and Minerals ; as also of their Trade and Manufactures 302

C H A P. V.

Treats of the Forces and Revenues of the King of Denmark 307

C H A P. VI.

Treats of their Laws, and the Administration of Justice 314

C H A P. VII.

Treats of their Religion, Universities, Marriages, and Funerals 317

C H A P. VIII.

Treats of the antient and present Constitution of the Kingdom of Denmark 321

C H A P. IX.

Contains an Abstract of the Succession of the Danish Princes, with the Modern History of Denmark, or the principal Occurrences of the two last Reigns 332

C H A P. X.

Treats of the Arms, Stile, and Titles of the Kings of Denmark ; of the present Royal Family, and Prerogatives of the Crown ; of their Nobility and Orders of Knighthood ; and of the Interest of Denmark with Relation to other Powers 357

The Present State of GREENLAND.

C H A P. I.

Treats of the Situation, Inhabitants, Animals, and Produce of West-Greenland 364

C H A P. II.

Treats of the Situation of New, or East-Greenland, of the first Discovery of it ; and of the Probability there is of its being Contiguous to Asia as well as America ; and of the Attempts

The CONTENTS.

Attempts which have been made to discover a Passage to China this Way 372

C H A P. III.

Treats of the first Establishment of the Whale-Fishery in Greenland by the English ; and of the Endeavours of the Dutch to deprive them of the Advantages of it 381

C H A P. IV.

Contains a Relation of the Hardships eight Englishmen underwent, who were left a-shore in Greenland all Winter, with their Observations upon the Country 389

C H A P. V.

Treats of the Herbs and Plants in New-Greenland 401

C H A P. VI.

Treats of the Animals of Greenland, particularly of Morfes and Whales, and the Manner of taking them 403

C H A P. VII.

Contains a further Account of the Danish Laws 413

The Conclusion of the Sixth VOLUME,

Contains an Examination of the Right the Dutch have to their Foreign Settlements, and to the Whale and Herring Fisheries, according to the Maxims the World have generally been governed, by in Relation to Dominion and Property ; and shews the Advantage which might accrue to England by the Encouragement of the Herring-Fishery 425

An Account of seven Dutch Sailors who were left in Greenland to make Observations on the Country ; and of several others who made a second Experiment of the like Nature 454

Order

00 120 180 240 300

English Miles



RUSSIA or MOSCOVY
with its Acquisitions &c.
in Sweden Assignable to Modern History
By H. Moll Geographer 1727.

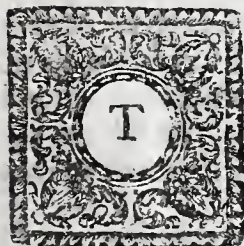


THE PRESENT STATE OF Moscovy, or Russia.



CHAP. I.

Treats of the Situation and Extent of the Russian Empire, of the Air and Climate, and of the Seas, Lakes, and Rivers with which it is water'd.



THE Russian Empire, if we take it in its largest Extent, and include the late Conquests on the side of Sweden, is bounded by the Frozen Ocean toward the North ; by Chinesian Tartary towards the East : By the Calmucks, the Caspian Sea, Coban Tartary, Georgia, the Palus Meotis and the Lesser Tartary towards the South : And by Poland, the Baltick Sea and Bothnick Gulph towards the West. But as the Moscovite Provinces in Asia have been already describ'd, and I am

The Situation and Extent of Russia.

The Present State of

now to consider only that part of the *Russian* Empire which lies in *Europe*, the Eastern Boundary must be the same with that of *Europe* itself, viz. The Rivers, *Oby* and *Irtis*, and a Line drawn from the latter, to the Mouth of the *Don*, or *Tanais*, which falls into the *Palus Meotis*. *Moscow* in *Europe* then extends from the 47th Degree of North Latitude, to the 70th (and perhaps some Degrees higher, but it is scarce habitable nearer the Pole) and from the 21st Degree of Longitude to the 70th, reckoning from the Meridian of *London*, being forty nine Degrees of Longitude; to which if we add 36 Degrees more, which the *Asiatick* Provinces take up, this Empire will be found to run through 85 Degrees of Longitude, and consequently is by much the largest Tract of Country on our Continent, subject to one Monarch. The *Moscovites* also taking Advantage of the Civil Wars in *Persia*, have of late Years extended their Conquests beyond the *Caspian Sea*, very far South of the limits here laid down, but these not having yet been relinquish'd by *Persia*, and these Countries still remaining in a state of War, I did not think it proper to include them within the bounds of *Moscow*, till we see whether they will be restor'd or not.

The
Name.

The Province of *Mosco* communicates its Name to the whole Empire, which an hundred Years ago was included in much narrower bounds.

Climate.

The Kingdoms of *Casan*, *Astracan*, the *Cossacks*, *Circassians*, and the large Country which goes under the Name of *Siberia*, are all late Acquisitions, as well as *Livonia*, and *Finland*. This Country extending from the 47th Degree of North Latitude to the Arctick-Circle,

Circle, and beyond; the longest Day in the South is fifteen Hours and an half, and in the North there is no Night at the Summer Solstice. During the Winter, which in most parts continues Seven Months, and towards the North, Nine, the whole Country is cover'd with Snow a Yard or two thick, and the Rivers are all frozen up. The Air is so exceeding sharp, 'tis said, that Water sprinkled with ones Hand, will freeze before it comes to the Ground, and 'tis no uncommon thing to find People who have lost their Noses or Fingers by the extreme Cold; but the Snow is no sooner melted, than we see on a sudden, the Earth cover'd with Green Herbs and Flowers; and the Grain which is sown in *April* or *May*, springs up so fast, that it is reap'd in *August*. There seems to be no occasion for Dung or Manure, the Snow alone renders the Ground so fruitful, that they seldom fail of good Crops: But this is to be understood of the middle or Southern parts of *Moscow*, for the Provinces which lie towards the North, are Barren, and produce very little Grain or Herbage. A Gentleman who lately resided at *Petersbourg*, in the Latitude of 60, observes, that they have very little comfort in their Winter Days; for tho' the Sun may be a little above the Horizon for two or three Hours, it is seldom seen, on account of the thick Fogs which so darken the Air, that it may rather be call'd Dawn than Day-light. In *August* the Cold Weather begins there, and till the *May* following every Body is wrap'd up in Furs, even their Boots, which they wear constantly, are lin'd with them: The Ice in their Rivers is an Ell and half thick, and is not melted till some time after the Snow is gone. The Summer Heats are almost as troublesome as

the Winers Cold ; and the Sun raising the Vapours in the Lakes and Marshy Grounds about *Petersbourg*, occasions Tempests of Thunder and Lightning almost every Day ; but they soon blow over, and fine Weather follows. In the Heart of *Moscow*, Travellers complain that the multitude of Gnats and Flies produc'd by the Sun shining with an intense Heat on the Pools and standing Waters, made by the melted Snow, render the Summer as incommodious as the Winter. The Seas of *Moscow* are the *Frozen Ocean*, the *White Sea*, the Gulph of *Finland*, the *Bothnick Bay*, and the *Baltick*, all which lie towards the North and West: As to the *Caspian Sea*, which lies to the South of *Moscow*, this hath been mention'd already in *Asia* ; and tho' the *Euxine* or *Black Sea* might not many Years ago have been deem'd amongst the Seas of this Empire ; yet since by the last Peace between *Turky* and *Russia*, the Czar was oblig'd to deliver up *Asoph*, and the rest of the Forts he had built near the Mouths of the *Don* and the *Boristhenes*, the *Moscovites* seem to be totally excluded all Communication with the *Black Sea*. Many have been the attempts of the *English* and *Dutch* to find a Passage through the *Frozen Sea*, or *Moscovite Ocean*, to *China* ; but the Land appears to extend so far to the North, that this is now judg'd to be impracticable, and was not the Land in the way, such Mountains of Ice are to be met with near the Pole, that it is extremely difficult for a Ship to disengage herself, which has been so hardy to venture amongst them. From the *Frozen Ocean*, we descend to the Southward into the *White Sea*, or Bay of *Archangel*, between *Moscovite Lapland* on the West, and *Samoieda* on the East.

This

Seas of
Moscow.

Frozen Ocean.

White Sea.

This Bay was first discover'd by the *English*; whereby they open'd a way to Trade with *Moscovy*, and enjoy'd the sole benefit of it for some Years, till they were supplanted by their good Friends the *Dutch*. But if the first discovery of the Passage thither, or the being first in possession of this branch of Trade, wou'd have given us a right to monopolize the whole, and exclude all other Nations from it, as is pretended in some other parts of the World, the *English* have not been handsomly dealt with here. Had the *Dutch* had as good a pretence to exclude us from *Ceylone*, from *Java*, or the Spice Islands in the East, we should not have had much Reason to complain: but we were before them also in the *Indian Seas*, and possess'd of that rich Trade, and yet tamely suffer'd our selves to be excluded from it by the Voracious *Hollander*. But to return, The next Sea the *Moscovites* may be said to be Masters of, is the Bay or Gulph of *Finland*, which divides *Livonia* from *Finland*; for the *Moscovites* are now possess'd of the Countries on both sides this Bay, as they are of one side of the *Bothnick* Gulph: As to the *Baltick* Sea; tho' the *Moscovites* are now possess'd of *Riga*, and *Revel*, and other Ports upon it, which afford them an easier Communication with this part of *Europe*, than they had formerly; yet as this Sea is in a manner surrounded by the Dominions of other Princes, I shall defer saying more of it till I come to treat of *Sweden* and *Denmark*. The most considerable Lakes we meet with here, are, 1. the Lake *Ladoga*, which has a Communication with the Gulph of *Finland* by the River *Nieoa*, on which the City of *Petersbourg* stands, and may be four or five hundred

Gulph of
Finland
and *Both-*
nia.

Lake *Lado-*
ga.

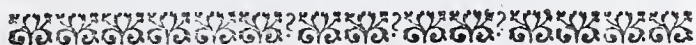
hundred Miles in Circumference. To the North East of *Lagoda* lies, 2. the Lake of *Onega*, almost as large as the former. South East of *Onega* is, 3. the *White Lake*, where the River *Shackfena* hath its Source, being one of those Rivers which afterwards form the great River *Volga*. 4. The Lake *Ilmen*, near which stands the City of *Novogrod* : and upon the Confines of *Livonia*, near the City of *Pleskow*, is, 5. the Lake *Worsero*, which has a Communication with, 5. the Lake *Pepus*, lying to the Northward of it, and are each of them of a very great length. But it would be endless to enumerate all the Lakes in this flat watry Country, and therefore I proceed next to enquire into their principal Rivers. The 1. River *Oby*, with the River *Irtis* which falls into it, are esteem'd the Boundary between *Europe* and *Asia*. The *Oby* rises in *Calmuck Tartary*, and running Northward a Course of two thousand Miles and more, falls into the Gulph of *Mangasia* within the Arctick Circle. 2. The *Volga*, or *Rba*, hath its Source either from the *White Lake*, or some Fountain near it in the North of *Moscow*, which having run a Course of two thousand Miles and upwards towards the South East, falls into the *Caspian Sea* below *Astracan*. 3. The *Don*, or *Tanais* rises from a Lake in the Province of *Rezan*, and having ran a Course of many hundred Miles to the South East, turns about, and runs almost directly West, till it falls into the *Palus Meotis* near *Asoph*. 4. The River *Boristhenes*, or *Nieper*, hath its Source in the Province of *Moscow* ; and having run first to the Westward, turns afterwards to the Southward, and running along the Confines of *Poland*, falls into the *Black Sea* near *Oczakow*. 5. The River *Dwina* rises from a Lake

Lake *Onega*.
White Lake.
Ilmen Lake.
Worsero, Lake Pepus.
Oby and Irtis Rivers.
Volga.
Don River.
Nieper River.
Dwina River.

in

in the Province of *Bulgaria*, and taking its Course to the Northward, falls into the *White Sea* near *Archangel*. There is also, 6. another River *Dwina*, which falls into the *Baltick* near *Riga*. As to the *Moscovite* Rivers of *Asia*, they have been mentioned already in treating of *Moscovite Tartary* in *Asia*. There are also many other considerable Rivers, which the Reader will find laid down in the Map of *Russia*, which is order'd to be Engrav'd and inserted in this Volume ; but these are the most considerable.

Dwina.



C H A P. II.

Contains a description of the Provinces of Samoi-eda, Messéen, Dwina, Syrianes, and Rubenskka.

THE exact Boundaries of the *Moscovite* Provinces having never yet been adjusted by any Writer, I must content my self with shewing generally in what part of the Empire they lie, till a more particular Survey shall be taken of them. *Samoieda*, the most North Easterly Province in *Europe*, is bounded by the *Frozen Ocean* towards the North, and by the River *Oby* towards the East. I confess the *Samoieds* are also plac'd to the Eastward of the River *Oby*, but these being in *Asia*, have already been consider'd. The *White Sea* is deem'd the Western Boundary of *Samoieda*, but how far it extends to the Southward, seems uncertain, (under the Name of *Samoieda*, I include the Subdivisions of *Petzora*, *Condora*, and *Oustrich*.) These People

Provinces

Samoieda.

People have scarce any Towns amongst them, living in Caves or Hutts, which as Travellers tells us, stand more under than above the ground. The Gentlemen, however, that pretend to skill in Geography, have fill'd up their Maps with the Names of several Towns; but as I find no two of them agree, either in their Names or Situations, I choose entirely to omit the mention of them; and as to the Manners of the People, they are the same with those of their Neighbours of *Asia* already describ'd. 2. To the South-west of

Messeen.

Samoieda, we meet with the Province of *Messeen*; the chief Town whereof is of the same Name, and situate in 66 Degrees of North Latitude, not far from the Coasts of the *White Sea*.

Dwina.

3. The Province of *Dwina*, bounded by the *White Sea* on the West and North, and the Provinces of *Messeen*, and *Syrianes* towards the East, and by *Rubeuski* on the South; the chief Town whereof is *Archangel*, situate a-

Archangel.

bout six Miles from the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, in 64 Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude; the Town extends along the North-East side of the River for about two Miles, and is almost a Mile in breadth. The only Building worth Observation is the Pallace, which is built of Free Stone, and divided into three large Square Courts, in which the Foreign Merchants are permitted to lodge and secure their Goods. Here also are held their Courts of Justice for the Province. The Castle where the Governor resides is surrounded only with a Wooden Wall, within which are the Shops of several Handicraft Trades; and here, during the Fair, the *Russians* expose their Goods to Sale: The Shipping returning home in September or Oc-

tober,

tober, the Natives as well as Foreign Merchants, retire to *Mosco*, or other Inland Towns, so soon as the Rivers and Lakes are frozen over, and the Snow harden'd, that they can travel in their Sleds. The Houses of the Town are all of Wood, not saw'd out into Boards, but square pieces of Fir Timber pil'd one upon another, with very little order. The Houses of some of the Foreign Merchants, however, are Plain'd or Wainscotted in the inside, and very neat and commodious; and in every Room there is a large Stove, so contriv'd as to be an Ornament to it, which is heated to what degree they please. The Streets, instead of a Pavement, are laid with rough pieces of Timber; which a Stranger is ready to break his Neck over, and here they also throw out their dirt and rubbish, which makes them extremely dirty; but when the Snows are fallen, all is smooth and level. The *Lutherans* and *Calvinists* have each of them a Church in this City: In Winter the Congregations do not assemble in them, but at their Ministers House, in some Room well warm'd with Stoves. All kind of Provisions are mighty plentiful at *Archangel*; especially Poultry, Fish, Wild Fowl, Partridges, and other Game: One sort of their Partridges turn White in the Winter. They have also a Wild Fowl, not unlike our Turkeys, the Cocks of a Black Colour, mix'd with a deep Blue: Their Hares also, which are very plentiful, are observ'd to turn White in Winter. Salmon, Perch, and the best River Fish abound in their Waters; Twenty Pence will purchase enough to Dine Twenty Men. Butchers Meat, such as Beef, Veal, Lamb, &c. they have in such abundance, that it is Bought for a Penny a Pound: And for their

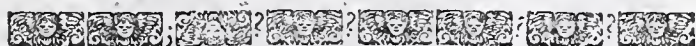
Vol. VI. C Liquors,

Liquors, there is good Beer brew'd here by the Government; no private Person may brew, without the License of the proper Officer: Their Wine and Brandy they have from *France*, but extract Spirits also from Corn, which are pretty much drank by the Sailors and common People, and afforded very cheap. Not long since, there used to resort to this Port, near an Hundred Ships annually; *English, Dutch, French, Hamburgers, &c.* inasmuch that the *Czar's* Customs at *Archangel* have been computed to amount to an Hundred Thousand Pounds *per Annum*; but the *Moscovites* being now possess'd of several Ports in the *Baltick*, and the late *Czar* having turn'd the course of Trade, by compelling his Subjects to carry their Merchandize to *Petersbourg*, the resort of Foreigners to *Archangel* is much less than it was, and the Trade of that place will probably decline every Year more and more.

St. Nicholas. The Town of *St. Nicholas* stands at the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, and may be look'd upon as the Port to *Archangel*. About fifty Miles higher up the River *Dwina*, stands the Colmogorod Town of *Colmogorod*, which is a large open place without either Castle or Walls to defend it. Syrianes. 4. The Province of *Syrianes*, situate to the Eastward of the *Dwina*; our Maps extend it as far as the River *Oby*, the chief Town whereof is *Ousizob*: Of this Country we know little more than that the greatest part of it consists in large Forests, where the Natives Hunt for Furs. Permian. 5. The Province of *Permian* is bounded by *Syrianes* towards the North, and *Wologda* towards the South; the Eastern Boundary whereof seems to be the River *Irtis*, which falls

falls into the *Oby* : and the chief Town *Permia-Weliki*. This Country is not much better Inhabited than the last, and the People are said to be, like them, employ'd chiefly in Hunting.

6. *Reubeninska*, bounded by the *Dwina* towards the East, and by the *White Sea* towards the North, the chief Town whereof is *Usgorodischna*. *Reubeninski.*



CHAP. III.

Treats of the Provinces of Lapland, Finland, and Carelia ; and particularly of the Capital City of Petersbourg.

7. **M**OSCOWITE *Lapland*, bounded by the Ocean towards the North ; *Lapland* by the *White Sea* towards the East and South ; and by *Swedish Lapland* towards the West, is generally divided into three parts, viz. *Mourmanskoy-leporie* towards the North West, the chief Town whereof is *Kola*, a Port which stands upon a River of the same Name that falls into the Northern Ocean, and is some times resorted to by the *English* and *Dutch Ships* in their passage to and from *Archangel*. 2. *Bel-lamoreskoy*, the most Southerly part of *Lapland*, in which we find the Town of *Kandalax*, situate on the *White Sea*. 3. *Treskoy*, the most Easterly part of this Country, the chief Town *Warsega*, situate at the South East corner of it near the *White Sea*. But to say the truth, this Country is very ill furnish'd with Towns or Villages ; two or three poor Huts are frequently denominated a Town by our Sailors. The Country lies in so cold a Climate,

mate, where they are depriv'd of the light of the Sun for several Months in the Year, that they are pretty well secur'd against the Ambition of the Neighbouring Powers. During the Wars between *Sweden* and *Moscow*, these People remain'd unmolested: The Subjects of the *Swedish* and *Moscovite* *Laplands*, Trading and Conversing together, as if their Princes had been in full Peace; nor did the Generals on either side think it worth the while to enquire after them.

The Soil does not produce any kind of Corn or Grain, and but very little Fruit. Their Animals are Deer, Elks, Foxes, Ermins, Martens, Bears, Wolves, and other Beasts, which they Hunt for their Skins and Furs, the Staple Commodities of the Country. They dry the Flesh of some of them, as well as their Fish, upon the Rocks in the Frost, and keep it as long as they please without Salt, of which their Country is destitute: Some say they will beat their dry'd Fish to Powder, and make a kind of Paste of it, which serves them instead of Bread, but there are neither Oxen, Sheep, Hogs, or Horses in the Country. The Natives are of a short squat make; their Complexion Swarthy, occasion'd by the extreme Cold, which seems in many Instances to have the same effects as excessive Heat. They have broad flat Faces like the *Tartars*, and short Black Hair, and are strong and nimble, but so timorous, or perhaps untractable, that they have never yet been thought fit for Military Service; nor do we hear of any Wars among these People, tho' they are subject to several Sovereigns; one reason whereof may be, that they are possess'd of nothing worth

worth the Plundering one another of, as has been intimated already. They have no other Drink but fair Water or Broth, except they get now and then some Brandy or Spirits in exchange for their Furs. They wear no Linnen, and their Coats, Caps, and Boots are made of the Skins of Beasts, with the Hair inwards. They skate over the Snow and Ice after their Game in long Wooden Skates like the *Samoieds*; or are drawn by the Rein Deer in Sledges; and the Skins of these Animals, serve them both for Beds and Bedcloaths. Every Man is an Artificer, and can build his Sledge, his Boat, or Hutt, or make any Utensil he stands in need of; tho' he has no other Thread or Cordage, than the Nerves of some Animal; or Thongs made of their Skins. Their Sledges are almost in the fashion of a Boat, only flat behind: and the Traces of the Rein Deer, which draw them, fastned about their Necks, while the Reins are tied to their Horns, which the Traveller holds in his Hands. They are *Christians* by Profession, but still retain many of their *Pagan* Superstitions: These poor People, like others we have little acquaintance with, are charg'd with practising Witchcraft and the Magick Art, and holding a familiar Conversation with the Devil. They are, according to some credulous Writers, as intimate with Fairies, Spirits, and other Inhabitants of the lower Regions, as with their nearest Relations; but their Art extends no farther, at last we are told, than the doing mischief to their Neighbours in their Persons or Cattle; unless it be that they get a Dram or a Pipe of Tobacco, by selling a Wind to a foolish Marriner sometimes, which

which when he finds not to answer his expectation, he is so wise as to impute it to the mismanagement of the Charm, rather than want of Power in the pretended Conjuror. Every Family, 'tis said, has its peculiar Demons, who are as much in Subjection to the Master as his Slaves, and they have even the Power of bequeathing their Imps to their Posterity. But I shall not entertain my Reader any longer with these Fooleries, which 'tis impossible for any Man to believe, who gives himself the liberty to reflect on the numerous Absurdities he meets with in these Relations, and the very slender Evidence with which they are supported. The Language of these People is peculiar to themselves, but hath a mixture of Words and Phrases taken from those Nations they border upon. They are not subject to many Diseases, and generally live to a good old Age in their own Country, but if they are remov'd to a warmer Climate and better Diet, 'tis observ'd they seldom live long.

Finland.

8. The Province of *Finland*, one of the Conquests of the late Czar, is bounded by *Lapland* on the North, by the Lakes of *Ladoga* and *Onega*, which divide it from other Provinces of *Moscow*, on the East, by the Gulph of *Finland* on the South, and by the *Bothnick Bay* towards the West. This Country is usually sub-divided into seven parts. (1.) *Cajania*, or *East Bothnia*, the most Northern District, extending it self to the Southward, along the *Bothnick Gulph*, into which runs a abundance of Rivers through this Country; but the North East part of it is Mountainous. The chief Town is *Cajaneburg*, a Fortrefs situate on the North East side of the Lake

Ula,

Ula, in the Latitude of 65. (2.) *Savolaxia*, situate between *Cajania* on the North, and *Carelia* on the South. This Country also abounds with Lakes and Rivers, which fall into the Lake *Ladoga*; the chief Town whereof is *Koskinpa*, which stands on a Lake in the Latitude of 62 Degrees odd Minutes. (3.) *Kexholm*, situate between *Savolaxia* on the West, and some other Provinces of *Moscowy* on the East, and anciently belong'd to the *Moscovites*, but was taken from them by *Gustavus Adolphus*, and remain'd in the Hands of the *Swedes*, till the late War, when the *Czar* recover'd it again. It is a Country of a large extent from South to North; the North parts very Mountainous, and the South full of Lakes and Bogs; the chief Town whereof is *Kexholm*, or *Carelgorod*, situate on the West side of the Lake *Ladoga*, in the Latitude of 61 Degrees odd Minutes. (4.) *Carelia*, Bounded by *Savolaxia* on the North, and the Gulph of *Finland* on the South; a fruitful Country, if compar'd with some other parts of *Finland*, and extending two hundred Miles from East to West, but not proportionably broad; the chief Town whereof is *Wyburg*, situate on the Gulph of *Finland*, with a convenient Harbour. (5.) *Nylandia*, or *Newland*, situate between *Carelia* on the East, and *Finland Proper* on the West; the chief Town whereof is *Helsingfort*, near the Mouth of the River *Winda*, which falls into the Gulph of *Finland*. (6.) *Finland Proper*, bounded by *Cajania* on the North, *Nylandia* and *Tavastia* on the East, the Gulph of *Finland* on the South, and the *Bothnick Bay* on the West. It is a pleasant Fruitful Country, partly encompass'd by the Sea, and was called *Finland*,
quasi

quasi *Finland*, according to some. The chief Town thereof is *Abo*, situate on the River *Saviok* near the *Baltick*, in the 61st Degree of North Latitude. (7.) *Tavastia*, an Inland Province, bounded by *Cajania* on the North, *Savolaxia* on the East, *Nylandia* on the South, and by *Finland Proper* on the West. This Country is full of Lakes, the most remarkable of which, is the great Lake of *Jende*. The chief Town *Travastia*, called also *Croneburg*, being in the Latitude of 62 Degrees odd Minutes. The Soil of *Finland* in general is barren, and the Country full of Lakes, Bogs, and Bushes ; and there are scarce any Villages in the Inland Country, the Houses standing single and dispers'd : but towards the South and West upon the Sea Coast the Soil is better, and there are several good Towns to be found, besides those already mention'd, which will be laid down in the Map of this Country. The *Finlanders* in the North differ but very little from the *Lappomans* ; but in the South, being mix'd with the *Swedes*, and trading with other Nations of *Europe*, they are something better polish'd.

Ingria:

9. I come next to *Ingria* or *Ingermanland*, divided from *Carelia* in *Finland*, only by the River *Nieva*, or *Nye*. This Territory is bounded by *Carelia* and the Lake *Ladoga* on the North, by the Province of *Belozero* on the East, by *Great Novogorod* towards the South, and by *Esthonia*, a Province of *Livonia* towards the West ; the chief Towns whereof were, 1. *Notteburg*, or *Slutelburg*, situate on a small Island in the River *Nieva*, near the Lake *Ladoga*. 2. *Ivanogorod*, or the *Russian Narva*, situate overagainst *Narva*, in an Isthmus made by the Confluence of two Rivers ;

Notteburg,
or *Slutel-*
burg.

Rivers ; esteem'd a place of some Strength. 3. *Corporio*, a Fortrefs on the Gulph of *Finland*, about thirty Miles to the Northward of *Ivanogorod*. And 4. *Jamogorod*, situate on the River *Laga*, fifteen Miles to the Southward of *Ivanogorod*. But the Town of the greatest consequence, and which is in fact the Capital of the *Russian* Empire at this Day, is *St. Petersburg*, the Foundations whereof were not laid, or one single House Built five and twenty Years ago.

Petersburg is situate partly on some Islands in the Mouth of the River *Nieva*, and partly on the several Continents of *Ingria* and *Carelia*, in 60 Degrees, North Latitude. The late Czar, *Peter Alexowitz*, being engag'd in a War with *Sweden*, and having taken the City of *Notteburg* in the Year 1702, and the following Year the Fortrefs of *Nyefchants*, lower down the River *Nieva*, and observing several Islands in the Mouth of the River ; by the Possession of which he might open a Communication with the *Baltick*, he order'd a Fort to be built on one of them, and commanded a Detachment of his Troops to make themselves Masters also of the Island of *Retufari* in the Gulph of *Finland*, near which all Shipping are oblig'd to pass which are bound for the River *Nieva* ; and here he built the Fortrefs of *Cronslot*, finding it capable of being made a Commodious Harbour for his Men of War. The Czar pleased with the Neighbouring Country of *Ingria*, which, making allowances for the coldness of the Climate, is not the most disagreeable, and apprehending if he should fix the Seat of his Empire here, it might be a means to keep the *Swedes*, the most formidable Enemies of *Russia*, at a greater distance

distance from his Frontiers ; and proposing also to establish a Trade with the rest of the Nations of *Europe* with far greater advantage from hence, than he cou'd at *Archangel* : Upon these, and other weighty Motives, he order'd Labourers and Artificers to be summon'd from all parts of *Russia*, to erect a Royal City, which might deserve to be the Capital of so large an Empire. But whether it were that the Ministers and Officers employ'd in this great Design were averse to the Service, and did not approve of removing the Seat of the Empire from *Moscow*, or by what other Accident is uncertain, it appear'd that there was neither sufficient Provisions for subsisting the Workmen, or Shovels, Wheel-barrows, or necessary Tools to work with, or even Hutts for them to lye in : However, the *Czar* having set his Heart upon the new City, and frequently overseeing the Work himself, it went on with a surprizing Expedition; the Labourers, who were very numerous, carrying the Materials for building, in Bags, or the Skirts of their Cloaths ; but the Neighbouring Country having been destroyed by the Wars, and the usual Supplies by the Lake of *Ladoga* often retarded by contrary Winds, the Workmen were reduc'd to very great Misery, insomuch that it is computed no less than one hundred thousand Men perish'd in this Service. The *Czar*, notwithstanding persisting in his Design, and ordering as well the Nobility as Merchants and Tradesmen, to transplant themselves from several parts of his Dominions, to reinforce this new Colony, and erect Houses for themselves, the Work went on, and the Trading People found an advantage in removing hither ; every thing being very dear, on account of the

multitudes

multitudes who resorted to this new City, and the scarcity of Provisions in *Ingria* and *Carelia*, occasion'd by their having lately been under Military Execurion; the Inhabitants also of *Finland* and *Livonia*, whose Houses and Effects had been burnt and destroy'd, not knowing whither to go, or how to subsist, mingled themselves with this new Colony; and the *Czar* giving great Encouragement to Seafaring Men and Merchants to settle here, the Place on a sudden became extremely Populous, and no less than sixty thousand Houses were erected in a few Years. But as I have order'd a Plan of this City to be engrav'd, with an Explanation of it, I shall not here enter upon a particular Description of the Place, only observe, that as it is built partly on the Islands, and partly on the Continent, it is of a very large Extent, appearing rather like several distinct Towns, than a single City. The whole Country it stands upon is very flat and low, and much expos'd to Inundations, by which it has already suffer'd several times, abundance of People and Cattle have been drowned, and part of the Fortifications wash'd away. The River *Nieva*, which runs thro' it, is very deep all along till it opens into the Bay, where the Sands render it shallow, but about a League further it comes to a good depth again; which is the Reason that large Ships are unloaden before they come to the Town. The Breadth of the River at *Petersburg* is about half a Mile; and as it is very deep and rapid, the building a Bridge over it is deem'd impracticable: It was propos'd therefore to the *Czar* to make a Bridge of Pontons or Boats, but he wou'd not consent to it, because it was his Intention

The Present State of

to breed up as many Water-men as he could. Those who manag'd the Boats on the River were most of them ignorant Peasants at first, who being prohibited the Use of Oars, by their unskillful management of the Sails, frequently overset their Passengers: People of Fashion have their own Boats and Water-men, and Foreign Ministers have of late Years been allow'd a Boat and four able Water-men by the Government; but before, Men of Quality sometimes were lost on the River, particularly the *Polish* Minister, and Major General *Kirchner*, one of the *Czar's* Physicians, were thus cast away. There are some handsome Stone Buildings, Palaces and Churches in *Petersburg*, but most part of the Houses are of Wood; the sides consisting of square Pieces of Fir Timber laid one upon another: The Roofs are of thin Deal Spars, laid pretty thick, and lin'd with Lath cover'd with Turfs or Bark, seldom more than one Story high; and those of the common People consist of but one Room. The Country adjacent to *Petersburg* is great part of it a Morass, cover'd with Bushes and Shrubs, and the Soil so moist, that it produces but little Corn, especially in a wet Year, when scarce any thing comes to Maturity: Turnips, Cabbages and Cucumbers are almost their only Plants. The City and Country about it wou'd be starv'd, were it not for the Supplies they receive from *Novogrod*, *Pleskow*, *Moscow* and even from *Casan*, which is above twelve hundred Miles distant from *Petersburg*. But as all Provision is very plentiful in the Heart of *Moscow*, thousands of Sledges are perpetually travelling from thence to *Petersburg*, loaden with Corn, Flower, Fruits, and the Produce of their respective Countries, which in Sum-

mer is convey'd to *Petersburgh*, by their Rivers and Lakes: and if at any time the Boats happen to meet with any Accident in their Passage, every thing immediately grows excessive dear in the City and the Country about it; for it is observ'd, that *Petersburgh* instead of being supply'd with Provision from the neighbouring Towns, furnishes them with all manner of Necessaries: The Ground not being clear'd of Wood, or the Morasses drain'd, their Lands yield but very little Grain.

As to the Island of *Cronslot*, or *Retufary*, this *Cronslot*
Island, lies about twelve or fifteen Miles to the Westward of *Petersburgh*, at the Bottom of the Gulph of *Finland*, and forms a large Bay, which reaches as far as the Mouth of the River *Neva*. To the Southward of this Island is the only Passage for Ships up to *Petersburgh*, the Channel being about two thousand Paces broad, and very deep. The Island is a barren Spot of Ground, but the late *Czar* observing the Advantage of its Situation, fortify'd it for the Security of his Men of War. He first built a Citadel here, to which he gave the Name of *Cronslot*, or Crown Castle, and afterwards caus'd a pretty large Town to be added to it, which goes by the same Name. In this Harbour the *Czar's* Fleet used to lie at first, but being increas'd to forty or fifty Ships of the Line, the greatest part of them are laid up at *Revel* at present. The South Coast over against *Cronslot*, up as far as *Petersburgh*, is full of Pleasure-Houses and Country-Seats. When the *Czar* conquer'd *Ingria*, he granted the Estates of the former Inhabitants to his Officers and Servants: But this Coast over against *Cronslot*, being by far the most desirable, he parcell'd out among his *Bojars* and Principals

pal Nobility, who most of them built their Country-Seats here. The Ground about half a Mile from the Shoar, rises almost to an equal Height of sixty or seventy Foot, on the Brow of which Hill stand all these Seats, enjoying a noble Prospect, and affording a most delightful Scene to those who pass up the River to *Petersburgh*. The Land about them also is tolerably good, and prettily diversify'd with arable Land, Woods, Meadows, and Pasture Grounds, and their Gardens improv'd as much as they are capable of. Here that great Minister Prince *Menzicoff* hath a Seat built of Stone, three Stories high, with two Wings in form of an Half Moon, and the Gardens lying before it, stretch down to the Sea Shoar; which shews that the *Muscovite* Nobility have not the worst Taste. The late *Czar* also had two or three Palaces on the same Coast, built with exquisite Art.

But it may be proper here to give some description of the Natives of *Carelia* and *Ingria* before the *Muscovites* conquer'd their Country; tho' at present indeed they are so blended with the *Russians* and other Nations transplanted hither, that they can no longer be look'd upon as a distinct People; especially since the late *Czar* compell'd all the Inhabitants of these Countries, whether Natives, *Russians*, or other Foreigners, to conform to the *German* Habit. As to the Persons of the *Ingrians* and *Carelians*, they were generally of a good Stature, strongly built, and of a robust Constitution, and had White or Yellow Hair, and piqued Beards of a Reddish Colour. Their Language was the *Finlandish*, which hath no Resemblance to any other whatever; but yields to none, 'tis said, in Richness of Words, or Propriety of Phrases.

Their

Their Diet was chiefly coarse brown Bread, and their Drink Water. They scarce ever tasted any Meat, insomuch that the poorest Peasants in *Germany*, liv'd as well as the most substantial People amongst them: They will therefore probably be no losers by being conquer'd, for the Produce of *Muscovy*, and other fruitful Countries, are now daily transported to *Petersburgh*, and all Arts and Sciences introduc'd amongst them by the present Government.

The late *Czar* establish'd at *Petersburgh* an Academy Marine, to which he oblig'd every considerable Family in *Russia* to send one or more of their Sons or Kinsmen, above ten, and under eighteen Years of Age, where they were instructed in Navigation. Here also they learnt the Languages, and were taught to Ride and Fence, and other Exercises proper for Gentlemen, and kept under a very strict Discipline. Woollen and Linnen Manufactures also were set up, of which the latter is brought to great Perfection, as we may observe by the Linnen of late imported from thence. Here is a Workhouse particularly, where an old Dutch woman hath fourscore wanton Nymphs under her Care, who are taught with a Whip how to handle the Spinning Wheel; and several Regulations are made for improving their Plantations of Hemp and Flax. Paper-Mills and Powder-Mills have also been erected, with Laboratories for Gun- nery and Fire-Works; and other Places for preparing Saltpetre and Brimstone, of both which they have Plenty in *Russia*. Rope-Yards, like those of *England* and *Holland*, for the making of Cables and Tackling for the Navy, are also set up here: And they have

Improve-
ments at
*Peters-
burgh*.

a Foundery, in which they are perpetually casting great Guns, Mortars, and small Arms; vast Quantities of Iron Oar being found at *Alonitz*, near the Lake *Ladoga*, which may be brought to such a Temper, 'tis said, as to be as durable as Brass. The great Forge at *Petersburgh* furnishes Anchors, and supplies all Iron Work for building Ships and Houses, and they begin to burn Bricks, and use them in their Buildings instead of Wood. The Streets have been all pitch'd at a very great Expence, there being scarce any Stones to be found in the marshy Grounds about the Town. A Printing-House is also establish'd here, and News Papers are now as regularly printed as in other Countries of *Europe*; and several useful Books have been lately translated out of the *High-Dutch* and printed, the Government encouraging their Subjects to enquire into the State of the World abroad, instead of keeping them in Ignorance, according to their ancient Maxims. All foreign Architects, Mechanics, and Artificers are invited to settle here, and allow'd several Privileges and Immunities beyond other Citizens; but they have not been able to bring either their Silk or Woollen Manufactories to any great Perfection hitherto: Neither did the late *Czar* confine his Endeavours to Improvements of this kind, but made a noble Collection of Books, Paintings, Medals, Antiquities, and other Curiosities, and built Repositories for them in this City. His Gardens were also laid out with the greatest Art, adorn'd with Green-Houses, Aviaries, Menageries, Grotto's, Fountains, Cascades, and all manner of Water-Works. And for the Diversion of the People in Winter, Plays, Opera's, Musick-Meetings, and Assem-

Assemblies were encourag'd under such Regulations as that Prince thought proper to establish. But still those noble *Russian* Families which have been transplanted hither, look upon it as a very great Grievance, and not without Reason in some Respects, for they were oblig'd to build Houses, and pay very dear for every thing they wanted at *Petersburgh*; whereas in *Russia* they subsisted themselves on the Produce of their Farms, maintain'd three times the Number of Servants, and kept much better Houses than they can pretend to do in this Town. However, such is their profound Submission to their Princes, that they readily obey the Commands of the Government when they are order'd to transport themselves and their Families from their Native Country and settle here.

10. South West of *Ingria*, lies *Livonia*, or *Lieffland*, another of the late Czar's Conquests from the Crown of *Sweden*. This Country is bounded by the Gulph of *Finland* on the North: by *Ingria* and *Great Novogrod* towards the East: by the River *Dwina*, which separates it from *Courland* and other Provinces of *Poland*, towards the South: and by the *Baltick Sea* towards the West. Extending about an hundred and sixty Miles in Length, from North to South, and an hundred and twenty in Breadth, from East to West: It is usually divided into two parts, viz, *Esthonia* on the North, and *Letten* or *Letitia* on the South. The chief Towns are, 1. *Narva*, situate in 59 Degrees of North Latitude, on a River which runs from the Lake *Pepus* into the Gulph of *Finland*, and divides *Livonia* from *Ingria*. It is a Place of Strength, and hath long been a Bone of Contention between the *Sweedes* and *Muscovites*.

Narva.

In the last War with Sweden the *Muscovites* took it by Storm, making a terrible Slaughter of the Inhabitants, and those who escap'd the Sword, the Czar transplanted to *Casan* and *Astracan*, five hundred Leagues from their Native Country; probably looking upon the Inhabitants as better affected to the *Sweedish* than the *Russian* Government, but afterwards, when he found himself in Possession of the whole Province, and apprehended no Danger on the Side of Sweden, he commanded all the Natives of *Narva* who remain'd alive to return to their own Country; they were however an inconsiderable Number in Comparison of those who had been forc'd from *Narva*; and having lost all their Effects, liv'd in a very miserable Condition not long since, and possibly it will be some time before this City recovers its former Wealth or Splendour. 2. *Revel*, situate on

Revel.

the Gulph of *Finland*, about an hundred Miles to the Westward of *Narva*. It is a good Port, and much improv'd by the late Czar, part of the Royal Navy of *Russia* being laid up here in the Winter. The Town of *Revel* lies partly on the Side of an high Hill, and partly in a pleasant Valley. It was taken by the *Moscovites* in the last War. The Cathedral and the Houses of the Nobility, which are new built, make a good Appearance; the rest of the Town consists of old ruinous Buildings. When they were threaten'd with a Siege, the Inhabitants of the Country crowding hither to save themselves from the barbarous *Cossacks* and *Tartars* in the Czar's Army, there were no less than fifty thousand People swept away by the Plague. The *Russian* Government suffer the Natives to enjoy their antient Privileges, and the free Exercise of their Religion, which

is

is *Lutheran* ; though the *Russians* also have a Church, wherein they perform their religious Worship after their own way. There are three different Jurisdictions in this Town, 1. That of the Magistrates of the Place, who have the Civil Government of the City. 2. That of the Nobility of the Province, consisting of twelve Landraths and a President, who have the Government of the Country. And 3. The *Russian* Governor, in whom the Military Power is lodg'd. Admiral *Apraxin* was lately Governor of all *Esthonia*. The Arms of *Denmark* and *Danish* Inscriptions are frequently seen on the Churches and old Buildings, this Town having been built by the Kings of *Denmark*, from whom the Natives derive most of their Privileges. 3. The City of *Dorpt Torpatum*, *Dorpt.* situate on the River *Embeck*, fifteen Miles to the Southward of the Lake *Peibus*. This Place was taken by the late Czar in 1704, as *Riga* was, the Inhabitants being transplanted to *Casan* and *Astracan*, and the Town utterly destroy'd ; tho' it seems the Czar some Years afterwards thought better of it, and brought back the Natives who surviv'd to their Country again, and encourag'd them to settle there. 4. *Parnow*, a Port Town, situate at the Mouth *Parnow.* of a River of the same Name, which discharges it self into the *Baltick*, being about fifty Miles to the Southward of *Revel*. 5. *Riga*, *Riga.* esteem'd the Capital of *Livonia*, situate in 57 Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, near the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, which a little below discharges it self into a Bay of the *Baltick*, call'd the *Livonian Sea*. This is also a Port Town of good Trade, where another part of the Royal Navy of *Russia* is usually laid up during the Winter. This City suffer'd very

*Dunamun-
munder
Fort.*

much in the last War, there being no less than eight thousand Bombs thrown into the Place during the Siege, and the Plague carry'd off upwards of threescore thousand People about the same time. The *Czar* however to Comfort the Survivors, promis'd them a Confirmation of their ancient Privileges, which were very extensive; they were lately in a miserable Condition nevertheless, for the *Czar's* Orders in favour of the Natives, I perceive, were but very ill observ'd. Two Leagues below *Riga*, at the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, stands the *Dunamunder* Fort, a very strong Fortress, which commands the Passage of the River up to *Riga*; but this also is now in the Possession of the *Moscovites*. *Livonia* having been subject to the *Germans*, *Danes*, *Poles*, *Swedes*, and *Moscovites* in their turn, the Inhabitants are a Mixture of all these Nations; but the *Germans* are most numerous, and their Language generally prevails here. No Country produc'd better Corn than this, with which they us'd to supply other Parts of *Europe*; but they have been miserably ravag'd and harass'd of late Years, their Towns and Villages destroy'd, and most of the Natives who escap'd the Sword and the Plague, are remov'd to other Countries, insomuch that there are now very few People to be met with in *Livonia*; the Lands cannot therefore be expected to produce that Plenty of Corn they did heretofore. The greatest Calamities this Country suffer'd, were in the Beginning of the War, when the *Czar* was in doubt whether he should be able to maintain the Possession of it, and therefore to strike a Terror into the *Swedes*, he permitted the *Calmucks*, and other *Tartars*, to commit unheard of Barbarities, which the

Swedes

Swedes afterwards retaliated on the *Muscovites*. The common People remain Slaves as they were under the *Swedish* Government, but the *Czar* has rather enlarg'd the Privileges of the Nobility, than retrench'd them, and granted many of them their Estates, which the Crown of *Sweden* had seiz'd upon one Pretence or other. The Sea, the Lakes and navigable Rivers, which surround this Country, are wonderful convenient for carrying on a Trade between *Moscow* and the rest of *Europe*; and 'tis probable that the Ports of *Riga* and *Revel* will be of more Advantage to the *Russians* than *Petersburgh* it self. The *Czar* had never been at that Expence, and thrown away so many thousands of his Subjects Lives, in laying the Foundation of that Capital to obtain a Communication with the *Baltick*, if he could have foreseen he should so soon after have been in the peaceable Possession of the Ports of *Livonia*; and notwithstanding the immense Sums which have been levy'd to make *Petersburgh* a Port, it is not improbable but the *Russians* Trade may center here at last.



C H A P. IV.

Treats of the Provinces of Great Novogrod, Belozero, Wologda, Jerislaw, Tweer, and Smolensko.

II. **T**HE Province of Great Novogrod, or *Novogrod Veliki*, is bounded by the Provinces of *Ingria* and *Belozero* towards the North:

Novogrod
City.

North : by *Jereslaw* towards the East : by the Province of *Smolensko* towards the South : and by *Livonia* towards the West : (In which Limits I include the Subdivision of *Pleskow*). The chief Town whereof is, 1 *Novogrod*, situate in the Latitude of 58 Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, and is upwards of two hundred Miles North West of *Moscow*. It stands in a fine Plain on the River *Wolcoss*, which rises from the Lake *Ilmen*, half a League to the Southward of this City, and running Northward, falls into the Lake *Ladoga*, which River being navigable from the very Source, is of vast Advantage to this City ; accordingly we find it to have been one of the most populous trading Towns in this part of the World, and independant of any foreign Prince, till the Year 1477, when the great Duke of *Moscow* compell'd them to receive a Governour from him, and afterwards plunder'd the Place, carrying away an immense Treasure. The great Duke *John Bazilowitz* afterwards, in the Year 1569, on Pretence of a Conspiracy form'd against him, demolish'd great part of the Town, and massacred the Inhabitants. In the Year 1611 the *Svedes* took it by Storm, but afterwards surrendr'd it to the *Moscovites*, whose Government having been very severe and tyrannical, this Town is fallen to decay ; and neither its Limits or the Number of its Inhabitants are equal to what they were while it retain'd its Independency. It is however a considerable City still, the See of an Archbishop, and there are 180 Monastries and Churches in and about the City built of Stone. On the opposite side of the River stands a Castle, the Walls fac'd with Stone, but most of the other Buildings are poor Wooden Houses compos'd

compos'd of great Pieces of Timber, like those in the Country. It was heretofore comprehended in the League of the *Hans Town*, and the Staple of Trade for the lesser Towns; and we must not here forget the Monastery of *St. Anthony*, a Saint whom the *Russians* have in great Veneration. These credulous *Christians* make no scruple to believe that this Saint swam from *Rome* down the *Tiber* upon a Mill-Stone, and having pass'd the Straits of *Gibraltar*, continu'd his Course through the *Atlantick Ocean*, pass'd thro' the *Baltick*, and the Gulph of *Finland*, and then cross the Lake *Ladoga*, till he arriv'd in the River *Walcoff* on his Mill-Stone at the place where *Novogrod* now stands: Here he wrought many other Miracles, they tell us, and the Mill-Stone is shewn to this Day, and worshipped as a sacred Relick. The Country about *Novogrod* abounds in Grain, Flax, Hemp, Honey, Wax, and the best *Russia Leather* is manufactur'd here. 2. *New Russia*, situate *New Russia.* on the South West part of the *Ilmen Lake*, about fifty Miles South West of *Novogrod*. 3. *Staria*, or *Old Russia*, situate on the South *Staria.* West part of the *Ilmen Lake*, about ten Leagues to the Eastward of *New Russia*. 4. *Pleskow*, the Capital of the Dukedom of that *Pleskow.* Name (which I have here included within the Province of *Novogrod*) is situate in 57 Degrees on the South West part of the Lake *Worsero*, about two hundred Miles South West of *Novogrod*. *Pleskow* is a large populous City, and was govern'd by its own Princes till the Year 1509, when the great Duke of *Moscow* reduced it under his Power.

12. The Province of *Belozero* has the Lake *Belozero.* of *Omega* on the North: the Province of *Wologda* on the East: and the Province of *Novogrod*

Wologda.

gorod towards the South and West : the chief Town whereof is *Belozero*, situate on the South part of the *Belozero* Lake. 13. The Province of *Wologda* has *Rubenska* on the North: *Jereflaw* on the South : and *Belozero* on the West : the chief Town whereof is *Wologda*, situate in fifty Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, upon a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Dwina*, being two hundred Miles and upwards to the Northward of *Moscow*. It is a large City, and surrounded with a Stone Wall, which is not common in *Russia*, and a Place of very good Trade ; and when the late *Czar* propos'd the removing the Mechanicks and Handicraft Trades from hence to his favourite City of *Petersburg*, it was represented to him, that there were three *German* Merchants only settled at *Wologda*, who employ'd twenty five thousand Persons and upwards, in dressing of Hemp and Flax, which was annually exported to foreign Countries, by the way of *Archangel* ; and that if they were oblig'd to keep the same Number at *Petersburg*, where every thing was five times as dear, that Trade would be so far from turning to Account, that they would be losers by it. That the greater part of the Goods exported from *Archangel*, were of the growth of the Province of *Wologda*, from whence they were easily carried to that Port by Water, whereas if they were order'd for *Petersburg*, they must go a great way over Land, and at a far greater Expence. That the Air about *Petersburg* was too moist for the keeping Hemp, and the Navigation of the Gulph of *Finland* so hazardous, that the Insuring of Ships was very extravagant ; which were all found substantial Reasons against their removing to *Petersburg*, and gave some
sto

stop to his Projects at that time. But to give some further Description of the City of *Wologda*: It is divided by the River in two parts, lying along the Banks of it between three and four Miles: The great Church was built by an *Italian* Architect, and has five Cupola's cover'd with Tin, with large gilt Crosses on the top of them: There are above twenty more Stone Churches in the Place with their Cupola's cover'd with Tin, and gilded Crosses; and between forty and fifty more built of Wood, with three Monasteries of Friars, and one of Nuns.

14. *Jereslaw*, or *Yeroslaw*, as the Germans *Jereslaw* pronounce it, is bounded by *Wologda* on the North, and by the Dukedom of *Rostow* in the Province of *Moscow* towards the South: The chief Town whereof is *Jereslaw*, situate in fifty seven Degrees North Latitude, on the River *Wolga*, in a plentiful Country; the principal Trade being in Linnen and Leather. It is esteem'd one of the principal Cities in *Russia*, and is taken notice of for the great Number of Churches in it built of Stone, these being for the most part of Wood in the other Towns of *Russia*.

15. Between Great *Novogorod* and *Jereslaw* lies the district of *Tweer*: The chief Town *Tweer* whereof is *Tweer*, situate on the River *Wolga* in fifty six Degrees odd Minutes, about four-score Miles North of *Mosco*. The Town consists of about two thousand Houses, with seventy Churches and Monasteries, and a Castle on an adjoining Hill, in which the Governor resides: A great many thousand Loads of Wheat are brought up hither annually from *Casan*, and sent from hence to *Petersburg* in Sleds.

Smolensko. 16. The Province of *Smolensko* is bounded by the Province of *Great Novogorod* on the North: The Province of *Mosco* on the East, and the Province of *Lithuania* in *Poland* towards the West: The chief Town whereof is *Smolensko*, situate in fifty five Degrees 30 Minutes North Latitude, on the River *Nieper*, or *Boristhines*: This Province was antiently a part of *Lithuania*, and has been alternatively under the Dominion of the *Poles* and *Moscovites*, but was confirm'd to the *Moscovites* by a Treaty in the Year 1686.



C H A P. V.

Treats of the Province of Mosco.

Mosco Province. 17. **M** O S C O, or *Moscowa*, (in which I shall include the Districts of *Rasow*, *Perislaw*, *Susdal* and *Wolodimir*) is bounded by the Province of *Tweer* towards the North: by *Little*, or *Nise Novogrod* towards the East: by the Province of *Rezan* towards the South: and by *Smolensko* towards the West: The chief Town whereof is *Mosco*, lately the Metropolis of the Empire, till the Imperial Seat was remov'd to *Petersburg*.

Mosco City describ'd. The City of *Mosco* lies in the Latitude of fifty five Degrees odd Minutes, thirty eight Degrees Eastward of *London*, and is situate in a large pleasant Plain on the Banks of the River *Moscowa*, extending six Miles in length and four in breadth. The multitude of Churches with their gilded Cupola's and Spires, and the numerous Palaces of the *Czar* and the Nobility, which are surrounded with large

large Courts and Gardens, afford a beautiful Prospect as we approach the City, especially on the Road from *Great Novogorod*; but it is far from answering the Traveller's Expectation when he enters it: There are indeed two or three thousand handsome Stone Buildings, which of themselves wou'd form a Noble City; if they stood together, and were laid out in regular Streets, but they are dispers'd here and there amongst a far greater Number of Poor Wooden Houses built of Beams of Fir Timber, in the manner already describ'd in treating of their other Towns. The Walls, or rather Enclosures, which surround the Courts and Gardens belonging to the Grantees are also of Wood: And instead of a Pavement the Streets are laid with Beams of Fir Timber. The Town is divided into four quarters, each of them surrounded by a Wall: Within the first, through which the River *Moscow* runs, are the *Slaboda's*, or Suburbs, great part of which lie in a ruinous Condition, having been frequently destroy'd by Fires, or Foreign Enemies: Within the second Wall is the quarter call'd *Czar-Gorod*, or the *Czar's City*: The third goes by the Name of *Kitai*, or the *China-Town*; for here *China* and *Indian* Merchandizes are expos'd to Sale. The fourth Wall encloses *Kremelin*, or the quarter where the Royal Palace stands; within which are thirty or forty Churches and Chapels, the late Patriarch's Palace, the principal Offices of State, and several Monasteries, and might pass for a considerable City alone. Before the Walls is a large Market-Place, the finest in the whole City. In *Kitai Gorod* is a Place where the Pictures of their Saints are expos'd to view, or rather to Sale;

but as the *Russians* look upon the selling of their Saints in the usual manner they do other Goods to be Impious; they exchange them they say for Money, and for this Reason there is no chaffering, or bearing down the Price, but the Buyer must either give the Money demanded for the Saint, or leave him. In *Czar Gorod* there are large Markets of Wooden Ware, where hundreds of Wooden Houses ready fram'd are daily expos'd to Sale, and when they meet with a Purchaser, they are soon taken to pieces and set up in any part of the Town where the Buyer desires: were it not for this Conveniency the Inhabitants would often be reduc'd to very great Distresses by the Fires which frequently happen and destroy many thousands of these Wooden Tenements in a few Hours; for as the Streets are laid with Fir Timber, and the Partitions of their Yards and Gardens are of the same Combustible Matter, if a Fire happens in dry Weather, and there is any thing of a Wind, it is almost impossible to stop it.

As the Government Monopolizes almost all sorts of Merchandize, it hath suffer'd considerably by these Fires as well as private Men; but of late the most valuable Goods are secur'd in Vaults built of Brick, or Stone, so that Fires are not so destructive as they have been. There are, 'tis said, no less than fifteen hundred Churches and Monasteries in and about *Mosco*, so well supply'd with Bells, that the Inhabitants are almost deafned with their Noise on Holy Days; some few Clocks they have also in the City, but the general way of giving notice of the Time of Day is by striking every Hour upon a Board with a great Wooden Hammer, especially in the Noblemens

Noblemens Houses. The Czar's Palace is situate on the side of the River *Moscow*, and built of Free Stone, but very irregularly, having been the Work of several Princes, who made such Additions to it for their Convenience from time to time as they saw fit: The Circumference of the whole is about twice as large as that of the Tower of *London*. Since the removal of the Court to *Petersburgh*, the Czar's Apartments are empty and unfurnish'd; and to promote the Grandeur of *Petersburg*, an Order has been publish'd to prohibit the rebuilding, or repairing any of the Palaces of the Nobility, or other Stone Buildings of *Mosco*: The Cathedral which stands in *Kremelin*, is a large ancient Structure strongly built of Stone: On the Right Side of the Altar is a Seat for the Czar, and on the Left that where the Patriarch sat, while they had one: In the middle of the Church hangs a Silver Branch of a prodigious size: The Picture of the Virgin *Mary*, and the other Ornaments of the Altar are set off with Jewels to the value of fifty thousand Crowns and upwards: And they shew another Picture of the Virgin *Mary* here, pretended to be drawn by St. *Luke*: At the bottom of the Steeple of this Cathedral lies the great Bell so much taken notice of by Travellers, said to weigh 336000 Pounds, and to be thirteen Feet in Diameter. In the Church of St. *Michael* are the Tombs of the Czars and Princes of the Royal Family: And before the Gate of the Castle stands the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, said to be built exactly after the Pattern of that in *Jerusalem*. The late Czar founded three Colleges at *Mosco*, one for the learned Languages, in which are three hundred Students,

Russians,

Russians, Polanders and Ukranians. In the second, are taught the Mathematicks, the Head of which House lately was an *English Man*. And in the third is taught Navigation only. There are such Numbers of idle People about *Mosco*, that 'tis very unsafe walking the Streets in the Evening, especially during their Carnival, when the whole Nation almost is drunk; then Street-Robberies are very frequent, and they most commonly murder those they rifle; infomuch that there have been found fifty or threescore dead Bodies in the Streets in a Week's time. Notwithstanding which, some Travellers mightily cry up the Delights of *Moscow*, and the Pleasures that are to be found in its Neighbourhood: There is, say they, the greatest variety of Diversions, fine Walks, Groves, Gardens and Country Seats, which are to be met with any where: The Country also produces all manner of Fruits, Flowers and Garden Stuff, which as well as Game, and all the Necessaries of Life are extremely cheap at

Rostow.

Mosco. 2. *Rostow*, or *Rostoff* is situate in fifty seven Degees odd Minutes North Latitude, about an hundred and twenty Miles North-

Perislaw.

East of *Mosco*. 3. *Perislaw*, or *Perislof*, fifty Miles South-West of *Rostow*, on the Road from thence to *Mosco*. 4. *Susdal*, situate near an

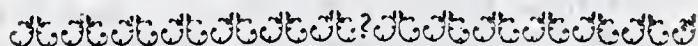
Susdal.

hundred Miles North-East of *Mosco*, on the River *Kisma*. 5. *Wolodimer*, situate on the same River *Kisma*, about forty Miles to the Eastward of *Susdal*. These four last Cities

Wolodimer.

are the Capitals of so many Principalities, and sometimes reckoned distinct Provinces from *Mosco*. 6. *Troitza*, about forty Miles North of *Mosco*; famous for its Castle and Monastery, and is sometimes the Residence
of

of the Czar, who hath a Palace here. 7. *Columnia*, situate at the Confluence of the Rivers *Moscow* and *Occa*, about fifty Miles South-East of *Mosco*.



CHAP. VI.

Treats of the Provinces of Nise-Novogorod, Casan, Bulgar, Rezan, Belgorod, the Territory of the Don Cossacks, the Land of Seefsk, Zernigof or Zernihow, and the Russian Ukrain.

18. **T**HE Province of *Nise-Novogorod*, or *Nise-Novogorod*, is bounded by *Casan* on the East, and *Mosco* on the West: The chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Nise-Novogorod*, or *Nisna*, situate in fifty five Degrees odd Minutes upon the River *Oka*, about two hundred Miles to the Eastward of *Mosco*: It is surrounded with a Stone Wall, and hath a Citadel built upon a Rock: The Cathedral is built with Stone, and cover'd by five Domes, or Cupola's, painted Green, and adorn'd with gilt Crosses: Adjoining to it stands the Archbishop's Palace, an handsome Stone Building. There are also two or three other Stone Churches, but the rest of the Buildings, whether publick or private, are all of Wood. 2. *Basilgorod*, a good Town situate about twenty Leagues to the Eastward of *Nisna* on the River *Volga*.

19. *Casan*, is bounded by the Province of *Nise-Novogorod* on the West, and *Bulgar* on the East: The chief Town whereof is, *Casan*, the Capital of the Province, situate in fifty five

five Degrees thirty Minutes North Latitude, near the Confluence of the Rivers *Wolga* and *Casan*, being about four hundred Miles to the Eastward of *Mosco*. The many fine Churches with their Cupola's and Crosses, and the Castle surrounded by a Stone Wall, make a magnificent appearance at a distance. Near this City upon the *Wolga*, the Ships of War and Gallies are built which are design'd for the *Caspian Sea*. The Houses are most of them mean Wooden Buildings, and there being a great deal of waist and Garden Ground within the Walls, this, like most of the other Cities of *Russia*, has the resemblance rather of a large Village than a City. To the Southward of *Casan* inhabit the *Ceremissi Tartars* along the Banks of the *Wolga*, and further West the *Mordua Tartars*.

*Ceremissi
and Mordua
Tartars.*

Bulgar.

20. *Bulgar*, lies to the Southward of *Casan*: The chief Towns are, 1. *Bulgar*, or *Belaya*, situate on the River *Wolga*, in fifty four Degrees North Latitude, an hundred and twenty Miles South-East of *Casan*. And, 2. *Samara*, about an hundred Miles further to the Southward upon the *Wolga*: As to the Province, or Kingdom of *Astracan*, which lies to the South-East of *Bulgar*: This has been describ'd already in treating of *Moscovy* in *Asia*.

Rezan.

21. The Province of *Rezan* is bounded by *Mosco* towards the North: By *Nise-Novogorod* towards the East; and by the Province of *Belgorod* on the South: The chief Town whereof is, *Rezankoi*, situate on the River *Oka*, in fifty four Degrees 30 Minutes North Latitude, about twenty five Leagues South-East of *Mosco*. The River *Don* hath its Source in this Province.

22. *Belgorod* is bounded by the Province of *Rezan* on the North, and the Territory of the *Don Cossacks* towards the South-East: The chief Town whereof is *Veroneze*; or, as our Maps have it, *Woronets*, situate in fifty two Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, about two hundred Miles to the Southward of *Mosco*, on the River *Veroneze*, near the place where it discharges it self into the *Don*. Here the late Czar built his Men of War which he design'd for the *Black Sea*, some of them 80 Gun Ships; but upon his being oblig'd to surrender *Azoph* to the *Turks*, his Communication with that Sea was cut off, and the Ships suffer'd to perish. The Czar also commanded a Canal to be dug from the River *Veroneze*, to another small River which falls into the *Wolga*; whereby there is a Communication now between the *Wolga* and the *Don*, and might be between the *Caspian* and the *Black Sea*, if the *Moscovite* was still Master of *Azoph*. This Work was perform'd by our Country-man, Captain *Perry*, who was also employ'd in cutting another Canal, in order to a Communication between the *Wolga* and the *Don*, nearer the Mouths of those two Rivers, at *Kamisinka*, in the Latitude of 45 Degrees; but this Work was laid aside when it was half finish'd, and probably will not be proceeded in while *Azoph* is in the Hands of the *Turk*. 2. *Belgorod*, situate in 51 Degrees, upon the River *Donetz*, about three hundred Miles to the Southward of *Mosco*. And, 3. *Ostrogofskoi*, about sixty Miles to the Southward of *Veroneze*.

23. The Territory of the *Don Cossacks*, which lies between the *Palus Meotis* and the River *Don*, or *Tanaïs*, and to the Eastward of that River,

Don Cossacks.

Donetzkoï.

River, extending seven or eight hundred Miles in length : The chief Town whereof is *Donetzkoï*, situate on the East side of the *Don*, in 50 Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude ; but there are not many other Towns here, the Country being thinly Inhabited on account of the frequent Excursions of the *Cossack* and *Crim Tartars*, who depend on the *Grand Signior* ; and the Natives choosing to live for the most part in Huts or Tents, like their Brethren the Neighbouring *Tartars* ; but there is no where a happier Climate, or a more Fruitful Soil than this, if it were cultivated.

Seefsk.

24. The Land of *Seefsk* is bounded by *Smolensko* on the North, *Belgorod* on the East, the *Ukrain* on the South, and *Zernigof* towards the West : The chief Town *Seefsk*, situate in 53 Degrees North Latitude, about two hundred Miles South-West of *Mosco*.

Zernigof.

25. The Province of *Zernigof*, or *Czernihow*, bounded by *Smolensko* towards the North, the Land of *Seefsk* towards the East, the *Ukrain* on the South, and part of *Poland* on the West : The chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Novogrodeck*, situate in 53 Degrees of North Latitude, about sixty Miles to the Westward of *Seefsk*. 2. *Zernigof*, situate in 52 Degrees North Latitude, about two hundred Miles to the Southward of *Smolensko*.

Ukrain.

26. The *Russian-Ukrain*, bounded by *Zernigof* on the North : *Belgorod* and the *Don Cossacks* towards the East : *Little Tartary* and *Prodolia* on the South, and *Polish-Ukrain* on the West, from which it is divided by the River *Nieper*, or *Boristhines* : the chief Town whereof is *Kiow*, or *Kiof* (as in the Maps) situate on the River *Boristhines*, in 51 Degrees North Latitude, 700 Miles South-West of *Mosco* ; it was
surrendered

surrendered to the *Moscovites* by the *Poles* in 1686. This Country is inhabited by the *Cossacks*, and call'd *Ukrain*, which signifies a Frontier, because it lies upon the Frontiers of *Little Tartary*; with which Country they are scarce ever at Peace: For if the *Turk*, who claims the Sovereignty of these *Tartars*, hath consented to a Truce, it is with great difficulty the *Tartars* are restrain'd from their Incursions into *Moscovy* and *Poland*; from whence they steal most of the Slaves they sell to the *Porte*; but as the *Cham* of *Tartary* is supported by the *Turks*, so are the *Cossacks* by the *Poles* and *Russians*. The *Moscovites* have sometimes penetrated into the *Cham's* Country as far as *Precop*; having nothing more at Heart than the Conquest of that Country; for till this is effected they can never be at rest, or make any improvement of that fine Country which lies upon their Southern Frontiers. On the other hand, shou'd the *Moscovite* ever make himself Master of *Little Tartary* and the North-Coast of the *Black Sea*, the *Turk* is very sensible he wou'd not stop here, but *Constantinople* wou'd be in danger from their Shipping; on which Account the *Grand Signior* garrisons all the considerable Towns in *Crim* and *Little Tartary* with his own Troops, and will not trust them in the Hands of the *Cham* and his *Tartars*, lest they should by force or fraud be prevail'd on to surrender them to his most dangerous Enemies: The lower part of the *Nieper*, or *Boristhines*, which runs through this Country and *Budziack Tartary* into the *Black Sea*, is scarce Navigable, on account of the many Cataracts which are found in it. The late *Czar* however had possess'd himself of *Kasikermen* in *Budziack Tartary* near the Mouth

Kasikermen
surrendered to
the Turk.

of this River, and fortified it probably with a view of making it Navigable, and procuring a Communication that way with the *Black Sea*, as he had done with the *Palus Meotis*, by the means of *Asoph*; but he was oblig'd to surrender both the one and the other, after the unfortunate Battle of the *Pruth*, and be contented to be excluded entirely from the Navigation of the *Black Sea*.

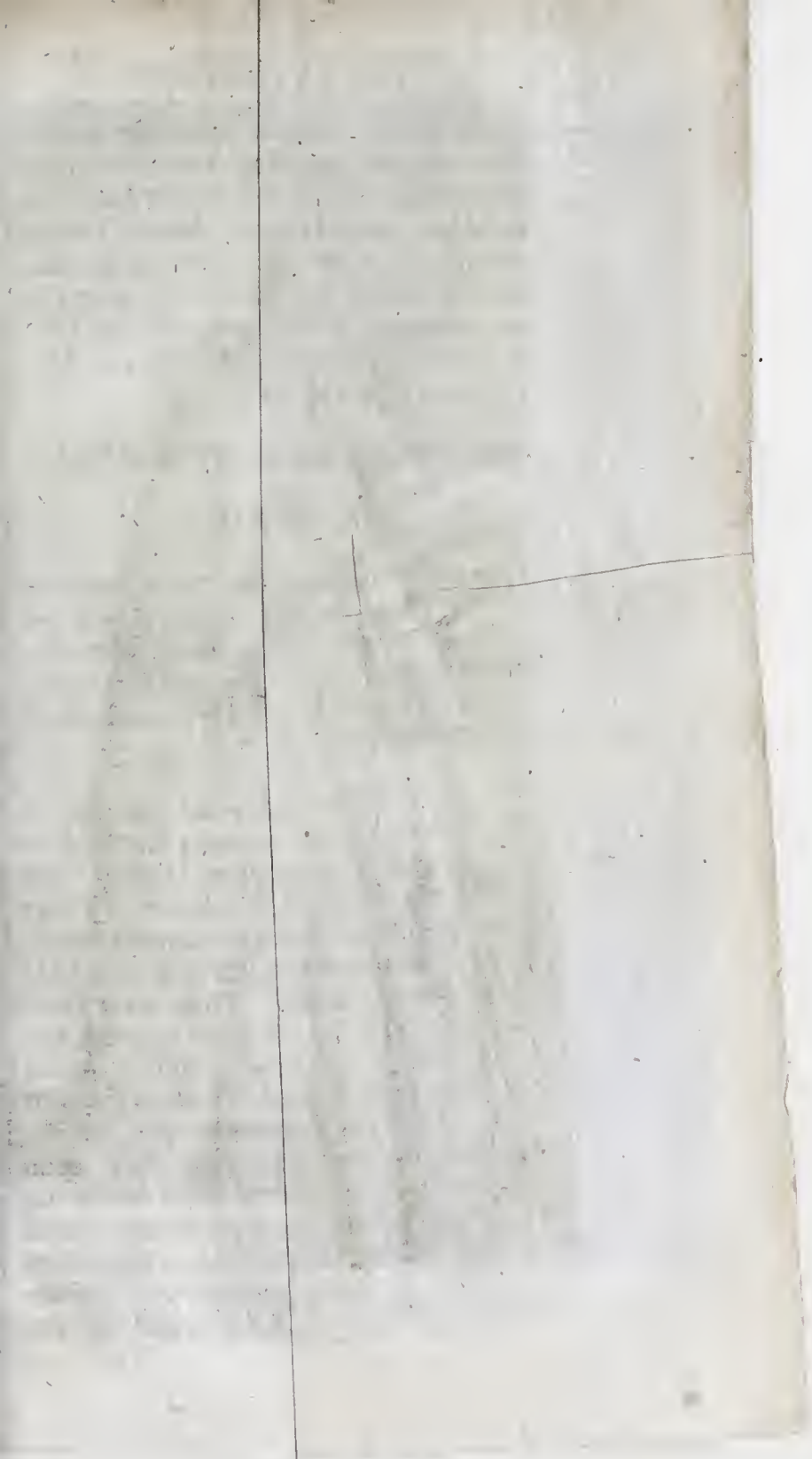


C H A P. VII.

Treats of the Stature, Complexion, Shape, and Habits of the Russians. Of their Genius, Temper and Vices. Of their Diet, Lodging, Baths, Exercises, Diversions, Festivals, Salutations, and Ceremonies. And of their Posts, Roads, Carriages, and way of Travelling.

Persons
of the
Russians.

THE *Russians* are of a good Stature, a Dutch Shape, and generally inclin'd to be Corpulent; at least this is what they very much endeavour after and admire. Their Features and Complexions are tolerably good; and they are commonly blest'd with a hale and vigorous Constitution. They wear their Hair short, and sometimes close shav'd; but till the last Reign valu'd themselves much upon their long Beards and Whiskers, which the late *Czar* compell'd them to part with; sometimes by laying a swinging Tax upon them, and at others by ordering those he found with Beards on to have them pull'd up by the Roots, or shav'd with a blunt Razor, which drew the Skin after it; and by these means scarce a Beard was left in the Kingdom





The ancient habit of a Russian Lady



The habit of a Russian Virgin .

Kingdom at his Death : But such a Veneration had this People for these Ensigns of Gravity, that many of them carefully preserv'd their Beards in their Cabinets to be buried with them ; imagining, perhaps, they shou'd make but an odd Figure in the Grave with naked Chins. The Features and Complexion of their Women are not to be found fault with ; but without a pretty deal of red in their Faces they are not esteem'd handsome ; when they wou'd describe a Beauty therefore they say, she is of a lively red, which is the highest Compliment can be pass'd upon a Lady ; and if Nature has not furnish'd them with it, they seldom fail to lay it on in abundance, for they paint intollerably : Their Faces also were cover'd with Patches heretofore, cut into all manner of shapes, as Trees, Flowers, Animals, and sometimes Coaches and Horses. The Virgins us'd to have their Hair plaited, which hung down in two Tresses on their Backs, but Married Women put it up under a Coif : They conform at present to the Fashions used amongst us. The Women are of a just height, a good Shape, their Limbs proportionable and well turn'd, and most of them are inclinable to be Fat ; but they still look upon black Teeth to be more beautiful than white, as do their Neighbours the *Asiatics*. As to their Habits, the Men lately wore on their Heads a Cap in form of a Sugar Loaf, turn'd up with Furs, a Vest and a loose Robe over it down to their Heels, like the *Greeks*, and Boots on their Legs : But the late *Czar* looking upon our Dress as more commodious, when he return'd from his Travels oblig'd his Subjects to conform themselves to it ; which some of the *Russians* making a difficulty to

Habits.
comply

comply with, he placed Guards at the Gates of their Cities, who cut the Cloaths of all that pass'd by as short as their Knees ; and instead of their Fur Caps, they now wear Hats, like other *Europeans* ; but they seem to affect the Gold Lace of the *Germans* much more than the plain neat *English* Dress. The Women, whose Dress did not differ much from that of the Mens, except in the ordering their Hair, at present follow the *German* or *French* Mode. As to the *Laplanders* and *Samoieds*, who inhabit the Northern parts of this Empire, I have already observ'd that they are of the *Tartar* make, and cloath themselves from Head to Foot with the Skins of their Rein Deer, sewing two Skins together with the Hairy sides outwards ; so that they appear all over Hair, like the Animals they take the Skins from, and have the Hair next them too ; the Coat and Cap is all of a Piece ; and next their Skins, instead of Linnen, they wear a Doublet made of a young Fawn Skin, which is much warmer.

Samoieds.

Genius
and Temper
of the
Russians.

The Temper of the *Russians* is not much admir'd ; they are held indeed to have good Parts, and capable of imitating any thing they see done ; but are very deceitful, and intolerably proud and Slothful, and can hardly be brought to learn any Art or Science without the Discipline of the Whip. But there seems to be a very good Reason against their applying themselves to Mechanick Arts ; Namely, that the Government, or the Lords whose Slaves they are, will employ their whole time if they are found to excell in any Art, and allow them nothing for their pains ; and that which passes for Obstinacy, at last may possibly be the result of Prudence. A *French* Traveller however gives this Character of them, they are,

lays





H. Burgh Sculp

The Habit of a Lapland Woman



H. Burgh Sculp.

The Habit of a Lapland Man



says he, the proudest and most conceited People upon Earth : Till lately, they look'd upon all other Nations as barbarous ; imagining themselves to be the only Polite Mortals on the Face of the Globe. And when the late *Czar* wou'd compel them to imitate the Artists he brought over with him, the Pride and Contempt with which they look'd upon their new Masters, was no small hindrance to their Proficiency. They have no Notion of Honour or disinterested Views, but are entirely govern'd by selfish Principles. The *Czar* himself us'd to call them a Herd of Brutes in the Shape of Men ; and almost despair'd of prevailing over their Obstinacy and Perverseness. Most of the young Nobility whom he sent Abroad for their Improvement, brought scarce any thing back with them but the Vices of the Nations they pass'd thro' ; tho' there are some instances indeed of the *Russian* Nobility, who, upon their return Home have distinguish'd themselves by their Capacity and Polite Conduct. Captain *Perry* observes of the *Russians*, that when they make the greatest Professions of Sincerity and Friendship, they are most to be suspected of a design to injure you. The generality of the People are so far from having any Sense of Shame for doing a base thing, that they value themselves on over-reaching one another : An honest Man and a Fool with them are Terms of the same import. Their Vanity was in nothing more conspicuous than in the numerous Trains of useless and unnecessary Servants and Dependants, with which the Gentry ever appear'd abroad ; some of them you might see walking bear Headed before their Lords, in the Streets of *Mosco* ; others following

following dress'd in different Colours and Habits, to shew the different Countries from whence they came ; the Master all the while on Horse-back, or in his Sledge, marching in the midst of them as slow as Foot cou'd fall, in the coldest Weather ; for the State of the Master, or to give his Retinue who were on Foot an Opportunity of keeping Pace with him : And the Trains of the Noblemen's Ladies were equally numerous ; till the late *Czar*, who might be rather said to fly than travel from one part of his extensive Dominions to another, set them a Pattern of going abroad but with two or three Servants, and commanded the *Boyars* (his Nobility) and other People of Condition to observe the same Rule. He order'd also a List to be brought him of all the idle Retainers in the *Boyars* Houses, and made them serve in his Troops ; and notwithstanding the large Sums offer'd, and powerful Intercessions which were made for releasing some of them who were of good Families, he wou'd not hear of it. Drunkenness is so common in *Moscow*, that it is scarce esteem'd a Vice ; nay, some of our Travellers carry it so far as to say, they make it part of their Religion ; and that they do not think they have kept a Holy-day as they ought to do, if they not are Drunk before Night ; but such Expressions are not surely to be taken strictly. The common People are more at leisure at those times, and consequently have better Opportunities of meeting with their Friends and getting Drunk, as we see they do every where else at such times : but certain it is, the *Russians* are more addicted to this Vice than other Nations, if we give any Credit to Travellers. Captain Perry says, if we

Their
predomi-
nate Vi-
ce.

we Ride thro' *Mosco* on a Holy day, we shall see both Priests and People lye Drunk upon the Ground; and if you go to help one of them up, he will say by way of excuse, it is Holy-day time : That their Women of Quality are so little asham'd of drinking to excess, that they will acknowledge their having been very Drunk, and return thanks to their Friends who made them so, for the Favour done them. The same Gentleman relates, that for several Years after he went into the Country, it was usual at all great Entertainments, where the Court was present, as well as at the Houses of private Gentlemen, to make the whole Company Drunk before they parted, or they did not think themselves welcome ; and the Company were sometimes forc'd to it, by locking up the Doors, or setting a Guard upon them that none might get away : And this Custom was extended even to Foreigners. But at length Mr. *Whitworth*, her late Majesties Ambassador in *Russia*, made such effectual Representations against this force put upon him and his People to the Prime Minister, that they were afterwards allow'd their Liberty; and from this great Example, the Court of *Russia* and People of Distinction began to disuse this Custom of forcing Liquor upon their Friends. This must be allow'd to be a Noble Instance of an Heroick Resolution, thus to stem the Torrent of a prevailing Vicious Custom; and shews what a mighty Influence Men of Figure have when they please to Countenance Virtue. But still it may be made a Question, whether some of our Countrymen are not more likely to introduce the *Russian* Custom of drinking to excess amongst us, than our Ministers are to

reform that People ; for however Mr. *Whitworth* might be so happy to discourage this Brutish Custom by his Example and Representations to the *Russian* Court during his Embassy there, they do not seem at present less addicted to Tipling than they were formerly. A Minister who was at that Court since Mr. *Whitworth*, relates, that at the first Entertainment he was invited to by Admiral *Apraxin*, he was oblig'd, after having drank down a dozen Bumpers of *Hungary* Wine at Dinner, to take off a full Quart of Brandy at two Draughts; whereupon he lost his Senses, but had the comfort of seeing most of the Company fall'n upon the Floor before him. At another Entertainment for a Victory obtain'd over the *Swedes*, he observ'd, the first Health was began *To the Mercy of God*, the second *to all brave Sailors*, the third *to all Faithfull Allies*, the next *to all brave Soldiers*, and others succeeded of the like Nature; that on an Invitation to the late *Czar's* Palace at *Peterhoff* on the Coast of *Ingria*, the Company were ply'd so hard with *Tockay* Wine at Dinner, that they cou'd scarce stand; and were nevertheless oblig'd afterwards to empty each of them a Bowl of a Quart, which did their Business at once; and tho' the *Czar* was so wise to forbear drinking himself, he was far from discouraging this Excess in the Company: On the contrary, four and twenty Hours had not pass'd before he made the same Company drunk again; and as this is the greatest Favour can be done a *Russian*, possibly his Majesty indulg'd his People in this Vice to ingratiate himself with them, and that they might not oppose the great Designs he had in view. And as to the Foreign Ministers;

sters, there might be something of design also in thus perpetually plying them with strong Liquors.

As to their Diet, the common People of *Russia*, and indeed the whole Nation, are much more us'd to Fish than Flesh, especially Salt Fish; their Fasts taking up near two thirds of the Year, when they are absolutely prohibited by their Religion to tast of Flesh: and in this they seem to place the greatest part of Religion, even their Children observing it with the utmost strictness; and as they eat no Flesh at these times, neither will they tast of Milk or Eggs, or any thing that has any Relation to it. They eat Melons, Cucumbers, Turnips, and other Garden Stuff in great abundance, and choose Rye Bread rather than Wheat, tho' they have enough of both. They will March a Fortnight or three Weeks very contentedly when they are in the Army, if you supply them but with Saccary, which is Rye Bread broken into small pieces and baked a second time, especially if they are allow'd a Dram now and then. Caviere made of the Roes of Sturgeon salted and dry'd, is a great Dish amongst them; and People of Condition have out of *Lent* a variety of Flesh and Fowl at their Tables. But before the Company sits down, the Master or Mistress of the House, of what Quality soever, always presents every one of the Guests with a Cup of Brandy on a Plate with her own Hands; and among particular Friends all the Company salute the Lady. The first Course at an Entertainment usually consists of Hams, Tongues, and other Cold Savoury Dishes, that the Liquor may relish the better, I presume; with these stand se-

veral made Dishes, dress'd with Oil, Olives, Onions, and Garlick; which having remain'd upon the Table about an Hour, the second Course, consisting of Soups and Boil'd and Roast Meat, is brought in; after which follows the Disert, and Liquor in abundance; tho' this goes round pretty freely all the time, the Healths being began at the beginning of the Meal, in large Cups of the Fashion of a Bell.

Liquors.

Their Liquors are either Mead, or Quaz, a sort of small Mead made with Honeycombs; but they are of late Years pretty much come into the drinking of Beer: The Profit of which the Government engrosses, all the Brewhouses and Places where Beer is retail'd being the *Czarina's*, and private Houses forc'd to have Licenses of the Government to brew. It is generally very strong, or the *Russians* would not value it; and as it is, they seldom conclude without a Dram of Brandy, or Spirits, of which last they distill great Quantities, and it may be had at reasonable Rates; but of these also the Government has the Profit. They us'd to begin their Entertainments at ten in the Morning, and by twelve or one would drink themselves a-Sleep; and after a short Repose begin to drink afresh: For it is a general Custom among the *Russians*, whether rich or poor, to sleep after Dinner; and this probably may be one Reason of plying Foreigners so hard with Liquor, so much complain'd of, that they want to get rid of them and go to rest; and probably some *English* Gentlemen may have the same inducements for forcing the Glas; or perhaps they would deter their Company by this means from visiting them again: Or there may possibly

possibly be a further Reason, namely, to expose the Weakness of their Friends, and triumph over their Infirmities. But I hope there are not many of our Gentlemen who have so much of the *Russian* in their Tempers.

As to the Lodging of the common People, it Lodgings has been observ'd already, that a House seldom consists of more than one Room ; a fourth part whereof is taken up by the Stove, which is a large Oven with Planks laid over it, so that it appears like a square Table within Doors ; upon which lie as many of the Family as can, and the rest upon broad Benches or Shelves fix'd round the Room, for the Stove or Oven being well heated, all the place is exceeding warm ; those that can afford it have Quilts or Mattresses to lie on, but most of them are content with the bare Boards ; and for Sheets they were scarce heard of in *Russia*, till the late *Czar* introduc'd our Customs among his People : Now indeed the Quality imitate us in our Beds as well as other Furniture, but the Coldness of the Climate will never permit them to disuse their Stoves ; especially since in these they dress all their Meat. Formerly their whole Furniture consisted only in their Stove and their broad Shelves, with their Kitchen Utensils, and the Pictures of their Saints, which cover'd that end of the Room opposite to the Door. As for Chairs and Stools they had but little occasion for them, sitting cross-legged on the Floor, or Benches, like the People of the East, till the late Reform.

The antient way of Salutation was by an Inclination of the Head ; and the greater the Quality of the Person saluted, the lower was the Reverence. Before their Prince, a Noble-
Salutatio-
ons and
Ceremo-
nies.
 man,

man, a Magistrate, or their particular Lord, they prostrated themselves with their Faces to the Ground, after the manner of the East ; and never address'd their Superiors in the first Person ; as *I desire this or that*, but *Little Peter, or John your Slave* entreats this or that favour. As to the Women, it seems they cannot yet be brought to make a Curtsey, but bow their Heads when they salute a Friend, according to antient Custom. When any Person makes a Visit ; on entring his Friends House, he first looks about for the Saint, who is usually painted on a Board and set on a Shelf against the Wall at the upper end of the Room, and sometimes there are as many as will reach from one side of the House to the other ; if the Paint is almost worn off, as it happens often, and there be no Candles burning before them (as there are every Holy-day) the Stranger asks in the first place *where is the God ?* and having discover'd it, makes a low Reverence towards the place ; and if his Devotion be very warm, falls on his Face to the Ground before it, crossing himself, and saying, *Gospodi pomoli* ; or, *Lord have Mercy upon me* ; after which he turns about and salutes the Master of the Family and the rest of the Company ; and the Lady presents him with a Dram, as has been observ'd already, and suffers him to kiss her Cheek ; after which she us'd to withdraw, and appears no more during the Entertainment : but the late *Czar* introduc'd the Custom of the Ladies conversing more familiarly with the other Sex, and discountenanc'd their being shut up in their Apartments after the manner of the *Asiatics* ; by which he entirely won the Hearts of the *Russian Females*,

Bathing

Bathing.

Bathing they use both as a Diversion and a Remedy against Distempers. The Quality have Bagnio's in their own Houses; but both these and the Publick Bagnio's pay a Tax to the Government, from whence arises a considerable Revenue. The *Russians* of both Sexes frequent the Bath twice a Week; there being one Apartment for the Men and another for the Women: but Travellers relate that both the one and the other will come reeking hot out of the Bagnio in the coldest Weather, and run about the Fields naked, that they will in this condition throw themselves into the Water, or pour cold Water on their Heads, and sometimes cover themselves with Snow, that you can discover nothing but their Nose and Eyes. As to the common People, a Modern Traveller assures us, he has seen both Men and Women come naked out of the Bath, and run about in the Snow promiscuously, without any manner of Shame; nor would they avoid a Stranger if he came in their way, but rather sport with him. So that however People of Condition might formerly keep up their Wives and Daughters, and deny them the Conversation of their Male Friends, the Vulgar don't seem to be touch'd with the Plague of Jealousy, or their Wives with any great share of Modesty: Nor is it much to be expected among Females, who give themselves up to Tipling, like the *Russian* Dames. The Custom of drinking strong Waters will soon deface all Sense of Shame, and there may be very good reason for the better sort of People to keep their Wives retired, while they indulge them in drinking Brandy. One would think they shou'd want no Paint to bring a Redness into their Cheeks, which is so much admir'd

by

Exercises
and Di-
versions.

by this People. But to return to the Baths, it is observ'd of the *Russians* who use themselves to pass suddenly from extreme Heat to extreme Cold, that they never catch cold, nor is a Cough ever heard of amongst them. Another Writer acquaints us with some other ways they have to sweat themselves, in order to carry off any Illness ; they will, he says, heat an Oven so hot that they can just bear to lie in it ; after which five or six of them get in, and having stretch'd themselves at full length, the Mouth of it is stopp'd up, so that they can hardly breath ; and when they can endure it no longer, they come out and throw themselves into the Water or into the Snow, where they will lie an Hour or two, according to the Nature of their Distemper. Others will get into a Boat, and row till they are in a great Sweat, and then plunge themselves over Head and Ears in the River ; and some, he observ'd, after they had been swimming, would lay themselves down before a great Fire, and have their Limbs well rubb'd with Oil or Grease, to supple them and make them vigorous and active. Their other Exercises and Diversions were either Hawking, or Coursing with Greyhounds ; and they seem to have some Inclination for Musick. Their Musical Instruments were the Harp, Bagpipe, Hunting-horn and Kettle-drum, with which they made but very indifferent Harmony. But the late *Czar* promoted Consorts of better Musick ; and introduc'd Plays, Opera's, and Assemblies, as in the more Polite Nations of *Europe*. Nor did he think it beneath him to regulate these matters, and draw up Rules for their Behaviour with his own Hand ; being very sensible of the ill Consequence which at-
tends

tends the Abuse of such Diversions, tho' he judg'd them absolutely necessary to ingratiate himself with his Subjects, and make them contented with the other great Alterations he was about to make. And whenever a Prince is about to introduce any thing new, or wou'd divert the Vulgar from prying too narrowly into the *Arcana* of the Administration, he will always find it necessary to encourage these kind of Diversions, for the same Reasons the late *Czar* did ; and if it be never done with worse Views, the People may be innocently diverted this way from animadverting on the Conduct of their Governours. But among other Amusements of the *Russians*, I had almost forgot the old Custom of keeping Dwarfs and Jesters, and sometimes they have both in one. And this Custom of keeping a Fool or Jester, was very much in vogue in this part of the World about a Century ago ; no considerable Family was without one, who was permitted to be as Witty and Satyrical as he pleas'd, and make what Remarks he saw fit, for the Diversion of the Master and his Company. All was taken in good part from the supposed Natural, who was sometimes the Archest Fellow in the Neighbourhood, and employ'd in speaking such Truths as might have been resented from a Person of another Character. The late *Czar* frequently entertain'd his Friends with his Dwarfs and his Jesters : Two Days after the Marriage of the late Duke of *Courland* with his Niece the Princess *Anne*, the *Czar*, for the Diversion of the Noble Company which was assembled on this Occasion, order'd a Marriage to be solemniz'd between two Dwarfs, with all the Splendor that could have been observ'd at the Nuptials

of a Sovereign Prince, only that all the Officers employ'd in the Ceremony, were of the same diminutive Race with the Bride and Bridegroom. A very little Dwarf march'd at the Head of the Procession, carrying a Marshal's Staff, the Badge of his Office, who was follow'd by the Bride and Bridegroom richly dress'd; after whom came the Czar himself, with his Ministers, *Kneezes*, and *Boyars* (the Princes and Nobility). After these march'd three or fourscore Couples of Dwarfs of both Sexes. And at the Celebration of the Wedding in the Church, the Czar himself was pleas'd to hold the Garland or Nuptial Crown over the Brides Head, according to the Rites of the *Greek Church*. A Dinner was afterwards provided in the same Hall where the Czar had entertain'd the Duke and Dutcheſs of *Courland* two Days before; and several small Tables being set, suitable to the Size of the Guests, the Bride and Bridegroom were plac'd at separate Tables, each under a Canopy, and the rest of the Guests being set at other Tables, this little Company was attended by the Marshal and eight Deputies, all Dwarfs, who perform'd their parts with so much Dexterity and Mirth, as afforded great Diversion to the noble Spectators, and the Healths went briskly round, as usual at a *Russian* Wedding. After Dinner the Dwarfs began a Dance, and by the Oddness of their several Figures, their mimic Motion, and Grimaces, highly delighted their Superiours. One advanc'd with a high Bunch on his Back, and short Legs; another was remarkable for a monstrous big Belly; a third waddled along upon a Pair of crooked Legs, and a Head of a prodigious Size; and the rest were some way or other deform'd,

which

which provok'd the Laughter of the Company. But surely it is a barbarous Pleasure we take in viewing those of our own Species, labouring under such unfortunate Circumstances, and fit only for one of a *Russian* Genius. The most considerable Festivals among the *Russians* are, first, New-Years-Day. A Traveller, who lately assisted at this Solemnity in *Petersburg*, informs us, that the late *Czar* on the first of *January*, O. S. repair'd to the great Church at *Petersburg*, at four a Clock in the Morning, where he officiated himself, and read Divine Service instead of the Patriach, whose Office he had thought fit to abolish, as participating too much of the Sovereign Power. Service being ended, the great Guns were fir'd, and he return'd to his Palace, where he receiv'd the Compliments of his Ministers and Nobility, to every one of whom he presented a Cup of Brandy, according to Custom. Afterwards, being attended by the Clergy and some Lords of the Court, he made a Visit to several of the Nobility, singing the *Russian Te Deum*, and offering a Wish for a happy New Year to the Family, as they enter'd any Persons Doors. The Master of every House hereupon presented the *Czar*, as Head of the Clergy, with a handsome Purse of Money, and invited his Majesty and the Company to an Entertainment; but they did not remain at any House above two Hours, and then remov'd to another, visiting about five or six in a Day; and this they continu'd to do for eight Days successively. Twelfth Day is another considerable Holyday, when the Consecration of the Waters is Celebrated.

In the Year 1719, the same Gentleman relates, that he saw the *Czar* march in Person at

the head of seven Battalions of his Guards to the River *Neva*, which was then frozen, and having form'd these Troops into a Square upon the River, a Hole was cut in the Ice in the Middle of the Square, and a little House ready fram'd set over it, standing on several Arches, which center'd at the Top ; round which there was a Gallery hung with Scarlet Cloth. Divine Service being ended at Church, the Procession of the Clergy began, the Bells in all the Churches ringing at the same time, four *Papa's*, or Priests, with burning Tapers march'd before the Archbishop, whom the *Czar* had constituted to supply some part of the Office of Patriarch ; his Holiness carried a large Crucifix in his Hand, set with precious Stones, being supported by two other Priests, and was follow'd by great numbers of Priests and other People ; the Clergy, richly dress'd in their Sacerdotal Habits, singing an Anthem during the Procession. As they pass'd before the Head of the Regiment of Guards, the *Czar* saluted them by lowering the point of his drawn Sword, which he held in his Hand ; after which the Clergy advanc'd towards the House in the Square, and having said the Prayers of Consecration, a general Discharge of the Artillery was made, and three Volleys of small Shot fir'd. In the mean time the Priests drew up some of the consecrated Waters out of the Hole, and gave it the People who stood about them, to drink : Others brought their Children to be baptiz'd in the Holy Stream ; and the Clergy marching back again into the Town, the Mob crouded to the Place to take up some of the Water, with which they hastened home, expressing abundance of Joy. Cripples and infirm People al-

so were carried thither, believing the Waters to be replenish'd with some healing Virtues. Former Emperors us'd to attend the Patriarch at this Ceremony when he mounted his Horse to begin the Procession, and again when he dismounted; but the late *Czar* thought this too great a Condescension towards a Subject. On *Palm Sunday* there is another grand Procession of the Clergy through the Capital City, when the Patriarch used to ride at the Head of them, on an Horse cover'd with White Linnen, carrying a Book with a Golden Crucifix upon it in his Left Hand, and in his Right a gilded Cross, with which he bless'd the People; the *Czar* himself marching on Foot before him, and holding the Reigns of his Bridle in one Hand, and a Palm Branch in the other. In the Rear follow'd the Archbishops, Bishops, Nobility, and several hundred *Papa's* in their Officiating Habits. Thus they proceeded to the great Church, all the Bells in the City sounding as on rejoicing Days, for they do not ring their Bells as with us; and from hence the *Czar*, with the Nobility and Bishops, us'd to go and dine at the Patriarch's House. This great Ecclesiastick was not only supreme Judge in all religious Matters, but in him was lodg'd a Power for the Reformation of Manners, and he might pass Sentence of Death upon those who transgress'd his Injunctions, without the Concurrence of the Temporal Courts. But upon the Decease of the last Patriarch, which happen'd about the time the *Czar* return'd from his Travels, his Majesty refus'd to suffer another to be elected in his room, but took upon himself to be the chief Priest, as well as Prince of his People; and only constituted one of his Archbishops to execute such a part of the Patriarch's

triarch's Office as he shou'd direct. I shall mention but two other rejoycing Times, or annual Festivals of the *Russians*: The one is when the Snow is fallen, and the Waters frozen, that they can travel with their Sleds over Land or Water, wherever they please, in a direct Line, without confining themselves to the Windings of the Roads. The other is in the Spring of the Year, when the Ice is sunk, and there is a free Passage in their Lakes and Rivers for Boats and other Vessels. And this brings me to treat of their Carriages, and way of travelling.

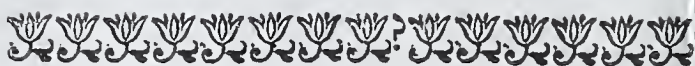
Travel-
ling and
Carriages.

During the Winter, which lasts about six Months, when the Ground is cover'd with Snow, the Sled is the only Carriage in this Country. Upon this they load their Goods, and in this the Traveller rides. Those in the Northern part of the Empire, viz. in *Lapland* and *Samoieda*, are drawn by Rein Deer; but in other parts of *Moscowy*, usually by a single Horse. The Rein Deer does not much exceed the Height of one of our common Fallow Deer, but they are much thicker, and their Legs proportionably strong. This Animal also has a thin wide Hoof, with which he can run over the Top of the Snow without sinking: Whereas in the Middle of *Russia*, where they are drawn with Horses, and the Sledges are heavier loaded, they cannot travel easily out of the beaten Tract, which is hardened by being perpetually trampled on. The Travelling Sled is almost of the Shape of a little cover'd Boat; and those which People of Condition travel in, are so closely shut up, that the least Air cannot enter them. On each side is a little Window, and a Shelf to lay Provisions

Provisions or other Necessaries upon. Over the Head is fix'd a Lanthorn with Wax Candles, for they travel Night and Day. The lower part of the Sled is furnish'd with Bedding, in which the Traveller wraps himself, having a Stove at his Feet, to preserve the Wine and Brandy, which stands in an adjoining Box, from freezing ; which is however frequently spoil'd by the Cold. The Driver sits at the Feet of the Sled, or runs on Foot to keep him warm. In this Vehicle a Man is carried swiftly Night and Day ; there being no Inns to bait at in many parts of the Country : But upon the great Roads the late *Czar* caus'd Houses of Entertainment to be set up at every fifteen or twenty Miles distance, with Mercuries to describe the Way, and shew the Number of Miles from one place to another ; and upon some of the Roads, order'd Rows of Trees to be planted for several hundred Miles together ; particularly between *Moscow* and the City of *Veronese*. Post Stages were also fix'd at fifteen or twenty Miles distance, where Horses are always laid ready for the Conveniency of Travelling, the *Peasants* furnishing them on very moderate Terms, for which they are exempted from all other Duties ; and this makes the Communication between *Petersburg*, *Mosco* and *Archangel* extremely easy. In the Year 1718 the Posts were regulated after the manner of *Germany*. A little before the Boy arrives at his Stage, he calls out for a fresh Horse, which is immediately put to, and he gallops along without intermission. An ordinary Man will travel an hundred Miles a Day in one of these Sleds ; it being

a flat Country, and very little bad way to be met with : Nay, the Meadows, Lakes, and Rivers, which obstruct our Travelling in Winter, are the best part of the Journey ; and a Man may go at this time thro' some Countries where there is no passing in Summer. The Weather also in the midst of Winter is generally settled and serene, and not near so subject to Mists and Fogs as in our Island ; and indeed it is a common Observation, that upon the Continent at a Distance from the Sea, the Weather is much more settled, either in Winter or Summer, than it is near the Coasts. So soon as the Sled-Way is fix'd, many hundreds of Sleds may be seen every Day coming into *Musco* or *Petersburg*, drawn for the most part by one Horse each, for they slide with wonderful ease over the Snow and Ice ; and the Snow, by the frequent passing of the Sleds, becomes as smooth and hard as Ice it self ; and no such thing as a Thaw is ever known till the Return of the Spring : Infomuch that the Price of Carriage in Winter by Sleds is not above a fifth part of what it is by Wheel Carriages in Summer. Tho' what preserves their Roads very much at that time of Year is, that their Waggon's are very light, and usually drawn but by a single Horse. The usual way of Travelling in Summer is on Horseback, or by Water. Coaches are in some use among the Quality ; but I don't find that they ever travel Journeys in Stage-Coaches, as with us ; and it is certain this is scarce practicable in *Russia* for a great part of the Year. The late *Czar* caus'd Roads to be laid out, and Ways cut through Woods, in a direct Line from one City to another,

ther, and Canals to be made from River to River, to render the Communication easy between one part of his Dominions and another, particularly between the *Baltick* and the *Caspian Seas*. Oak Timber is now brought by Water from *Casàn* to *Petersburgh*, which is upwards of a thousand Miles, and as they have all other Naval Stores there in great abundance, it is computed that the *Moscovite* can now build and rig out a Fleet upon easier Terms than any other Prince in *Europe*; which he cou'd not do before, having no Oaken Timber within a great many hundred Miles of *Petersburgh*, and there was scarce any possibility of bringing any thither by Land Carriage. These Canals are not only convenient on account of bringing up Floats of Timber, and Merchandize, but for supplying *Petersburgh*, the Capital City, with Provisions; which is now grown so populous, and stands in so barren a Soil, that it could not possibly subsist, if it was not supply'd in the Summer Time by Water Carriage; and what is still worse, *Petersburgh* stands so very low, that their Fortifications have been several Times destroy'd, and great Quantities of Merchandize driven away by the Inundations.



C H A P. VIII.

Treats of the Nature of the Soil, their Husbandry and Gardening, and of their Plants, Animals, and Minerals ; with some further Observations on the Air, Winds, and Seasons.

Soil and
Husbandry.

RUSSIA for the most part lying upon a flat, and being extremely well watered by Lakes and Rivers, is one of the most fruitful Countries in the World ; and as the late *Czar* has render'd the Communication of one part of the Empire with another extremely easy, by laying out new Roads, or repairing the old ones, and cutting navigable Canals wherever he found it necessary, the Northern Parts, which wanted the Corn and Fruits that are so plentiful in the South, are now tolerably well supply'd with both. As to the *Laplanders* and *Samoieds*

Samoieds indeed, who have little Commerce with the rest of *Russia*, they neither plough or sow or Plant, there being not Warmth enough to ripen Grain or Fruit; nor have they Grass sufficient to feed Herds of Cattle; but live on the Flesh of Deer, Bears, or other Wild Beasts, Fowls or dried Fish; and Turnips, or other Roots, serve them for Bread. Their Rein-Deer feed upon a kind of Moss, which they find upon the Ground or Trees, and with this they grow fat in Winter. The most fruitful and best cultivated part of *Moscowy* I take to be the Kingdom of *Casan*, and those other Countries which lie next to the Banks of the *Wolga*. Here Rye may be purchas'd for six Pence a Bushel, and Wheat for nine Pence. The Seed-Time for the Rye is before the Winter begins, but for all other Grain, after the Snow is off the Ground, in *April* or *May*; and it is reap'd in *August*. In those Countries which lie at a distance from Rivers they sow but little Grain, not only because they cannot vend it, but the Country People, who have no Properties in any thing, and know that all the Fruits of their Labour belong to their Lords, chuse to be at as little Trouble as may be; Grazing therefore being the more lazy Employment, they usually spend their time in

K 2

feeding

feeding of Cattle, or gathering such Fruits as the Earth produces of it self.

Russia, says Captain *Perry*, in general, is a very level fertile Country, abounding with whatever is necessary for human Life; It is intermix'd with Pasture, Arable-Lands, Woods, Lakes and Rivers; and wherever I have travelled, which has been almost on all sides of the *Czar's* Dominions, says he, there may be seen many delightful Situations. The Country to the Southward of *Camisinka*, (which stands on the *Wolga* in the Latitude of 49 Degrees), as it is in the best Climate in the World, so it is for the most part extremely fertile and pleasant. In the Spring of the Year, as soon as the Snow is gone, which seldom lies on the Ground hereabouts longer than three Months, the warm Weather succeeds, and the Tulips, Roses, Lilleys of the Valley, Pinks, Sweet Williams, and many other fine Flowers and Herbs spring up spontaneously, without any Culture. Asparagus, the best that can be eat, grows so thick, that it may be mow'd. The Grass in the Meadows is up to the Horses Bellies, and all Kinds of Fruits are found here in Autumn, without the Assistance of a Gardener to cultivate them. Nor does the Husbandman ever want a
Crop

Crop of Grain, where he ploughs and sows his Ground. But the *Coeban Tartars* so harass this Country by their Excursions, that the Inhabitants have almost all forsaken it.

As the *Russes* travel over these deserted Plains, and make Fires to dress their Food, it happens sometimes that the long Grass, which is neither mow'd nor eat by Cattle, but dries upon the Ground, is set on Fire, the Flames spreading on every side for twenty or thirty Miles round, and are not extinguish'd as long as any of this kind of Fuel is left, or some Lake or River puts a Stop to it: In the Night time the Flames are seen at a great distance, and in the Day a Cloud of Smoke ascends, which gives the Traveller an Opportunity of avoiding it. The same Accident happens often on the West side of the River *Don*, which the *Russes* call *Step*, or Desert, not because the Country is barren, but deserted by the Inhabitants on Account of the Excursions of the *Crim Tartars*. But to return, and give some further Account of their Plants and Fruits.

The Woods and Forests of *Russia*, especially in the Northern Parts of it, produce Plants.

duce scarce any other Trees for Timber, or Firing, but Fir-Trees and Birch, and with these they are very plentifully stor'd. Towards *Casan* and the Southern part of *Moscovy* they have great plenty of Oak Timber, Elm, and other Wood fit for all manner of uses. Fruit Trees they have of all kinds in the Southern Parts of *Russia*, except Grapes; and in that cold Climate of *Ingria*, where *Petersburg* stands, they have brought their Gardens to greater Perfection than could be expected. Vineyards there are none in the *Russian* Dominions in *Europe*; but as the late *Czar* planted several about *Astracan* in *Asia*, possibly the *Moscovites* may sometime or other introduce them into their Southern Dominions in *Europe*; the Soil or Climate being not at all improper for them. The Garden Stuff which the *Russians* chiefly seed on, are Melons, Cucumbers, Onions, Garlick and Mushrooms, the last of which they have great Quantities of, and Pickle them up against their times of Fasting. They have great Plantations also of Hemp and Flax, of which they export abundance annually to all the Kingdoms of *Europe*; and as their Fir Trees furnish them with vast Quantities of Pitch and Tar, they can of the Product of their own Country rig
out

out a Royal Fleet, which however was never attempted till the last Reign.

From their Fruits and Plants I proceed Animals.
next to inquire into their Animals, Wild and Tame ; and these are Horses, Oxen, Buffaloes, Goats, Hogs, Sheep and Rein-Deer among their Tame Cattle. Their Horses are not of a large Breed ; but like those of *Scotland*, hardy and serviceable, and are seldom shod either in Summer or Winter. They have also Greyhounds, but no Hounds as I can learn, neither do I see what great use they could be of in a Country which is cover'd with Snow all the Winter. Their Wild Beasts are Bears, Foxes, Hogs, Elks, Deer, Wolves, Wild Horses and Wild Sheep. Captain *Perry* relates, that he eat part of a Wild Sheep, which was pursued into a River by a Wolf, and he thought it tenderer and much to be preferr'd to Tame Mutton : But the Wool of these Sheep is coarse, short, and good for little. The Wild-Horse-Skin is a thick warm Fur, and made use of at *Mosco* for the Lining the Covers of their Sleds. They have also Martens, Sables, Ermins, and two kinds of Hares, one of which turn White in the Winter, and change their Colour again in the Summer

mer to a Grey. Their Bear Skins also in the North are some of them White ; and some Foxes are Black, but these are very scarce. Their Skins and Furs are some of the most valuable Goods imported from *Russia* ; and they use great part of them at Home, for lining their Cloaths in the Winter Season, both Men and Women. A late Traveller relates, that he saw a Gown made of Sables of the deepest Black, valued at a Thousand Pounds and upwards, which the *Czar* made the *Grand Seignior* a Present of. I shall make but one Observation more in relation to their Wild Animals, which indeed Captain *Perry* hath made before me, and that is, that they are not near so dangerous to Travellers as they are generally represented ; tho' I cannot be entirely of his Mind, that they will never set upon a Man till they are provok'd : When they do, I believe they must be urg'd by the extremest Hunger, and can meet with nothing else to prey upon, or perhaps in Defence of their Whelps, or some other such like Occasions : For he observes, that notwithstanding this Country is full of Bears and Wolves ; the *Russes* travel every where alone through the Woods Winter and Summer, and yet there is scarce ever such a thing heard of as a
 Man's

Man's being attack'd or hurt by a Wild Beast. That he had very often seen Bears and Wolves upon the Road, and endeavour'd to shoot them, but they always run away. When he was employ'd in making the Canal near *Camisinka*, and frequently oblig'd to travel with his People between *Mosco* and that place through a Desert Country, they us'd to bait their Horses by the Woods sides in the Night time, and make Fires to warm themselves, when the Wolves would come out in great Numbers and make a hideous Howling ; but durst not come near ; tho' he does not doubt but they would have seiz'd the Horses if there had been no Men with them. A Wild Boar, or a Bear, if a Man comes up close and Fires, will make directly at him, if the Beast be not brought down at once, the Person who attacks him will be in a great deal of danger, unless timely reliev'd by his Friends : But if a Man Fires at a Wolf and misses him, the Creature will run away. There is no Country in *Europe* better stock'd with Bees, and their Woods accordingly afford vast plenty of Honey, insomuch, that Mead, or Quaz, is their most ordinary Drink ; and their Candles are all made of Wax, tho' I should have observ'd, that

the Common People content themselves with a Deal Splinter lighted, which they frequently carry in their Mouths when they are about any Business within Doors.

Fish.

As to Serpents, Scorpions, and other poysonous Insects, I don't find that this Country is much infested with them; but Travellers complain much of the swarms of Gnats and other Flies in Summer, which will not let them rest Night or Day, and are extremely troublesome upon the Road. The Seas and Rivers of *Moscovy* abound with excellent Fish of several kinds, among which the Bolluga, a Fish about eight or ten Feet in length, is generally esteem'd preferable to Sturgeon: Of the Roes of this Fish the *Russian* Caviere is made, as well as of the Roes of Sturgeon; which being salted and press'd for keeping, is sent into all parts of *Europe*: But chiefly to those Countries which border on the *Mediterranean*. Their Rivers also abound with Sturgeon, Sterlet, or Strelet, as some write it; Citera, Salmon both Red and White, Sandack, Carp, Perch, Tench, Jacks, Craw-fish, and other River Fish. The Sterlet is a small Fish with a sharp Nose, the Flesh where-

of

of is ſaid to reſemble that of the Sturgeon; but the Fat is of a more delicious Taſt. The Citera is of much the ſame Nature as Sturgeon, but the Fleſh Whiter, and eats admirably well drefs'd any way. The Sandack is in Shape like a Whiting, but ſix or eight times as large, and firm as a Cod: This, the *Engliſh* ſalt up and eat with Butter and Eggs, like our common Salt-Fiſh. The Citera and Sterlet are generally moſt admir'd of any of their River Fiſh; but Mr. *Perry* prefers their White Salmon.

Of Land and Water Fowl they have as great Plenty as they have of Fiſh; and no place abounds more with Hawks of all kinds, particularly Faulcons; and Hawk-ing accordingly is one of their principal Sports. The Woods and Gardens about *Moſco* are full of Singing-Birds, of which there being but few in the barren Neighbourhood of *Petersburg*, the Government purchas'd as many as came to ſix or ſeven hundred Pounds, and let them fly in the Woods about that Capital, where 'tis ſaid they have multiplied conſiderably; notwithstanding the Climate is ſo much colder than that they were brought from. But 'tis obſerv'd however, that the Se-

verity of the Weather drives most of the Feather'd Race to the Southward in the Winter. Not only their Wild Geese, Swans, Ducks, Snipes, and other Water Fowl; but vast numbers of Feldisares, Thrushes, and other Land Birds, retire Southwards as the cold Weather approaches, and return again in the Spring: which is the reason no doubt that we are so well stock'd with them in the Winter. There are also in *Russia* good store of Pheasants, Partridges, Heath-Cocks, and other Game; and their Partridges, as well as Hares, it seems, turn white in Winter towards the North.

Minerals.

There are some Copper Mines in *Russia* near *Casan*, and a great many Iron Mines and Works; particularly near *Mosco*, and *Veroneze*, and on the side of the *Onega Lake*, where the *Russians* do not only cast great Guns and Mortars, but forge all manner of small Arms, with which their Army is supply'd: and 'tis said, they will in a short time be enabled to furnish other Nations with them at a cheaper Rate than they can provide themselves at Home, all Provision being extremely cheap. In the Year 1718. A Board, or College, as they stile it, was appointed for the Regulation

gulation and Improvement of their Mines, which were before upon a very good Foot; and it is reported that they have discover'd a Gold-Sand in some of the Rivers which run into the *Caspian Sea*, and understand how to refine and separate the Oar from the Dross. Brimstone and Saltpetre also are the Produce of this Country, and they already make most of the Gunpowder they spend.

I shall conclude this Chapter with some Remarks of Captain *Perry's*, upon the Air and Seasons in this part of the World, which I had over-look'd when I was treating on this Subject: He relates, that the *Czar* frequently discours'd of sending some People to discover whether there was any Passage by the North-East, or *Frozen Ocean* (contiguous to his Dominions) to *China* and *Japan*, but was of Opinion there was none; and that his Country really join'd to *America*; from whence he suppos'd that part of the World was first Peopled, when there was not such vast quantities of Ice, and the cold was more moderate than it is at this Day. The Captain also is of Opinion, that when the extreme Northern parts were first inhabited, those Countries were more temperate than they are at this Day,

Further
Remarks
upon the
Air,
Winds,
and Sea-
sons.

Day, or Men wou'd not have chosen, or been easily driven to inhabit such a barren and uncomfortable Climate: and thinks it may be demonstrated, that at the beginning of the World there was no Ice upon the surface of the Waters: That the first Frosts cou'd not make it of any considerable thickness, and the Sun lying six Months every Year upon it, must prevent its growing to any great Bulk for some time; tho' possibly it might increase something every Year; and that this vast Body of Ice which is now found in those Seas within the Arctick Circle, has been the gradual Work of many thousand Years: And as the Body of Ice has in course of Time been thus augmented by degrees, so the Cold by the Reflection from it has been render'd more severe, and extended farther Southward than it was at the beginning of the World. He proceeds afterwards to produce some Instances to support this Hypothesis, and shew how the Inhabitants of these Northern Countries are affected by the Reflection both of Heat and Cold. The *English* Merchants, who used to travel annually between *Mosco* and *Archangel* (the latter of which places lies in 64 Degrees of North Latitude, and hath one and twenty Hours Sun in the middle of Summer) observe,

observe that it is common there to find the Weather so extremely hot, that they can scarce bear any Cloaths on when the Wind is Southerly, and rous on the Heat that way which is reflected from the Earth: but if the Wind happens to shift suddenly to the Northward, and blow from the *Frozen Ocean*, the Air is chang'd at once, and they are oblig'd to put on their Furs. That this Alteration of the Weather from extreme hot to extreme cold, happens most frequently in *June*, or the beginning of *July*, when the Ice is still driving in the *White Sea*. On the other hand, in the beginning of the Winter, in the Months of *September* and *October*, when the surface of the Earth is just frozen, and the Snows are fallen some Degrees to the Southward of *Archangel*, but the Ice is not yet gather'd in the *White Sea*, then, as if the Poles had Shifted Stations, the operation of the Winds is directly contrary. The South Wind which comes off the Land, and blows over a long tract of Snow, occasions an hard Frost; but the North Wind which comes directly from the Sea, not frozen up at that time, is sensibly warm, compar'd with that which comes from the Southward: And that at *Wologda*, which is
half

half way between *Archangel* and *Mosco* ; and at *Mosco* it self, and all other Mid-land places, in the depth of Winter, when the Snow covers the face of the whole Country, then it freezes as hard with one Wind as with another ; and from these and some other instances, he infers, that Cold as well as Heat is considerably augmented by Reflection ; and as there were not those Mountains of Ice in the North-Seas in the first Ages of the World, as there is now, consequently it was not so cold within the Arctick Circle, as it is at present ; and Men as well as Beasts might probably pass from the Continent of *Europe* to *America* by Land then, tho' it shou'd be admitted that this is impracticable at present.

CHAP. IX.

*Treats of their Trade, Shipping, Navigation,
Manufactures and Coins.*

TWO Hundred Years ago, *Russia* having no Communication with any other Seas than the *White Sea* and the *Frozen Ocean*, at that time unfrequented, and indeed perfectly unknown to any other Nation, had then but a very slender share of Foreign Trade. Their Furs and other Merchandize came to us through *Livonia*, which was under another Sovereign, and were imbarqu'd at the Ports of *Narva*, *Revel*, *Pernaw*, or *Riga*; but in the last Year of the Reign of King *Edward* the sixth, a Society of *English* Merchants being incorporated by the Name of the *Merchants Adventurers* for the discovery of Lands, &c. unknown, of whom *Sebastian Cabot* was the first Governour, fitted out three Ships, (*viz.*) The Admiral called the *Bona Esperanza*, of 120 Tuns, commanded by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*. The second, call'd the *Edward Bonadventurer* of 160 Tuns, commanded by Captain *Richard Chancellor*. And the third call'd the *Bona Confidentia* of 90 Tuns, and commanded by Captain *Cornelius Duforth*. These three Ships set sail from *Deptford* the 11th of *May*, 1553. But Captain *Chancellor* being separated from the other two by a Storm on the Coast of *Norway*, steer'd for *Ward-House*, the most Northerly part of *Norway*, as had been agreed on in case of such an Accident. Here he waited seven Days in expectation of the other two Ships, and receiving no Intelligence of them, he stood to the Eastward; and first discover'd the Bay of *St. Nicholas*,

First
Voyage
to *Russia*.

cholas, so denominated from the Monastery of *St. Nicholas*, which lies at the bottom of the Bay, and is also known by the Name of the *White Sea*. Captain *Chancellor* learnt here that the Country was call'd *Moscovy*, and that *John Basilowitz*, or *Vasiliwits*, was then Sovereign of it. The Governour as well as the rest of the Natives, receiv'd the Captain and his People with great humanity, furnishing them with Provisions; and expressing a desire of trading with them, as the Captain had propos'd: but the Governor did not think fit to enter into any treaty on this Subject till the great Duke was acquainted with it; and therefore dispatch'd an Express immediately to *Mosco*, with Intelligence that the *English* had found the way into the Bay of *St. Nicholas*, or *Archangel*, and desir'd to establish a Trade there: Whereupon the great Duke (the *Russian* Emperor) order'd that Post-Sledges and other Conveniencies should be provided to attend on the Captain and his People to *Mosco*. Captain *Chancellor* on his arrival there, presented the great Duke with a general Letter from King *Edward* VIth. Directed, *To all Kings, Princes, Rulers, Judges and Governors of the Earth*, importing, That whereas God had implanted in the Hearts of all Men a desire of Friendship and Intercourse with one another, and that Justice and Humanity required us to treat those kindly, who through great Dangers brought their Merchandize from distant Countries to supply what might be wanting in the Places they visited, and take off the Product of their Country in return: Heaven having ordain'd that all things should not be found in any Region, but one Country be supply'd by another,

King
Edward's
general
Letter to
all Princes
for pro-
moting
Trade.

ther, that thereby Friendship might be promoted and extended to all. For the establishing and advancing of which desirable ends, several of his Subjects had undertaken this Voyage. To whom, on their Petition, he had granted his Royal License, particularly to Sir. *Hugh Willoughby*, and others his trusty and faithful Servants, engag'd in this Expedition to visit Countries unknown, as well to procure such things as were wanting in his Dominions as to supply other Nations with the produce of his Kingdoms, to their mutual Advantage, and that an indissoluble and perpetual League and Friendship might be establish'd between them. He desires therefore that they will treat his Subjects with Humanity, and supply them with such things as they wanted, and declares he should be ready to shew the same kindness towards such of their Subjects, or Servants as should arrive in his Dominions. Dated at *London* in the 14th Day of the Month of *May*, in the Year of the Creation 5515. and in the seventh Year of his Reign.

The Captain having deliver'd this Letter to the great Duke, he bid him welcome, and after some Enquiries concerning the King his Master ; invited him and his People to a magnificent Entertainment in the Palace, and having conferr'd other Favours upon them, and express'd his desire of establishing a Trade and Intercourse between the two Nations. He dismiss'd Captain *Chancellor* with a Letter to King *Edward VIth.* wherein having recited the several Kingdoms and Provinces he was Sovereign of, he acquaints his Majesty that his Servant *Richard Chancellor* and his Company arriv'd on the *Russian* Coasts in the twentieth

A Letter
from the
Duke of
Moscovy to
King *Ed-
ward.*

Year of his Reign, and had deliver'd him his Majesty's Letter for the settling of Commerce, &c. And that he had thereupon issued his Orders that Sir *Hugh Willoughby* should be well entertain'd wherever he landed: but that he had yet receiv'd no Intelligence of him. That he was desirous the King's Subjects should resort to his Country and Traffick there; and that both their Ships and Persons might remain in perfect Security, and have their free Mart, with all other Liberties through his whole Dominions, with all kinds of Merchandize, to go and come at Pleasure; and invites his Majesty to send over a Minister to reside at *Mosco*. Dated at *Mosco* the second Month of *February*, in the Year of the World, according to the *Russian* account, 7060. To this Letter was affix'd a Broad Seal, on which was the Impression of a Man in Armour on Horse-back fighting with a Dragon; and to the Original written in the *Russian* Language was annex'd a Translation in *High-Dutch*.

Second
Voyage.

Letters
from K.
Philip and
Q. *Mary*
to the
Duke of
Mosco.

Captain *Chancellor* return'd to *England* in the beginning of the Year 1554. when he found King *Edward* dead, and Queen *Mary* advanc'd to the Throne. The following Year the Company fitted out the *Edward Bonadventure* again, commanded by Captain *Chancellor*, and another Ship, with several Agents and Factors to settle a Trade with *Russia*, who carried with them Letters from King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*, authorizing them to treat with the *Russian* Ministers for establishing Commerce between the two Nations; wherein they thank the great Duke for the Favour shewn to Captain *Chancellor* and his Company, and desire a Continuance of his Favour to
such

each of their Subjects as should resort to his
 Country, and that he would appoint Com-
 missaries to treat with the said Captain Chan-
 cellor, *George Killingworth* and *Richard Gray*,
 Bearers of these Letters, and authorized for
 that purpose, and grant such other Liberties
 and Privileges to the Company of Merchants
 Adventurers, as the said Bearers in their
 Name should settle with the *Russian* Com-
 missaries. Captain *Chancellor* with the rest of
 the Company's Agents were well receiv'd at
 the *Russian* Court, and invited to dine with
 the great Duke, at least in the same Room,
 for he sat at a Table by himself bare headed,
 and not far from him the Patriarch and several
 of the Nobility: A separate Table was ap-
 pointed for the *English* in the middle of the
 Room, opposit to that of the Duke, who
 sent them several Dishes from his own: After
 Dinner they were call'd up to the Duke's
 Table, who presented every one of them with
 a Cup of Drink with his own Hand, and
 taking hold of Mr. *Killingworth's* Beard, which
 was five Feet and two Inches long, and of a
 yellowish Colour, he put it into the Patri-
 arch's Hand, who admir'd it as a particular
 Blessing; and I'm apt to believe that one rea-
 son of pitching on this Gentleman as an
 Agent to this Court, was his having such a
 mighty Beard, it being observ'd what a par-
 ticular Veneration the *Russians* had for Beards.
 But to proceed, Mr. *Killingworth* being in-
 form'd that the two Ships under the Com-
 mand of Sir. *Hugh Willoughby* were found in a
 Creek near *Kegor* upon the Coast of *Lapland* by
 some Fishermen, Sir *Hugh* and all his Com-
 pany, consisting of seventy Persons, having been
 frozen to death there; he procur'd the Ships
 to perished.

The two
 Ships
 found in
Lapland,
 in which
 Sir. *Hugh*
Willoughby
 and all his
 People
 to perished.

to be brought into the Bay of *St. Nicholas*, and saved great part of the Merchandize and Effects. It appear'd by the Journals on board these Ships, that they had been beating about to the Northwards on the Coast of *Greenland*, and arriv'd at this Place the 18th of *September*, 1553. That they had sent parties of Men into the Country several ways to search for Inhabitants, but found none, and that most of the Company were alive in *January*, 155 $\frac{3}{4}$. It is suppos'd that they perish'd rather with Cold than Hunger, because their Papers mention great Numbers of Deer, Bears, Foxes, and other Wild Beasts in the Country, which would have subsisted them, neither was all the Provision spent they had on board.

Privileges
granted
to the
Russia
Company
by the
great
Duke.

The Company's Agents and the great Duke's Commissaries having had several Conferences upon the Subject of Trade, that Prince granted to *Sebastian Cabot*, the Governor, *Sir. George Barnes*, &c. Consuls, *Sir John Gresham*, &c. Assistants, and to the Commonalty of the aforesaid Fellowship and their Successors for ever, amongst others, the Privileges and Immunities following :

I. That the said Company, their Agents and Factors, with their Ships, Goods and Merchandize might enter into any of the Cities or Territories of *Russia* by Sea, Land, or fresh Waters, and there remain and Traffick with the Merchants and People of any Nation whatever, and with the same, or any other Goods or Merchandize, depart into any other Country at Pleasure, without any Restraint or paying any Toll, Custom or Imposition whatsoever, for their Ships, Merchandizes, or other Effects; without standing in need of any any other Safe Conduct, or

Licence

License general or special from the Government, than this present Grant.

2. That the *English* shou'd be subject to, and govern'd only by such Persons as the Company should appoint ; and those who fled from Justice, shou'd be deliverd up to the *English* Company by the *Russians*.

Captain *Chancellor* returning home with this Grant from the *Russian* Emperor, the Company obtain'd a new Patent from their Majesties, *Philip* and *Mary*, dated the 1st of *February*, in the first and second Year of their Reign ; by which it appears that the Marquess of *Winchester*, Lord-Treasurer, the Earl of *Arundell*, Lord-Steward of the Household, and most of the great Officers of State, as well as several of the Aldermen of *London*, were Members of this Corporation ; and *Sebastian Cabot* appointed Governor for life, with four Consuls, and twenty four Assistants for the Year ensuing, which were to be elected Annually. This Society were incorporated by the Name of, *The Governor, Consuls, Assistants, Fellowship, and Commonalty of Merchants, Adventurers to Lands, Territories, &c. unknown and unfrequented.*

The Company's Patent from *Philip* and *Mary*.

And by the said Letters Patents, full Power and Authority was given to the Company and their Agents, to sail to all Ports, Dominions, Territories, and Places unknown or undiscover'd, before their late Adventure, under the Royal Banner, Standard, Flags, and Ensigns ; and to erect and fix them there, or on any the Lands and Shores, Cities, Towns, or Islands of any Infidel Princes ; and to subdue and possess their Dominions, as well as all other Lands hereafter to be discover'd, and to reduce them under the Power of the Crown

An Amba-
bassador
from Rus-
sia to the
English
Court.

Captain
Chancellor,
and three
Ships lost
coming
home.

Crown of *England* : And all other People whether Natives or Foreigners, were, by the said Grant, prohibited and debarr'd from trafficking with, or resorting to such Countries as shou'd be discover'd, or to any part of the *Russian* Empire, without the License of the said Company. In the Year 1556, the Company sent two Ships to *Russia*, doubly Mann'd, to bring home Sir *Hugh Willoughby's* two Ships which had been frozen up in *Lapland* : These being brought into the Bay of St. *Nicholas*, Captain *Chancellor* in the *Edward*, having on Board *Osep Napea*, Ambassador from the *Russian* Emperor, to the Court of *England*, set sail from *Archangel* on the 20th of *July*, 1556, in Company with the *Philip* and *Mary*, and the two Ships of Sir *Hugh Willoughby's* ; one of which founder'd on the Coast of *Norway* ; and the other having several *Russian* Merchants on Board, was separated from the rest in the Voyage, and never heard of more, both of them suppos'd to be decay'd by their remaining so long in those Seas ; and to add to the Misfortune, Captain *Chancellor* in the *Edward* being driven from his Anchors on the Coast of *Scotland*, the Ship split upon the Rocks, and the Captain, with several *Russians* as well as *English* Mariners were lost, but the Ambassador, with some few of the Company escap'd to Shore, where they were indifferently treated by the *Scots*. The News whereof coming to the *English* Court, Queen *Mary* dispatch'd some Gentlemen into *Scotland* to the Regent there, desiring the *Russian* Ambassador might be kindly us'd, and his Effects restor'd, which were recover'd from the Wreck, and the Ambassador was afterwards brought up to *London*, where he

he made his Entry in great State, being attended by an hundred and forty Merchants of the *Russia* Company, with their Servants in one Livery. He was met also by the Lord *Montague* and three hundred Horse, by order of the Court, a little way out of Town; and at *Smithfield-Barrs*, by the Lord Mayor and Aldermen on Horse-back, and rode between the Lord-Mayor and the Lord *Montague* through the City, to an Apartment prepar'd for him in *Fenchurch-Street*.

Thus were the *English* establish'd in the *Russian* Trade, and enjoy'd the sole Benefit of it for twenty five or thirty Years without interruption, when the *Dutch* began to put in for a share of it. But this was not the principal design of that great Company erected in the Reign of *Edward VI.* for making new Discoveries; it was not long before that the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese* had fix'd themselves in *America* and the *East-Indies*, whereby they engross'd most of the Trade of the World, and amass'd a prodigious Treasure; this incited the *English* to Attempts of the like nature, who hop'd to find a shorter passage to the *Indies* by the North-East or North-West, and thereby to put in for a share of those beneficial Trades; or rather to discover some Countries equally rich to the Northward, which neither the *Spaniards* nor *Portuguese* had yet frequented: For all *Europe* seem'd to acquiesce at first in the Partition the Pope had made of the new discover'd Countries in the East to the *Portuguese*, and those in the West to the *Spaniard*. It was fourscore Years at least, before the *English*, or any other Nation in *Europe* attempted to Trade or send Colonies, either to the *East* or *West-Indies* after they were discovered;

cover'd ; for which there may be these two reasons given ; First, that the *English* were then good Catholicks, and possibly thought themselves oblig'd to obey the Pope's Determination in the matter ; and Secondly, The *Spaniards* and *Portuguese* were then the most considerable Maritime Powers, and able to defend their respective Discoveries against all other Nations ; and we find they made no scruple of sinking our Ships when-ever they met with them in those Seas where they pretended to have the Sovereignty : And notwithstanding the Reformation which follow'd, thou'd, one wou'd have thought, have abated our Veneration for the Pope's Decision ; we still for many Years neglected the beaten road to the *East* and *West-Indies*, and threw away our Ships and Men, in attempting an impracticable Passage thither, by the North-East and North-West, for near fifty Years successively, wherein the *Dutch* follow'd our steps ; in which attempts however we happen'd to establish a Trade to *Russia* in the manner above related, and fell into the Whale Fishery on the Coast of *Greenland*, which I shall enlarge upon when I come to speak of that Country, and return now to the Trade of *Russia*, which was confirm'd to the abovesaid Company, by several Patents of our succeeding Kings, as well as by Act of Parliament in the eighth Year of the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* ; and their Privileges in *Russia* were also several times confirm'd by the Emperors of *Russia*. But the *Dutch* at this day have an equal, if not a better share in that Trade, and we pay the same Duties of Import and Export as other Nations.

The *Dutch* no sooner found the way to *Russia*, than according to their constant Custom

tom all the World over, they began to magnify the Power of their State, to vilify the *English*, and endeavour to supplant them in their Trade; which occasion'd often an Abridgment of the Privileges of the *English*, and Hardships to their Merchants and Factors; but they were not entirely depriv'd of the Advantages granted them by the Crown of *Russia*, untill the Murder of King *Charles I.* when the *Dutch*, tho' themselves Enemies to Monarchy by Principle, represented the *English* as the most abandon'd Race of Men, Advocates of Anarchy, and Destroyers of their Princes; who deserv'd to be extirpated by all civiliz'd Nations: which had such an influence on the *Russians*, that the *Dutch* gain'd their ends. And indeed the horrid Parricide, tho' perpetrated by a few Miscreants, being often imputed to the whole Nation by our Enemies, makes us universally detested by those who are ignorant of the force the Nation was under, and the many brave Attempts that were made to rescue his Majesty out of the hands of his rebellious Subjects. Since that unhappy *Æra* 48, the *English* have been oblig'd to pay such Customs as the *Russians* were pleas'd to demand, which they raise and vary, according to the Caprice of their Princes, and are seldom less than five *per Cent.* on Merchandize.

But to proceed; the Company of *English* Adventurers did not only endeavour to discover a North-East Passage to *China* and *India* by Sea, but sent their Factors and Agents thro' *Moscow* into *Persia* and *Usbeck Tartary*, to endeavour to open a Communication with those Countries by Land.

Captain *Anthony Jenkinson*, who carried back the *Russian* Ambassador, *Osep Napea*,

in the Year 1557, was first employ'd to trace out a way from *Moscovy* to the *East Indies*, and to endeavour to open a Trade with *Persia*; and the *English* Company, to ingratiate themselves with the *Russian* Emperor, whose permission and assistance were necessary to carry on the design, procur'd several Mechanics and Artists to enter into his Service, and embark themselves for *Mosco* with their Agent, Captain *Jenkinson*. These People were extremely acceptable to the *Russian* Court; and the Captain found no difficulty in obtaining the great Duke's Recommendatory Letters to the Kings and Princes, thro' whose Dominions he propos'd to pass. Accordingly he set out from *Mosco* on the 23d of *April*, 1558, and arrived at *Astracan*, the 14th of *July* following; which City and Kingdom, the then Emperor, *John Basilowitz* had made a Conquest of about six Years before. Here Captain *Jenkinson*, with his Company, embark'd themselves and their Merchandize in a Vessel with some *Mahometan* Passengers, on the sixth of *August*; and falling down the River *Volga*; enter'd the *Caspian Sea* on the 10th, from whence they steer'd Eastward, to the Mouth of the River *Jaick*, and afterwards to the South-East, arriving at *Manguslave* on the Coast of *Usbeck Tartary* on the 3d of *September*, 1558, where having provided Camels and other necessities, they set forward for *Sellyzure* upon the same Coast, in the Company of a Caravan, consisting of a thousand Camels: The Country through which they pass'd, was divided among several *Tartar* Princes of the *Mahometan* Persuasion, who were perpetually rambling from place to place like the *Arabs*, and like them, exacted what they pleased

pleased of the Caravans, and sometimes plunder'd them. From *Sellizure* the Caravan travell'd to *Urgence*, and from thence to *Boghar*, now *Bochara*, situate near the River *Oxus*, one of the principal Cities of *Usbeck Tartary*. *Boghar* was then a great Mart, whither the Merchants of *India*, *China*, and *Russia* resorted with the Goods of their respective Countries; but the Wars between the *Tartar* Princes at this time prevented the Caravans coming from *China* as usual, Captain *Jenkinson* disposed however of some of his *English* Cloth, but to no great advantage; the *Persians* meeting with it at a better hand by the way of *Turky*; and the *Cham*, or Prince of *Samarcand*, the Capital of *Usbeck Tartary*, being about to lay Siege to *Bochar*, Captain *Jenkinson* was oblig'd to hasten his departure from that City, and return the same way he came, to the Coasts of the *Caspian* Sea. He set forward on the 8th of *March*, 1558-9 with a Caravan of six hundred Camels; having in his Company several Ambassadors from the *Tartar* Princes to the Emperor of *Russia*, and arrived at the *Caspian* Sea the 23d of *April*; where they found the Bark they came in, plunder'd of all her Tackling, which took them up some time to furnish themselves with again. They arrived however at *Astracan* the 28th of *May* following; where waiting sometime for a Convoy, and rowing all the way against the stream up the River *Wolga*, it was the 2d of *September*, 1559, before he return'd to *Mosco* again.

In the Year 1561, the Company procured Letters from Queen *Elizabeth* to the Sophy of *Persia*, and Recommendations from the *Russian* Duke to that Prince, with which the
same

same Captain *Jenkinson* was dispatch'd to *Persia* to settle a Trade there; but the Success did not answer their Expectations at first: They persisted however to make some further Attempts, sending their Agents to *Persia* with *English* Cloth from the Year 1565 to 1574. and in the last of these Voyages, according to their own Accounts, they would have made the most profitable return that was ever made by *English* Merchants, if their Factors in their return from *Persia* to *Astracan* had not been attack'd on the *Caspian Sea* by the *Cossacks*, and plunder'd of almost all their Treasure; which so discouraged the Company, that I don't find they traded any more to *Persia* by the way of *Moscovy*; tho' probably the Troubles which soon after happen'd in *Moscovy*, upon the Death of the Emperor *John Basilowitz*, might be a further Discouragement to them: And it was not many Years after, before the *East India* Company was establish'd; and sent their Ships directly to *Persia* and *India* by the way of the *Cape of Good Hope*: From which time all thoughts of Trading with *Persia* by the way of *Russia* were laid aside, till the Reign of the late *Czar*, who made the *English Russia* Company an offer, 'tis said, of exempting all such Goods from Custom as should be transported by the way of *Petersburg* thro' *Moscovy* into *Persia*, in order to bring the Trade into that Channel; but as this would have been an Encroachment on the *Turky* and *East India* Companies Patents, and contrary to the Act of Navigation, which requires all Foreign Commodities to be shipp'd at the usual Ports, this Project dropp'd.

As to the Shipping of *Russia*, it was very Shipping
inconsiderable till the Reign of the late Czar of *Russia*.
Peter. This Prince having open'd a Passage
into the *Black Sea*, by the taking of *Asoph*,
about the Year 1695. apprehended it would
be of mighty advantage to him to establish a
Royal Fleet on that side, with which he
might be able to force a Trade with *Turky*,
and even penetrate through the *Bosphorus* and
Hellespont into the *Mediterranean Sea*, if the
Grand Seignior should refuse him Passage. Ac-
cordingly he immediately sent to *Holland* for
Builders and Artificers to instruct his People
in Building Ships; and to *Italy*, and to *Venice*
for Workmen to build his Galleys; and hav-
ing provided all Materials, directed a Fleet
of forty Men of War, ten Store Ships and
Bomb Vessels, twenty whole Galleys and
thirty half Galleys, with other Vessels, to be
prepar'd and equipp'd for Sea-Service, with-
in the space of three Years: Several of the prin-
cipal Nobility, whose Wealth consists in the
Number of their Slaves as well as the Re-
venues of their Lands, being oblig'd each of
them to build a Man of War at their own
charge; Nor were the Inferior Gentlemen,
Trades Men, Merchants, or even the Reli-
gious in the Monasteries exempted from con-
tributing to the charge of Building this Navy.
The Czar soon after declared his Intentions to
travel while this Fleet was Equipping, order-
ing many of the young Nobility to attend
him, or to travel into different Countries, in
Order to improve themselves in Ship-Build-
ing, Navigation, and other Arts and Sciences.
I shall not here trouble the Reader with a
Diary of the Czar's Journey; but observe,
that the *Dutch* knowing his Majesty's Passion

to be instructed in Maritime Affairs, had represented to him by their Agents at *Mosco*, that no People were so well vers'd in these, as well as other Arts and Sciences, as the good People of *Holland*: That their Navy was more numerous and powerful, and their Ships better built than those of any Nation in Christendom; and accordingly his Majesty being thus prepossessed with an Opinion of the *Dutch*, bent his Course first towards that polite People. As his Majesty drew near the *United Provinces* a Deputation was sent from the States General to attend the Embassy, (for the *Czar* travell'd *incognito*, as a private Gentleman, in the Train of his Ambassadors) They made the Ambassadors large Presents, and declar'd that their High Mightinesses had given Orders for defraying their Charges while they remain'd in their Dominions. The Magistrates met them in their Formalities; and the Garrisons were under Arms at every Town they pass'd through; the Guns saluting them from the Ramparts. When they approach'd the City of *Amsterdam*, the most considerable Burghers, with a numerous Train of young Fellows in their gayest Equipages went out to meet them, and the Women crouded the Windows and Balconies as they pass'd: The Night concluding with a magnificent Fire-Work upon the Water before the House provided for the Ambassadors. But the *Czar*, who propos'd to himself chiefly the making himself Master of the Art of Ship-Building, having learnt enough of the *Dutch* Language to make himself understood, while he was at *Mosco*, took a little House near the *East-India* Ship-yard, where he liv'd some Months with two or three of his Noblemen
and

and fellow Labourers, where he work'd part of the Day with the Ax among the Ship-Builders, disguis'd in the Habit of a *Dutch* Skipper, and at other times diverted himself with sailing and rowing upon the Water, or receiving Visits from some of the principal Burghers, who shew'd him all their fine Collections of Art or Nature, that he might retain the same great Opinion of their Country their Factors had instill'd into him at *Mosco*; nor did he refuse to make a private Visit sometimes, and would be very free and merry in a select Company, which he approv'd of: But having had an Opportunity here of seeing several *English* Ships, and admiring their Beauty and Proportion; at a private Interview with King *William*, he determin'd to see *England*, and had a House provided for him in *York-Buildings* by the *Thames* side; but Ship-Building being his principal Business, he soon remov'd to Mr. *Evelyn's* House at *Deptford*, where a Back-Door open'd into the King's Yard; and the *English* Builders shew'd him their Draughts, and the method of laying down by Proportion any Ship or Vessel of what Bulk soever, with the Rules for Moulding and Building a Ship according to it; with which he was extremely delighted, and saw practis'd both in the Merchants and King's Yards; which made him wish he had spent less time in *Holland*, where their method is not so Artificial: He observ'd to his Friends, that he should have been a Bungler in the Art of Ship-Building, if he had not seen *England*; and resolv'd to have all his Ships built after the *English* Model for the future: and for that end took several *English* Builders home with him; the chief of whom was

Sir *Anthony Dean's* Son, whose Father was several times mobb'd, and in Danger of being pull'd to pieces for instructing the *French* in that Art by the Command of the *English* Court; and what the Consequence may be of letting the *Russians* into the Secret, and giving them so much Assistance both from *England* and *Holland*, towards establishing a Royal Navy, the Wisest Man cannot foresee: If they have made so good use of their time already, what may we expect in another Age? The *Czar* seem'd most pleas'd with the Conversation of the Marquis of *Carmarthen* while he was here, who comply'd with him in his humour of Ship-Building, and row'd and sail'd with him upon the Water whenever he was dispos'd for these Amusements; which so endear'd the Marquis to his Majesty, that he made him a Grant of the sole Importation of Tobacco into his Dominions, which was formerly prohibited by their Patriarch as a profane Weed, unqualifying a Man for Divine Service, who was polluted with the filthy Smoak proceeding from it. The *Czar* also acquainted himself with almost every other Mechanick-Art, sometimes he visited the Watch-Makers, sometimes the Smiths and Gun-Founders; losing no time while he remain'd in *England*, which was about three Months; and at his Departure King *William* presented him with the *Royal Transport*, then the finest Yatch in *England*, built in the Fashion of a Frigate, and carrying twenty four Guns, contriv'd by the Marquis of *Carmarthen*, purely for the King's use in crossing the Water during the War with *France*.

When

When the Czar return'd into *Moscovy*, he made a Draught of a Man of War of fifty Guns with his own Hands, set her upon the Stocks at *Veronize*, and caus'd himself to be declar'd Master-Builder. He took upon himself also the Title of a Sea Captain, and gradually rose to that of Vice Admiral, acting suitably to the Command he assum'd in all Engagements, and on other Occasions; and by his Example, prevail'd on his Nobility to take up with inferior Posts in the Fleet at first, and advance leisurely from one Employment to another; that when they arriv'd at a considerable Post, they might not be ignorant of their Duty. But I shall defer the enlarging on the Royal Navy till I come to treat of the *Russian* Forces by Sea and Land, and return to the Trade and Shipping of the Merchants of *Russia*.

The Czar
the Chief
Ship Car-
penter.

As the Sovereign is the most considerable Merchant in *Moscovy*, his Ships at present serve indifferently for Men of War and Merchant-Men; but the *Russians* have not made any attempts towards a Foreign Trade in their own Bottoms, till very lately. The Ships sent to *Cadiz* a Year or two ago with Naval Stores, perhaps are the only Instance of their carrying abroad the Product of *Moscovy* in their own Vessels, at least towards the Ocean. 'Tis true, they have for near two hundred Years pass'd had some Vessels on the *Caspian Sea*, with which they traded to *Persia* and *Usbeck Tartary*; but as they were very unskilful Sailors, that Trade has hitherto been but inconsiderable; what it may arrive to now the *Russians* are Masters of the Southern and Western Coasts of the *Caspian Sea*, in the Dominions of the King of *Persia*, as they

The
Russians
begin to
trade in
their own
Bottoms.

Advantages of
Russia in
point of
Trade.

were before of the Northern Shoars, is another Consideration. If they maintain their Footing in *Gilan* and *Mazanderan*, the richest Provinces of *Persia*, will they not be able to furnish *Europe* with *Persian* Silks much cheaper than any other Nation? and may they not also easily open a Communication with *India* and *China* by the way of the *Caspian Sea*; Caravans going annually from *Usbeck Tartary*, (situate on the East side of the *Caspian*) to both those Countries? and as the *Moscovites* are already the only People who have any Shipping on the *Caspian Sea*, and are now so much improv'd in their Navigation, they will find little difficulty in maintaining the Dominion of it; and probably compel all Countries situate near that Sea, to deal with them upon their own Terms. And as they have now made their Rivers Navigable, and cut Canals quite through their Country, and thereby open'd a Communication between the *Caspian Sea* and the *Baltick*, and even with the *White Sea* and the Northern Ocean, what can prevent their distributing the rich Commodities of *Persia* and the *East Indies* to all the Nations in *Europe*? If their Government ever think fit to encourage this Traffick, must *England* and *Holland* be every Year at the Expence of furnishing out a Royal Fleet to oppose their getting out of the Sound? for I'm afraid they are already become so powerful at Sea, that neither the *Swede* or *Dane*, and perhaps their united Forces can scarce hinder their Passage into the Ocean that way; and tho' the Sound were block'd up, they have still the *White Sea* open; and I'm apt to think we shall hardly ever venture the Royal Navy of *England* within the Polar Circle to meet with them.

them. In short, the *English* and *Dutch* have so long furnish'd the *Russians* with Ship-Builders, instructed them in the Arts of War, Navigation and other Sciences, and rendred them so expert and formidable, that nothing can prevent their engrossing most of the Trade of the World but their own Mismanagements, especially if we consider how easy it is for them to open a Communication again with the *Black Sea* by the means of their Rivers which fall into it, which puts the Trade of *Turky* and the *Mediterranean* into their Hands, especially if they should have a Navy of superior Force to the *Turks*, to the *Euxine*, which may be no difficult Matter; the *Turks* declining, as the *Russians* improve, in Shipping and Navigation. But let us consider further, the Product and Manufactures of *Russia*, without which it will be found very difficult for other Nations, particularly the Maritime Powers to subsist. It is from hence chiefly we furnish our selves with Pitch, Tar, Hemp, Planks, and Fir Timber for Masts of Ships, &c. And since a Communication has been open'd between the *Volga* and the *Baltick*, by means of new Canals, 'tis said, they will be able to furnish the *Dutch* and other Nations with Corn cheaper than they can have it at *Dantzick*, *Koningsburg*, or any other Port in the *Baltick*; and the *Dutch* alone do not load less than a thousand Ships in the *Baltick* with Corn every Year. Add to this, that the *Russians* having Oak Timber, and all other Naval Stores of their own growth, need not be oblig'd to any other Nation for them; and consequently can fit out Ships on much easier Terms than their Neighbours. But to proceed, *Russia* also affords Potashes, *Russia*
Leather,

Leather, Furs, Linnen, Iron, Copper, Seal-Skins, Train-Oil, Rosin, Caviar, Tallow, Wax, Isinglass of two sorts, one sort used in the Windows of Ships, and the other in making Glue.

As to their Manufactures they have lately set up of Silk, Woollen, and Linnen, I have already observ'd, that the two former do not yet turn to any great Account ; Woollen Cloth they are supply'd with from *Prussia* at present, which they us'd to have from *England*. The King of *Prussia* has of late Years much improv'd that Manufacture, by inviting Foreigners into his Dominions ; and tho' it is acknowledg'd to be much inferiour in goodness to the *English* Cloth, the *Russians*, for reasons best known to themselves, choose to deal with *Prussia*, rather than with *England*. As to the Linnen Manufacture, they have sufficient for their own use, and export great quantities of coarse Linnen for Towels, call'd *Russia Diaper* ; and as they have plenty of good Flax, will probably in time, bring that Manufacture to as great Perfection as their Neighbours. They make their own Gunpowder out of the Brimstone and Saltpetre the Country produces, and may probably transport great quantities of it in time ; there being abundantly more than sufficient for their own uses : And as Labour is very cheap, and they have plenty of Iron and Steel, it is suppos'd they may be in a capacity shortly to furnish Foreigners with Fire Arms, as hath been observ'd already. These are some of the many Advantages *Russia* hath of her Neighbours in point of Trade : I shall next enquire into the Disadvantages this People lie under in that respect. And First, the Government

vernment monopolize the principal Commodities of the growth of the Country, buying up large quantities of them, and then setting an extravagant Value upon them, prohibit the Subject to sell any of the same kind of Goods to Foreigners, till the *Czarina's* are dispos'd of. Again, when any Foreign Merchandizes arrive, the Government will not suffer a Subject to purchase them, until the *Czarina* is first serv'd; whereby Foreigners are sometimes compell'd to part with their Effects at such prices as the Officers of the Crown are pleased to set upon them. The Tax-gatherers are empowered to enter the Houses of the Natives, to search for Goods, and Arbitrarily to Assess and Levy the Duties laid upon them, in all Inland Places, whereby the People are immenforably griev'd. Add to this the Oppression of their Governors and their petty Officers; and they have but small Encouragement to apply themselves to any Manufactures. If they have by their Industry or Ingenuity gain'd any thing, it is all at the mercy of their Governors; for which reason, every one affects to be thought poor, lest he should be harrafs'd and plagu'd, till he is oblig'd to part with what he hath.

The common People therefore may be found loitering away their time in most of the Villages of *Russia*; seldom endeavouring to provide more than will just keep them from starving, which does not require much pains in that plentiful Country. If they do get any Money, they bury it as their Lords did lately, lest the *Czar* should seize on it: But of late, 'tis said, the Grandees have found the Advantage of lodging their Money in Foreign Banks; but neither in the one Case nor the other, does the

Money

Disadvantages
of the
Russians, in
point of
Trade.

Money circulate as it ought to do in every trading Country. Another great Discouragement to all Ingenuity and Industry is, that if a Man be found to excel in any Art, or to be a better Workman than his Neighbours, he is perpetually employ'd by his Superiours, whose Slave he is, allowing him nothing for his Labour ; whereby his Family are reduc'd to a starving Condition, if they can't provide for themselves ; and while the *Russian* Government thus continues to tyrannize over the Subjects, and gives them no greater Security in their Properties, perhaps we shall be in no great danger of their rivalling us in point of Trade ; but shou'd it ever enter into the Heart of the *Russian* Emperors to Enfranchise their People, and secure to them the Products of their Industry, which the late Czar was about to do, no Nation in *Europe* probably wou'd make a greater Figure.

Trade of
England
with *Rus-*
sia.

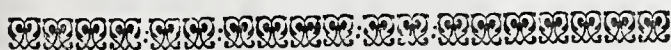
As to the Trade of *England* with *Russia*, it was once exceeding advantagious to us, when we exported Cloth and other Woollen Manufactures thither ; but since they have their Cloth from other Markets, and we purchase the product of *Russia* chiefly with Treasure, the Exchange must of consequence be against us. We might, 'tis said, with good management, receive our Naval Stores from our *American* Plantations ; but notwithstanding the Acts which have pass'd for the encouragement of that Trade, I don't find any greater Progress made in it yet ; but we seem still under a necessity of fetching our Firr Timber, Planks, and other Naval Stores from *Russia* ; how much soever it might be to our advantage, and whatever other Branches from Trade may be in a flourishing Condition

at

at present, it does not require any great cunning to see that this is not. I shall here add a Word or two in Relation to the State of the *Russian* Coins; and it seems, six and twenty Years ago they had no other Silver Coin than Copecks, or Pence, half Copecks, and quarter Copecks; and these were of full weight, and proportionable to the purest Coins of other Countries. But the *Czar*, after the loss of the Battel of *Narva*, with all his Artillery and Baggage, in the Year 1700, finding some difficulty in raising a Supply for the ensuing Campaign, came to a Resolution of calling in the old Money, and melting it down; and delivering out new Copecks and half Copecks in their room, not more than three fifths of the weight of the former; and an Allay has been since order'd to be mix'd with the Silver, which renders them still worse. But it being observ'd, that the People hoarded up the old Money, and were backward in bringing it to the Mint, ten *per Cent.* Profit was offer'd in new Money to all that would bring in their old Coin. And large Money was order'd to be Coin'd; as Rubles, half Rubles, quarter Rubles, and ten, five, and three Copeck Pieces. The Ruble was before but an imaginary Coin, amounting to an hundred Copecks; but now a Dollar, which was but the Value of fifty five Copecks, or Pence, being re-coin'd, and a little Allay added to it, was made to pass for a Ruble, or an hundred Pence; and at the same time the *Czar* wou'd be paid for all the produce of his Country in Specie-Dollars. This brought a considerable Sum of Money into the *Czar's* Treasury at first, and serv'd the present turn; but the Exchange, on which Trade depends, soon fell to between thirty and forty *per Cent.*

and the Price of every thing, especially what was purchased in Foreign Countries, advanc'd proportionably. Even the *Czar* himself was soon after a Sufferer by his debasing the Coin ; the Cloathing for his Army, and all other Foreign Commodities which *Russia* wanted, were held at extravagant Prices ; forty five *per Cent.* was given for the return of Money into the *Swedish Pomerania*, where his Army lay ; and equal to this, was found the difference of Exchange between his own Country, *England*, and *Holland* ; as he experienc'd in the Men of War he purchased there. For whatever Value a Prince may set upon the base Coin of his own Country, Foreigners will take it for no more than its intrinsick worth, unless compell'd to it, as the Foreign Merchants sometimes were in his own Ports. Another Grievance our Merchants justly complain'd of was, that after they had Commission'd their Factors to buy up any Commodity in the Country, new Duties were frequently laid upon them ; which occasion'd their being held up at such extravagant Rates, that they were Losers by Importing them. These are very great Discouragements to Trade ; and was not the Merchandize we bring from *Russia* absolutely necessary, towards the building and rigging out our Fleets, we ought certainly to discontinue it. But shou'd a Prince ever sit upon the Throne of *Russia*, well acquainted with the true Interest of his People as well as his own, and make proper Improvements of the variety of useful Materials which that Empire produces in the greatest Plenty, their Trade would flourish, and Riches flow in upon them, proportionably to the vast Extent of their County ; and as Power is a constant

stant Attendant on Wealth, the Emperor of *Russia* would probably become the most Potent Monarch in *Europe*. Which brings me in the next place to consider the Prerogatives of the Prince, the Constitution of the Government, and the Forces and Revenues of this mighty Empire.



CHAP. X.

Treats of the Arms of Russia, the Imperial Stile, the Prerogatives of the Prince, the Constitution of the Government, Degrees of Nobility, and the Forces and Revenues of the Empire.

THE Arms of *Russia* are, Or, an Eagle display'd Sable, bearing on its Breast a Shield, Gules, charg'd with a Cavalier Argent, (St. George, or St. Michael) fighting with a Dragon; and over the Heads of the Eagle are three Crowns, viz. those of *Mosco*, *Casan*, and *Astracan*. As to the Titles of these Princes, we scarce find two of them assuming exactly the same: *John Basilowitz*, in his Letter to King *Edward VI.* of *England*, Stiles himself *Great Lord, and Emperor of all Russia, Great Duke of Wolodimer, Mosco, and Novogrod, King of Casan, King of Astracan, Lord of Pleskow, Great Duke of Smolensko, Tweria, Inghoria, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, &c. Lord and Great Duke of Novogrod in the Low Country; of Ceringo, Rezan, Polotskoi, Rostow, Jarislaw, Bielezero, Lief-land, Oudoria, and Condensa; Commander of Siberia and the North Parts, and Lord of divers other Countries.* *Isbrant Ides* in his Dedication

The Arms of *Russia*.

Imperial Stiles.

of his Travels to the late Czar *Peter*, styles him *Emperor of the Whole, Great, Little, and White Russia*; and besides the Provinces aboveenumerated, Czar of *Daour and Samoieda, Commander and Lord of the Ivershian Countries; the Kartalinschian, Grufinschian, and Kaberdinschian Dominions, of Circassia, and Georgia; and many other Countries, East, West, and North, the Inheritance of his Ancestors.*

But notwithstanding the Czars of *Moscow* have heretofore been stil'd *Emperors* by the *English*, viz. in the Reign of *Edward VI.* as appears by a Letter from *K. Philip and Q. Mary* to *John Basilowitz*; and in the Reign of *Charles II.* by a Memorial presented to the *Russian Court* by the *Earl of Carlisle*; and perhaps by the *Dutch*, on Account of the Advantages they receiv'd by the *Russian Trade*; yet it seems the *Russian Princes* were not generally acknowledg'd *Emperors* by the other Powers of *Europe*, till the last Czar, *Peter Alexowitz* laboured the Point, and procured that Honour for himself and his Descendants. And what after all are we to understand by this Title of *Emperor*, which is not included in that of *King*? The *Romans* first gave the Title *Imperator* to the Commanders of their Armies, and afterwards appropriated it to the Sovereigns of that Empire. And the Emperor of *Germany*, as Successor to the *Cæsars*, has long enjoy'd that Title. But no Princes in *Europe* besides, unless the Czars of *Moscow*, have aspir'd to this Honour. Their Neighbours however, have thought fit to gratifie them in it; tho' some think that no Prince ought to enjoy the Title of *Emperor*, but one who is *King of Kings*, or *Patshaw*, as the Eastern Nations Term it, one who hath Sovereign

Princes

Princes within the Bounds of his Empire, who have some dependance on him, as the Emperor of *Germany* hath. But so complaisant, or profuse, of this Honour are our Modern Writers and Travellers, that they give this Title of Emperor to almost every Infidel Prince, whether he assumes it himself or not ; as to the Sovereigns of *China*, *India*, *Turky*, and *Morocco* ; which might, for any thing I can see to the contrary, be as justly apply'd to any Sovereign Prince in *Christendom*. We stile the Crown of *England* an Imperial Crown, because it is Independant, and hath no Superior ; and it was not long since under debate, 'tis said, whether our Princes ought not to assume the Imperial Stile in their Acts of State : but as this would have given us the Precedence of *France* and *Spain*, we cou'd never have expected they would have acquiesced in it, unless we had return'd the Compliment, and so made as many Emperors as there are Kings in *Europe* ; and possibly, as Kings have multiplied in the last Age, they may grow up into Emperors in the next, if their Ambition for a Feather be as predominant as that of some of their Predecessors.

The late *Czar* however, was so weary of the tedious Recital of his other Titles in all Petitions and Acts of State, that he order'd only the following Words shou'd be us'd in such Instruments, viz. *Vosfeas Millestia Vishia Sudaria*, i. e. *To his most Highly Gracious Majesty* ; and that instead of the Petitioner's stiling himself *Golup*, or Slave, he shou'd Write himself *Subject* for the future.

The antient *Russes*, as well as the *Turks*, I take to be of *Scythian* or *Tartarian* Extraction. It is agreed by all, that they were a wandering

The anti-
ent and
present
Constitu-
tion of
the *Russian*
Govern-
ment.

wandering People, like the *Scythian Nomades*, or the present *Tartars*, their Successors; without any fix'd Habitation, but rambling from place to place, for the convenience of Pasture and Forage for their Flocks and Herds. And 'tis said, that the very Name of *Russia* imports a Wanderer. *Russia Rubra*, now a Province of *Poland*, is suppos'd to have receiv'd its Name from them. *Volhinia*, another Province of that Kingdom, was also possess'd by the *Russes*: *Kiow*, the Capital of *Volhinia*, being the first City where they fix'd the Seat of their Monarchy. Their Sovereign *Volodimer* having extended his Conquests very far to the Eastward, laid the Foundation of the City which goes by his Name, about the Year of our Lord, 1000, and removed the Seat of the Empire thither; and Marrying the Daughter of the Emperor *Basilins Porphyrogenesta*, introduc'd Christianity among his People. Many more of the *Tartar* Hords left their rambling Life about the same time the *Russes* did, and fix'd themselves in that Country, at this Day denominated *Russia*, or *Moscovy*; their respective Leaders assuming the Power of Sovereign Princes, which 'tis not improbable they exercis'd in their wandering State. Among these were the Dukes of *Mosco*, *Novogrod*, *Smolensko*, *Rostow*, *Rezan*, &c. but the *Russians* being the most Potent Hord, in time made most of their Neighbours submit to them. The *Tartars* of *Casan*, *Astracan*, &c. apprehensive of the growing Power of the *Russes*, made Head against them, and Anno 1237. after a War of some continuance, oblig'd the *Russes* to pay them Tribute for near two hundred Years; though many brave Attempts were made by the *Russians* to shake off their

their Yoke. *Daniel*, or *Danielou*, surnam'd *Calletta*, who reign'd in the thirteenth Century, remov'd the Seat of the Monarchy to *Mosco*; and 'tis said, first took upon himself the Title of *Great Duke*: but whether the *Moschi*, a People mention'd by antient Writers among the *Scythian Nomades*, gave Name to this City and Province, or whether the River *Moscowa*, on which the Town is situated, communicated its Name both to the People and Country, is not easy to determine at this Day; neither doth it seem very material. *John Basflowitz*, or *Vasiliwich Grotzdin*, was the first who united the several Dukedoms and Principalities Tributary to the *Russians* under his Dominion, which were before subject to their respective Princes, and govern'd according to their several Customs. This Prince, 'tis computed, began his Reign, *Anno* 1450, he shook off the *Tartar* Yoke, and expell'd them from the Castle of *Mosco*, where they had till then a Garri-son, and added the Dukedoms of *Novogrod* and *Twere* to his Dominions, as his Son did those of *Plescow* and *Smolensko*; but *John*, or *Ivan Basilowitz* his Grandson, who began his Reign, *Anno* 1540, made the greatest Addition to the *Russian* Empire, for he conquer'd the Kingdoms of *Casan* and *Astracan*, and was first acknowledg'd Sovereign of that vast Country of *Siberia*, from whence the *Russians* have their Furs. It was in this Prince's Reign also that the *English* discover'd the Port of *St. Nicholas*, or *Archangel*, and establish'd a Trade with *Russia*; which till then had never been visited by the Shipping of any Nation whatever. The *Cossacks*, or *Czercaf-ses*, who inhabit *Ukrania*, situate between the Rivers *Don* and *Nieper*, submitted to the
Czar

Czar Alexis Michaelwitz, Father of the late *Czar Peter*. The *Calmucks*, the *Circassian*, and *Georgian* Princes, have many of them also submitted to the *Russians*; and the great Conquests the late *Czar* made in *Livonia* and *Sweden* have been already mention'd. Thus much seem'd proper to observe, concerning the Original and Growth of his vast Monarchy, the better to understand the antient and present Constitution of it.

Moscovy then is compos'd of many large Provinces, formerly Independant Kingdoms and Principalities, in most of which the Feudal Tenures prevail'd: The respective Princes reserving first Lands sufficient to maintain their Households, which are call'd their *Demefn* Lands, parcell'd out the rest among their Officers and Followers, on Condition of bringing into the Field a certain Number of Horse, proportionable to the Lands they held, (for few Nations fought on Foot antiently). And with the Lands and Villages, the Natives inhabiting them also were made over, and became the Inheritance of the Person to whom they were convey'd; descending with their Issue as the Lands descended, which in *England* was call'd *Villainage*. But the Crown of *Moscovy* still reserv'd a Power over these Villains paramount to that of their immediate Lords, of employing them in any Services the Necessity of the State might require, or of taxing them for the supplying their Forces either with Money, or Provisions in kind, in such Proportion as the Prince should direct. The Sovereign also reserv'd a Right of resuming any Grant, and transferring the Estate to another: but otherwise the Lands descended to the Issue Male of the Person to whom

whom they were granted. When the *Russian* Princes, by Alliances, Treaties, or pure Force happen'd to add any neighbouring Principalities to their Dominions, they suffer'd them at first to be govern'd by their own Laws, and their own Princes, paying only certain Taxes, and raising Forces, when requir'd, proportionable to the Exigencies of the State: But these subjected Powers regretting the loss of their Sovereignty, and uneasy at finding themselves under a Foreign Yoke, probably projected the throwing it off; however, this we are pretty well assur'd of, that the *Russian* Sovereigns charged them with it, and under pretence of Plots and Conspiracies of the Vassal Princes to re-instate themselves in their antient Dominions, caus'd most of the tributary Sovereigns, with their Families, to be massacred; making their Territories Provinces of the *Russian* Empire. These were the Practices of the Emperor *John Basilowitz Grotzdyn*, who began his Reign *Anno* 1450. and of *John Basilowitz* his Grand-Son, who reign'd from the Year 1540, to the Year 1584. from which cruel and arbitrary Proceedings, the latter obtain'd the Title of *the Tyrant*; and the conquer'd *Royalets* and their Nobility have since been look'd upon and treated as Slaves by the *Czar*, as the Commonalty were before, and are yet by the Nobility. This is the Constitution of *Russia*, and pretty near this, was the Condition of many other Northern Nations originally, particularly of the *Saxons*, who are deriv'd from the *Scythians* as well as the *Russians*; only their Generals and Officers, who held their Lands by Knights Service, or Escuage, that is to say, on Condition of finding a certain

Number of Horse, or performing some other Services to the Sovereign, were Freemen ; the Commonalty were generally Slaves, even those who held their Lands by Soccage Tenure, and are call'd Freeholders at present, were oblig'd to plough and manure their Lords Lands, and do other base Services at first. Their State was very little better than that of Villains : And yet, this is the happy Constitution some would reduce us to again. This Nation, of all others, ought never to look too far backwards ! Who is so little acquainted with the antient Constitution, as not to know the Property of all the Lands in *Brittain* was originally in the Sovereign ; and that there are no Lands, even at this Day, but hold mediately or immediately of the Crown ? Which shews the Interest the Crown once had in them. But the Wars of the Barons with their Princes had this great good Effect ; that both sides, in order to gain the Commonalty to engage the more heartily in their Quarrel, Enfranchis'd many of their Tenants, accepting of a part of the Profits of their Lands, or a certain Rent in lieu of other Services. The Sovereign also condescended not to lay any Burthens or Taxes on the Commonalty without their Consent ; and thus we became Freemen and Freeholders. But this I believe no Man in his Wits will affirm was our original Constitution, or the Constitution of any other Nation antiently. But as we have the Grants of so many of our Princes establishing the Subjects of this Kingdom in their Liberties and Properties, and these confirm'd by many Acts of Parliament ; let us rejoice in our Happiness, and be upon our Guard, lest we fall again under *Saxon* or *Russian*

fian Tyranny. But to return from this Digression; the Monarchy of *Russia* is Hereditary, tho' it hath had frequent Interruptions from the Rebellion of the Subject. The Influence of Foreign Princes, or the appointment of the Reigning Prince for the Sovereign on the Throne, hath frequently taken the Liberty of passing by the next in Succession, and naming a more remote Relation of the Royal Family to succeed him when he saw fit; but till of late, the Salique Law hath taken place in *Russia*, and all Females been excluded from the Crown. This the late *Czar Peter* alter'd in favour of the present *Czarina*, who is the first Female Empress that ever sat on the Throne of *Russia*. The Administration indeed has been sometimes in the hands of a Woman formerly, as it was during the Minority of the late *Czar* and his Brother, when the Princess *Sophia* their Sister took the Reins of Government into her Hands, and was very near Usurping the Throne herself, as some have suggested, to the Exclusion of *Czar Peter*. But to shew how their Princes have succeeded, I shall give a short Abstract of their Succession from *Wolodimer*.

To *Wolodimer*, who dyed Anno 1015, succeeded *Wolodimer* II. his Son, by some call'd *Farislaw*, having built the City of that Name; and died, Anno 1146, being succeed by *Wolodimer* III. his Son: after whom Reigned *Vitzevoldus*, the Son of the last *Wolodimer*; and after him *George*, who was Murder'd by *Batus*, a *Tartarian* Prince, in the Year 1237; By whose Interest, *Farislaw*, the Brother of *George* was advanc'd to the Throne, on Condition of becoming Tributary to the *Tartars*. To *Farislaw* succeeded *Alexander* his Son; and

Wolodimer 1.

Wolodimer 2.

Wolodimer 3.

Vitzevoldus.

George 1.
Farislaw.

Alexander.

- Daniel* to *Alexander, Daniel*; who remov'd the Imperial Seat to *Mosco*. *Ivan*, or *John* his Son succeeded him; and after him another *John*, the Son of the last; to whom succeeded *Demetri Ivanowitz*, who obtain'd several Victories over the *Tartars*, but lost his Life in a Battle with them. After *Demetrius* reign'd, *Basil Demetriwitz*, who drove the *Tartars* out of *Russia*, and made a Conquest of *Bulgar*; but being influenc'd by his Wife, pass'd by his Son, and left the Crown to his Brother *George*; who at his Death, appointed his disinherited Nephew, *John Basiliwitz Grotzden* to succeed him, who began his Reign, as is computed, about the Year 1450. This Prince first took upon him the Title of Emperor, and united the Tributary Dukedoms under one Head; he disinherited his eldest Son, and appointed *Basil I. Basil Ivanowitz*, his Son by a second Wife, his Successor; he began his Reign Anno 1492, and was succeeded by his Son *John Basilowitz*, the Tyrant, Anno 1540, who was succeeded by *Fedor*, or *Theodore* his Son, who marrying the Sister of *Boris Fedorwitz Gadinow*, his Brother-in-Law, *Boris* murder'd both him and his Brother *Demetrius*, and usurp'd the Throne. He had Reigned but a very little while before a certain Monk, Named *Griska Utopia*, personated the murder'd *Demetrius*, and being supported by the *Poles*, made himself Master of some considerable places in *Moscovy*; whereupon the Usurper, *Boris*, dy'd of grief, 'tis said; and notwithstanding the Nobility proclaim'd the Usurper's Son, *Fedor Boriswitz*, the pretended *Demetrius* entred *Mosco* in Triumph within two Months afterwards, and was Crown'd Emperor, having Strangled the young *Fedor* and his Mother; but the Pre-

tender having married the Daughter of a *Polish* Palatine, and promis'd to introduce the *Roman Catholick* Religion, and to prefer the *Poles* who had assisted him, gave such a general disgust to the *Russians*, that within a Year after his Coronation, while he was solemnizing his Wedding with the *Polish* Princess, the *Russians* fell upon his Guards, and having made their way to his Apartment in the Castle, murder'd him; and *Zuski*, one of the Conspirators, and allied to the former Royal Family, mounted the Throne. But there arose still another counterfeit *Demetrius*, who being assisted by the *Poles*, depos'd *Zuski*, shav'd his Head, and thrust him into a Monastery. The Imposture however being discover'd, the *Russian* Nobility, who were under the Power of the *Polish* Army, consented that *Uladislaus*, Son of the King of *Poland*, shou'd be their Sovereign. They continued but a very little while of this mind, entering into a Conspiracy to drive the *Poles* out of the Kingdom; of which the *Polish* General having some Intimation, set fire to the City of *Mosco*, and fell upon the *Moscovites* before they were prepar'd to receive them; and 'tis said, that no less than two hundred thousand *Russians* perished in the Flames, or by the Sword, and almost the whole City was laid in Ashes. The *Polish* General afterwards came to a Treaty with the *Russian* Nobility, and agreed to march out of the Country, carrying with him a prodigious Treasure into *Poland*, which the Army had plunder'd the *Russians* of, during the fire at *Mosco*. Soon after, *Michael Fedorowitz*, descended from the Emperor *John Basilowitz*, and Son of the then Patriarch, was unanimously Recogniz'd by the *Russians* for their

Zuski,

Demetrius 3.

Uladislaus.

Michael.

Alexis.

Theodore 2.

*John and
Peter the
last Em-
peror.*

their Sovereign, *Anno 1613*, from whom the present Royal Family of *Russia* are descended. *Michael* was succeeded by his Son *Alexis Michailowitz*, *Anno 1645*. after whom the Crown descended to his Son *Feodore*, or *Theodore Alexiowitz*, *Anno 1675*. who dying in the Year 1682, without Issue, left the Crown to his two Brothers, *John* by the same Mother, and *Peter* his half-Brother. Tho' some assure us, that *Feodore* appointed the *Czar Peter*, his half-Brother, only to succeed him; being sensible of the Incapacity of *John* to Govern: but that the Princess *Sophia*, of the whole Blood to *Feodore* and *John*, by her Intrigues, procur'd *John* to be declar'd joint Emperor with *Peter*, who was then very young. She had an Intention also, as the *Czar Peter* afterwards suggested, to have usurp'd the Throne herself; having corrupted the *Strelitzes*, or *Russian* Guards, consisting of twenty or thirty thousand Men, and drawn them over to her Party. The Prime Minister, Prince *Gallitzin*, was also charg'd by *Czar Peter* to be in the Plot. But however that matter really was, *Czar Peter*, on pretence that there was a Conspiracy against his Life, retir'd to the strong Monastery, or rather Fortrefs of *Troitzza*, about a Day's Journey from *Mosco*: Hither he Summon'd the Nobility in the Year 1689, declaring that he had very narrowly escap'd the Hands of the Conspirators. He Summon'd also the Guards, or *Strelitzes* to *Troitzza*, who obey'd his Summons; and having by the most exquisite Tortures made some few of them confess that there was a Plot to have murder'd him, his Wife, his Mother, and all their near Relations; and that the Prime Minister, *Gallitzin*, and his Sister *Sophia* were in the

the Conspiracy, the People were so wrought upon by this real or pretended horrid Plot, that *Czar Peter* found no difficulty in disposing of those who were not in his Interest, as he saw fit. Accordingly he shut up his Sister *Sophia* in a Monastery; and the Prime Minister, *Gallitzin*, a most deserving Statesman, who laid the Foundation of all the late Improvements in *Russia*, he banish'd with his Family into *Siberia*. Several of the *Strelitzes* who were to have had an hand in the intended Assassination, as was given out, he tortur'd and put to death; and this he seem'd under a necessity of doing, to keep up the Credit of the Plot. But surely the Prime Minister wou'd not have escap'd with so mild a Punishment as Banishment, if he had actually been in a Conspiracy to Assassinate the *Czar*: nor is it easy to believe that the Princess *Sophia*, the Prime Minister, and the whole Body of the *Strelitzes* shou'd have surrender'd themselves into the Power of the *Czar*, without striking a stroke, if they had been engag'd in so black a Conspiracy as they were charg'd with.

But here the Reader may reasonably expect some further Account of the Life and Actions of this Emperor (as great a Prince in many respects as ever appear'd in the World, by what means soever he obtain'd the Empire,) a Summary whereof follows,

The late *Czar Peter* was Son of the *Czar Alexis Michaelowitz* (who dy'd the eighth of February, 1676) and of *Natolia Kirihowna Nariskin*, his second Wife, who dy'd the fourth of February, 1694. He Married the Lady *Ottokesa Federowna*, the Daughter of *Boyar Fedor Abramowitz Lapuchin*, from whom he was separated in 1692: and afterwards took to his Embraces

An Abstract of the late *Czar's* Life and Actions.

Embraces, the Lady *Katherina Alexiowna*, but did not declare himself Married to her, until the Year 1711, tho' he had cohabited with her many Years before. He had by the first Venter, the Prince *Alexis Petrowitz*, born the 18th of *February*, 1690, who dy'd the seventh of *July* 1718, N. S. having been solemnly condemn'd to Death by his Father, in a great Council, consisting of the Clergy, Nobility, and great Officers, Civil and Military; whose Opinions being demanded by the *Czar*, unanimously declar'd the *Czarowitz* guilty of the Crimes laid to his Charge; the principal whereof were, that he had been in a Conspiracy to depose his Father, and fled into Foreign Countries, to avoid the Punishment he deserv'd. But the Prince dy'd a natural Death before the Sentence was executed upon him; and 'tis the Opinion of most Men, that the *Czar* never intended it shou'd have been executed. The *Czarowitz* Married the Princess *Charlotte Christina Sophia*, Daughter of *Lewis Rodolphus*, Duke of *Brunswick Wolfenbuttle*, and Sister of the present Empress of *Germany*. She dy'd the first of *November* 1715, leaving Issue, the Princess *Natalia*, born the 14th of *July*, 1714, and the *Czarowitz*, Prince *Peter Alexowitz*, born the 23d of *October*, 1715. The Issue which the late *Czar* had by his second Empress, the present *Czarina*, are the Princess *Mary*, born the 20th of *March*, 1713, and Married to the Duke of *Holstein* the 5th of *December*, 1724. The Princess *Anna Margareta*, born the 19th of *September*, 1714. Prince *Peter*, born the 8th of *November*, 1715, whom the late *Czar* had declar'd his Heir; but he dy'd at *Petersburg*, the sixth of *May*, 1719. Prince *Paul*, born at *Wesel*, *Jan.* 13th. 1717. who

who dy'd the same day; and the Princess *Natalia*, born the 31st of *August*, 1718.

The late Czar *Peter* reign'd jointly with his Brother *John* until the Year 1696; when the Czar *John* dy'd, leaving Issue three Princesses whom he had by the Lady *Proscovia Federouna Solticow*, his Consort, viz. the Princess *Katherine*, married to *Charles Leopold Duke of Mecklenburg Schwerin* the 19th of *April* 1716. The Princess *Anne*, married to *Frederick William Duke of Courland*, the 13th of *November*, 1710; who left her a Widow the Year following; and the Princess *Proscovia*, who yet remains unmarried.

Czar *Peter* finding the *Turks* engag'd in War with the Emperor of *Germany*, the *Poles*, and *Venetians*, in the Year 1695 rais'd an Army of eighty or ninety thousand Men, and laid Siege to *Asoph* on the *Black Sea*; but the *Turks* throwing fresh Supplies of Men and Ammunition into the Town from time to time, he was forc'd to raise the Siege after he had lain four Months before the Place. Next Year, the Czar having recruited his Army, and prepar'd a Fleet of small Vessels and Gallies, to prevent the *Turks* throwing relief into the Town, as they had done the preceding Year, he sat down before this important Place again, and took it; allowing the Garrison no better Conditions, than to march out with their Arms. And in this Siege, 'tis said, the Czar first observ'd what vast advantage a Fleet might be to him in his intended Designs of enlarging his Empire; and soon after set out to Travel, in order to instruct himself and his Subjects in the Art of Navigation, Ship-building, &c. as above related. While he was at *Vienna*, in his return home

Asoph taken by the *Russians*, 1696.

from *England* and *Holland* in the Year 1698, receiving repeated Advices of a Conspiracy to declare the Throne of *Russia* vacant, on account of his Absence, he hasten'd to *Mosco*, where he found the Rebels had been defeated by General *Gordon*, a Native of *Scotland* in his Service ; and having made some Examples of the principal Rebels, he spent the following Year, 1699, in regulating his Revenues, reforming Abuses in the Civil Government, and putting Trade upon a better footing than it us'd to be ; but was so intent upon nothing, as Building a Fleet, and new Disciplining his Army, according to the Models he had seen Abroad.

The Czar
declares
War a-
gainst
Sweden,
1700.

In the Year 1700 he made a Truce with the *Grand Signior* for 25 Years, and declar'd War against the King of *Sweden* ; in the beginning of which he was very unfortunate, losing more than half his Army, and all his Artillery at the Battle of *Narva*. In the Year 1702 he gain'd a Victory over the *Swedes* at *Stagnitz* in *Livonia* ; which open'd a way to the taking of the Towns of *Wolmar*, *Marienburg*, *Dorpt*, and *Notteburg*. In *Marienburg* it was that he met with his second Spouse, the present *Czarina*, whom he took from an inferiour Officer of the *Swedes*, on the day she was Marry'd, at the Wedding Dinner, before her Husband had Bedded her, as is generally reported in *Russia*. He took the City of *Narva* in the Year 1704, and in 1705 the *Russian* Army enter'd *Lithuania*, under the Command of Marshall *Czeremtoff*, in favour of *Augustus* King of *Poland*, their Allie; but were defeated near *Warsaw*, by the *Swedish* General, Count *Lewenhaupt*. The Campaigns of 1706 and 1707. also pr v ed disadvantageous to the Czar and his

his Allies. In the Year 1709, the King of Sweden having march'd into the *Ukrain*, on an Invitation from *Mazeppa*, General of the *Cossacks*, was entirely defeated at *Pultowa* by the *Moscovites*; most of his Troops being cut to Pieces, or made Prisoners; the King, with a thousand or fifteen hundred Horse only escaping over the *Boristhines* to *Bender*, under the Dominion of the *Turks*. In 1710 the Czar made his triumphant Entry into *Mosco*, and the same Year, his Troops made themselves Masters of *Riga*, and almost all *Livonia*. In the Year 1711 the *Turks* broke the Truce with the *Russians*; whereupon the Czar, in hopes of an Insurrection in his favour in *Moldavia* and *Wallachia*, march'd as far as the Banks of the *Pruth*; where being destitute of all Provisions, and having lost one half of his Army by the Sword, Famine, or the hardships they suffer'd, they were surrounded and attack'd by the *Turks*, and must inevitably have perish'd, or surrender'd at Discretion, if the present *Czarina*, who was then in the Camp, had not muster'd up all the Dollars she cou'd borrow of the Officers, and made a Present of them to the *Grand Vizier*; whereupon that General was content to let the Czar march off with his Army, upon Condition of his surrendring *Asoph*, and all his other Fortresses on the *Black Sea*, or near the Mouths of the *Don* and *Nieper*; whereby all the Czar's Projects on that side were defeated. However, having thus escap'd the Hands of the *Turks*, he made himself Master of the *Swedish Pomerania* in the Year 1713, and in 1714 his Fleet, under the Command of Admiral *Apraxin*, beat that of the *Swedes* in the Gulph of *Finland*. In the Year 1715 he estab-

Battle of
Pultowa.

Battle of
the *Pruth*.

blish'd the *Academy Marine* at *Petersburg*, and in 1716, the Patriarch of *Moscow* dying, he caus'd himself to be declar'd Head of the Church, and Protector of their Religion, in much the same manner as *Henry VIII.* of *England* did; seizing upon the Revenues of several of the Monasteries, and converting them to his own use, after that laudable pattern; but deputed the Arch-Bishop of *Rezan* however to execute some parts of the Patriarchal Office. In the Year 1717 he visited the Kingdom of *France*, and having taken a View of their Palaces and Publick Buildings, and honour'd the Royal Academy of Sciences with his Presence, expressing his desire to be a Member of it, and to keep a Correspondence with them; he return'd the same Year into *Russia*. The Year 1718 was taken up with the Tryal of the *Czarowitz* and his Adherents, on whom he exercis'd great severities. In the Year 1719 he was preparing to make a Descent upon *Sweden*, when he receiv'd Advice of the Death of *Charles XII.* King of *Sweden*, and of his being succeeded by the Princess *Ulrica Eleonora* his Sister, with whom the *Czar* entred into a Treaty at the Island of *Aland*; but the Negotiations being broken off, the *Czar* went on with his intended Descent, burning several Cities, and ravaging the Country in a terrible manner, and destroy'd also some of their best Copper Works. In 1721 a Treaty was concluded between *Russia* and *Sweden*; by which the *Czar* was to remain in Possession of *Livonia*, *Ingria*, part of *Carelia*, and the District of *Wybourg*, (but I shall give the exact limits of the Dominions of *Sweden*, when I come to treat of that Country) On the Day the Peace was Proclaim'd, the *Czar* was declar'd by the

Senate,

Senate, *Father of his Country*, and *Emperor of all the Russia's*; which Title of *Emperor*, most of the Powers of *Europe* have indulg'd him in, and even the *English*, by way of *Courtesy*, have done it formerly, but I don't find that King *George* hath yet gratify'd the *Russian* Court in this particular. In the Years, 1722 and 1723, the *Czar* taking advantage of the Civil Wars of *Persia*, made himself Master of some of the best Provinces of that Kingdom; particularly of *Gilan*, *Mezanderan*, &c. situate on the South-West of the *Caspian Sea*; and several *Georgian* and *Circassian* Princes in the Neighbourhood of *Persia* having thrown themselves under the Protection of the *Russian* Empire at the same time, they seem much better establish'd in the *Persian* Dominions than the *Turk*.

In the Year 1722 the late *Czar* caused the Senate, the Great Officers of State, the Nobility, &c. to take an Oath of Fidelity to him, and to Swear that they would Obey whomsoever he shou'd nominate for his Successor. And in 1724 he caused the Empress *Catherine*, his Royal Consort, to be Crown'd, and the States of the Nation, both Ecclesiastical and Civil, to Swear Allegiance to her. About the latter end of *January*, 1724-5 the *Czar* found himself very ill with a great Cold, which was soon after attended by a Cholick and Strangury, occasioned by an Abscess in the Neck of the Bladder; which turning to a Gangrene, he expir'd on the eighth of *February* in the most violent Agonies, Aged fifty two Years, seven Months, and seven and twenty Days. Immediately after his Death, the Senate Publish'd the following Declaration, viz.

The Russians
Sworn to
the Succession.

Czarina
Crown'd
and declar'd
Successor
to the
Czar.

Czarina.
Proclaim-
ed.

Be it known unto all Men by these Presents, That it hath pleased Almighty God, after an illness of twelve Days, to take out of this World, the most Serene, and most Potent Prince, PETER the GREAT, Emperor and absolute Sovereign of all the Russia's, Father of his Country, and our most Gracious Lord, to exalt him to his Eternal Glory. That the Order of Succession of the Russian Empire hath been regulated by his Imperial Majesty of Glorious Memory, by his Declaration of the 5th of February, 1722, which hath been Publish'd to the whole Nation, and Confirm'd by the Oaths of all the Estates Assembled, That the Person whom his Imperial Majesty was pleased to appoint, shou'd succeed him. In pursuance whereof, in the Year 1724, he commanded his Dear Consort, our most Gracious Empress and Lady, the Lady Catherine Alexiewna to be recogniz'd and crown'd, on Account of the Innumerable, Great, and Important Services she had perform'd for the Advantage of the Russian Empire, which are amply set forth in the Declaration of the 15th of November, 1723.

For which Reasons the Senate, or Council of Regency, the Sacred Synod, &c. have unanimously Order'd, and caus'd to be Notified by this present Declaration, that none may pretend Ignorance thereof; that all Persons, Ecclesiastical, Civil, and Military, of what Estate or Condition soever they be, shall be Faithful and Obedient to the most Serene and most Potent Empress and Lady, the Lady Catherine Alexiewna, absolute Sovereign of all the Russia's. Soon after, the Senate, the Synod, and all the Great Officers, Civil and Military, renew'd the Oath they had taken to the Empress at her Coronation, Notwithstanding the meaness of her former Condition, and that she was by Birth a Foreigner

reigner, the whole *Russian* Nation unanimously submitted to her ; nor have we heard of any Insurrection or Conspiracy form'd against her to this Day.

The *Czarina*, as hath been intimated already, was a Native of the City of *Marienburg* in *Livonia*, and first marry'd to a *Swedish* Lieutenant, (some say he was but a Serjeant or Corporal) and that the *Czar* having made himself Master of *Marienburg* about the Year 1702, took her from her Husband on the very Day of their Marriage, before she was Bedded, and kept her many Years before he declar'd himself Contracted to her. This Lady is moderately tall, she hath black Hair, and a good Complexion, and as much fat, as renders her agreeable. She attended the late *Czar* on board his Fleet, and in the Field, and hath shewn more Courage and Conduct than usually falls to the share of that Sex, and was a means of extricating the *Czar* out of his greatest Difficulties ; particularly when he was surrounded by a numerous Army of the *Turks*, on the Banks of the *Pruth*, and there appear'd scarce any possibility of escaping ; then did she apply herself so dextrously to the weak side of the covetous *Vizier*, that he did not only suffer the *Russians* to march off, but supply'd their half-starv'd Army with Provisions ; insomuch, that those who were mortal Enemies the Day before, treated each other the next, as Brethren and Friends. She is now about forty two Years of Age, and treads exactly in the steps the late Emperor had trac'd out for her ; and probably after her Death will transmit the Crown to his Grandson, the present *Czarowitz*. The regard she already shews for that Prince, the

Some Account of the *Czarina*.

Her Person.

Her Age.

apparent

apparent Heir of the Crown, cannot but very much endear the Empress to her Subjects, and secure her from any Attempts against her Government. This Prince is now about eleven Years of Age, and hath a Court assign'd him, suitable to his Rank. However the *Czarina* might be inclin'd to pass him by, in favour of her own Daughter, who is marry'd to the Duke of *Holstein*, she may probably look upon such a step as impracticable, or at least the Success too hazardous to attempt.

Nobility
of *Russia*.

As to the Nobility of *Russia*, we hear of no other antiently than their *Knez* or *Knazey*, their *Boyars*, and *Vaivodes*. The *Knez* were Dukes or Sovereigns of their respective Principalities of which the Empire of *Russia* is compos'd, or the Posterity of such Dukes. And when the Duke of *Moscovy* united several of these Principalities under his Dominion, he at first gave himself the Title of GREAT DUKE. The *Boyars* were the antient Nobility in the several Dukedoms or Principalities, and the *Vaivodes* are the Governors of Provinces; who have all these Royalties and Noblemen under their Jurisdiction, being vested both with the Civil and Military Power, except in great Towns, where Justice is administred by a Body of the Burghers, or principal Citizens. The *Vaivode* is seldom continu'd above three Years in that Post. At present the Honours of *Knez* and *Boyar* are never conferr'd on any; the late *Czar* having created *Princes*, *Counts*, *Margraves*, &c. after the manner of *Germany*; but still both their Honours and Estates descend, and are distributed equally among their Male Posterity, and not according to their Seniority

(as

unless the Father advance the Fortune of one Brother above the rest. The late *Czar*, upon observing how the great Families in *England* were supported by leaving the bulk of the Estate to the eldest Son, had an Intention to have alter'd the Laws of his Country accordingly ; but his People seem'd so averse to the Project, that he did not insist upon it. This splitting the Honour among all the Children, makes it very cheap, as well here as in *Germany* ; and if their Descendants are not prefer'd in the Court or the Army, as they usually are, they are reduc'd often to very strait Circumstances. A Gentleman who was lately in *Russia*, says, he hath seen a Duke at the Plough-tail.

There are still an inferiour kind of Gentry in *Russia*, out of whom they constitute their *Diacks*, who are Clerks, Registers, or Assessors to the Civil Magistrate ; and are frequently denominated Chancellors by our Modern Travellers. These frequently sitting in their Courts of Justice, and determining Causes in the absence of the Governour, whose Substitutes they are. The rest of their Gentry, who have no Employments at home, usually serve in the Army or Fleet ; and the late *Czar* oblig'd those of better Quality to learn Navigation, and other parts of the Mathematicks to qualify them for the Sea-Service, Engineering, &c. whereby he employ'd abundance of idle hands, who were starving with Honourable Titles, and made them serviceable to their Country.

The *Czarina* hath a numerous Privy-Council, out of whom no more are assembled than Councils; have a particular Summons to attend. There are also other Boards or Councils establish'd for every considerable Branch of Business. As for the Navy, the Treasury, the Army, Trade,
Vol. VI.
S
Mines,

Senate.

Mines, &c. The Senate is compos'd of eight or ten of the principal Nobility and great Officers of State, who preside over the other Boards, and seem to have the whole Executive Power committed to them by the Prince. As to the Legislative Authority, this is solely in the Sovereign, who frequently however calls to his Assistance some of the dignify'd Clergy and Nobility on Solemn Occasions.

Forces.

On the Trial of the late *Czarowitz*, the *Czar Peter* his Father, Summon'd not only the Nobility and Clergy, but all the General and Field Officers of the Army, and Commanders of the Fleet, to hear the Process, and give their Opinions upon the Evidence produc'd against that Prince; but I defer speaking of their Civil Government and Administration to another time; and shall proceed next to enquire into the Forces and Revenues of the *Russian Empire*; from whence we shall be best able to judge of the Prerogatives, or rather Unbounded Power of this Monarch. As to the antient way of forming their Armies, by obliging the Nobility and Gentry to bring into the Field a certain number of Soldiers, in Proportion to the Value of the Lands they held of the Crown; this is in *Moscovy*, as well as other Countries, pretty much disused at present. They are a Militia that few Princes put any Confidence in: But in *Moscovy*, when the State hath occasion to raise new Troops, or recruit the old, the Senate, or Council of Regency at *Petersburg*, issue their Orders to the Governors of the respective Provinces, to levy a certain number of Men, according to the Extent of their Jurisdiction; and the Governor accordingly orders every forty or fifty Farms to raise a Man, and send him to the Rendezvous appoint-

ed;

ted ; whereby they do not raise less than twenty thousand Men every Year, without any Charge to the Government ; and when they have an extraordinary occasion for Men, these Levies are extended, even to the Families of the *Russian* Nobility ; who keeping numerous Retinues of Servants, have sometimes every fourth or fifth Servant drawn out to serve in the *Czar's* Troops ; and in much the same manner they used to raise Men for the Sea-Service. At first indeed they took none but Watermen off the great Rivers ; but as their Fleet of Men of War and Gallies is so much increas'd, they fetch them from any of the Provinces ; nor do they trust to the Governors to send up poor under-siz'd Men, but Officers are sent from Court to pick out the cleverest Fellows they can meet with, to put on Board the Fleet.

When any Fortification or Publick Building is to be erected, Canals dug, or Rivers made Navigable, the Workmen and Artificers of the Province only are summon'd in : but as the Works of *Petersburg* and some other Places required vast numbers of hands, Labourers were summon'd in from all parts of the Empire thither. They are usually furnish'd with travelling Charges and Subsistence for six Months ; after which they return home, and their Places are supply'd by others. It is not to be conceiv'd what numbers of *Russian* Peasants and Labourers have perish'd in these Services : In the Fortifications of *Tagan-Rock* on the *Black Sea* only, 'tis said, more than three hundred thousand Peasants perish'd by Hunger and Diseases, contracted by their lying in the Fens and Marshes about it. And in the Works of *Petersburgh* and *Cronstot*, above

Pioneers,
&c.

twice that number were swept away. I have said before, an hundred thousand were destroy'd there ; and tho' that be an incredible number, I have since been assur'd, that there were not less than a million of those unfortunate Wretches destroy'd in the Works of *Petersburg* and *Cronslot* only.

The Government are at very little Charges, either in maintaining their Armies or Workmen. Formerly every Farm in the Province where they quarter'd, was oblig'd to send in a certain quantity of Corn or Oatmeal ; but when the greatest part of the Army advanc'd to the Northern parts of the Empire, the Peasants were oblig'd to send in the Corn and Provisions requir'd ; as far as *Petersburg*, or wherever the Rendezvous of the Grand Army was ; which became a heavier Charge on the Husbandman, than the Tax itself ; whereupon great Complaints arising, Commissaries of the first quality were appointed to take care of the delivery of the Provisions, and to Asses the Country, to defray the Charges of it. But so many Frauds were committed in the Management of this Affair, and the Peasants so intolerably oppress'd, that many of them were oblig'd to run away and abandon the Villages ; which gave occasion to a most severe Scrutiny into the Conduct of the Ministry, during the *Czar's* Absence, in the Year 1715, when the greatest Officers of State underwent the Batogs, publicly Whipp'd, and stigmatiz'd like common Malefactors, some Imprison'd, and others banish'd into *Siberia* ; which did for a time, at least, prevent the Oppression of the poor Peasants. But to return to the *Russian* Land Forces, the Body of *Strelitzes*, or Guards, amounting to thirty or forty thousand Men,

Men, who were compos'd of the inferiour Gentry, or descended from younger Branches of great Families, having been concern'd in some Insurrections against the late *Czar*, he dispers'd them in the Frontier Garrisons, or sent them upon the most desperate Services in the late War; whereby they were most of them cut off, and the rest are now inroll'd among the other Troops at least; they have no distinguishing Character, above the other Regiments. In the room of these, the *Czar* introduc'd a new Body of Troops, exercis'd and disciplin'd after the Modern way, but by such insensible Degrees, that it was not taken notice of by the *Strelitzes* themselves, till it was too late to oppose it. The *Czar* rais'd at first only a Company of fifty Men, Cloathing and Exercising them after the *German* manner, by the assistance of some Foreign Officers he entertain'd in his Service; and to induce others to imitate him, he serv'd in this little Company himself, first as a Drummer, then Corporal, and afterwards Serjeant, till he gradually rose to be Captain, appearing at certain times at their Head, and Exercising them himself. The *Russians* imagin'd that he did this only for his Diversion, and the *Strelitzes* seem'd delighted with the Performance of their Exercises: whereupon this little Body was augmented from time to time, till it grew into a Batallion, and afterwards into several Regiments, and became a Match for the *Strelitzes*. They are now reckoned to be about ten thousand Men, and go under the Denomination of the *Preobanski* Guards; besides which, the *Moscovites* have now near an hundred thousand regular Troops, commanded either by Officers which have been invited into their Service

Foreign
Troops,
and Dis-
cipline
introdu-
ced.

from

from abroad, or such as have been taken out of this Nursery of the *Preobanski* Guards. These Forces are kept under the strictest Discipline, and all well cloath'd and arm'd, the Foot are not inferior to those of any Nation whatever; their Horse too consist of good Bodies of Men, but their Horses are small, and they cannot be brought to keep them so well as they ought. But there is no Power in *Europe* which maintains so great a Force with so little Charge, as may be gather'd from what has been observ'd already of the Peasants being oblig'd to supply the Army with Provisions, &c.

Artillery.

Before the late *Czar's* time the *Russians* had no proper Officers peculiar to the Artillery, and knew but little of carrying on a Siege; but the late *Czar* after his return from his Travels establish'd a regular Artillery, making it Regimental, like those of other Nations; having several of his own Subjects who serv'd as Captains and Officers in this Artillery, who are pretty good Gunners and Engineers: But the *Russian* Army, besides the regular Troops, is compos'd of *Cossacks*, *Calmucks* and other *Tartars*, who have thrown themselves under the Protection of this Crown. There are also the Black Regiments, as they are call'd, a sort of Militia, not much rely'd on. The *Cossacks*, as hath been observ'd already, inhabit the *Ukraina*, situate between the Rivers *Don* and *Nieper*, above the Cataracts of the last River, from whence they are call'd the *Zaporowski Cossacks*, *Za* signifying above, and *Porogi* a Waterfall. They were formerly subject to *Poland*, but not thinking themselves well us'd, they put themselves under the Protection of the *Turks*, and afterwards of the

Cossack Troops.

Moscovites :

Moscovites: *Hetman*, or General, having obtain'd advantageous Conditions for them, as that they should not be subject to any Duties, or Taxes, and be govern'd by their own Laws and Magistrates; and that no *Russians*, or Foreigners, should be obtruded upon them; and particularly, that they should be at Liberty to brew, or make their own Liquors without paying any Excise for Beer, Brandy, Mead, &c. In Consideration whereof, their General oblig'd himself to bring sixty thousand Horse into the Field whenever the *Czar* requir'd it. But the *Russians* I find have very much oppress'd this People, by Quartering their Armies upon them, and the like; insomuch, that on the Death of the late *Czar* they seem'd very ready to transferr their Allegiance to another Power; but the *Czarina* found means to pacify them, by promising a Restoration of their Rights and Privileges. The *Calmucks* *Calmucks.* also are oblig'd to raise a certain Number of Troops when the Government requires them: but commanded by their own Officers. They are a stout hardy Race, and want only Discipline to render them good Soldiers. These and the rest of the *Tartar* Troops usually compos'd the *Vanguard* of the Army, and make miserable Havock wherever they come: It was these Gentlemen who ravag'd *Livonia* in that dreadful manner during the late War.

I come now to enquire into the Condition of the Naval Forces of *Russia*; and as has been intimated already, before the last Reign they had scarce a Ship of their own, or a Man amongst them that knew any thing of Navigation; but the late *Czar* observing how absolutely necessary a Fleet was in his Wars with *Turky* and *Sweden*; and that other Nations

Naval
Forces.

onsufually made a Figure, and encreas'd in Wealth in Proportion to the Number of their Shipping, he invited Mathematicians and Artificers from all Countries to instruct his People in Navigation, and the Art of Ship Building; travelling also himself to *England* and *Holland* for this end, and obliging the Nobility and Gentry of *Russia* to send their Sons to all Maritime Countries in *Europe* to be instructed in Marine Affairs: Insomuch, that during the first War with *France*, there was not a Man of War, 'tis said, in the *English*, or *Dutch* Fleet, but had two or three Noble *Russians* on board; and many more were dispers'd in their Ports and Ship-Yards to learn the Trade of a Ship Carpenter, tho' none made so great proficiency as the *Czar* himself, being deservedly acknowledged the Master-Builder. The first Fleet he built consisted of forty or fifty Men of War, besides a great Number of Gallies at *Veronize*, which were design'd for the *Black Sea* after the taking of *Asoph*; and he was at a prodigious Expence of Men and Money in fortifying the Harbour of *Taganrock*, near the Mouth of the *Don*, for their Reception; but upon his being oblig'd to surrender *Asoph* to the *Turks*, this Fleet became of no Service, but lay and rotted in the River. This, however, did not discourage the *Czar*, but having fortified the Island of *Cronslot* in the Gulph of *Finland*, which open'd him a Communication with the *Baltick*, he proceeded with unwearied Diligence to build another Royal Navy, in which he had such Success, that he was able to engage the *Swedish* Fleet, and gave them several Defeats during his Reign. And at present the *Russians* can fit out above fifty Men of War of the Line in the *Baltick*, besides

Frigats,

Frigats, and several hundreds of Gallies; and some of their Men of War are ninety Gun Ships, as good as can be built, and supply'd with all manner of Necessaries : but tho' there be no want of Hands, they are very much at a loss for Sailors. They may force as many Country Men as they please into the Service; they can never work their Ships with these in an Eagagement. The same Misfortune happen'd to *France* in the late War ; they could build or buy as many; and as fine Ships as the *English* and *Dutch*, but they could never find Mariners to man them. Nor can any Nation ever become very formidable at Sea, till they obtain a good Foreign Trade, which alone can supply the Government with Sailors in any Exigency. There is one way, indeed, of procuring Foreign Mariners, and that is by advancing their Pay considerably beyond the Pay of other Powers ; but the *Russians* have been hitherto such ill Pay-Masters, and us'd the Foreigners they have invited over so very indifferently, that they are not likely to Man their Fleet this way in haste : And however, they may be a Match for the *Dane*, or *Swede*, they will not be able to look the *English*, or *Dutch*, in the Face at Sea till they have a better Foreign Trade.

From treating of the *Russian* Forces, I proceed to enquire into the Revenues of that Crown. A late Writer who spent above twenty Years in the Court of *Moscovy*, observes, that notwithstanding the great Expences the Czar was put to in raising and maintaining his Fleets and Armies in the last Wars, and carrying on so many vast Buildings and Fortifications, yet had he contracted no Debts, but always found fresh Supplies in his Dominion to

Revenues
of the
Empire:

Vol. VI. T support

support every Enterprize he went upon. As to the personal Service of the Subjects, and the Provisions they are oblig'd to supply both the Forces and Workmen with, which are engaged in publick Business: these were mention'd under the last Head. I come now to that part of the Revenue which consists of ready Money, and this is either constant or variable: The constant Revenue arises chiefly from the ordinary Taxes, which every *Russian* Peasant is oblig'd to pay for his House and Lands as follows:

	Copecks, or Pence.
To the War Office	25
To the Admiralty	10
For Recruits	6
Contribution Money for Horses kept for Travellers in the several Governments	11
Towards Brick-Kilns	3
Towards Lime-Kilns	3
For Materials for the Fortifications of <i>Petersburg</i>	4
Towards Post Horses	5
For the support of Pricausfes, or Offices	1
For extraordinary Expences	$\frac{1}{2}$
	<hr/>
	68 $\frac{1}{2}$

These Taxes are still collected in most Provinces, according to the Number of Houses and Farms that were found in each Village at a Visitation made in the Year 1679. But in consideration that the Number of Inhabitants were probably much encreas'd since that time, Commissaries were appointed, in the Year 1710, to make a particular Survey of the Number of Houses in each Village, with the Names

Names of the Masters, and their respective Families ; but this was put in Execution only in the Governments of *Moscow* and *Kiow*, and here the Nobility in a great measure render'd the Care of the Government ineffectual for the Wealth of most part of them consisting in Villages and Farms, they make it their Business to skreen the Peasants, as much as possible, from publick Taxes ; and if the Commissaries are not to be corrupted, which does not often happen, they will even order their Peasants Houses to be taken to pieces and carried off the Ground, which may be done in a few Hours, as they consist only of Timbers let into each other at the four Corners ; and tho' this Evasion be very well known, the Senate wink at it, and suffer this Tax to be collected according to the Estimate made in 1679. except in the two Governments above mention'd, where the Abuse is too gross to be pass'd by.

The Country People also are tax'd for their Bagnio's, Gardens, Bee-hives, Ponds, Mills, Fisheries, and other Possessions of the like nature. Their Mills pay a fourth part of the clear Profits they are suppos'd to make, which is exacted pretty strictly from the Mills which belong to the Clergy and Common People, but the Nobility find means to get themselves eas'd. The Bagnio's of the Peasants pay fifteen Pence *per Ann.* each : And as to their Gardens, Fisheries, &c. the Duty bears no Proportion to the present Value, but they pay according to what they were antiently valued at, whether they are run to decay, or improv'd.

In the new conquer'd Countries of *Livonia*, the District of *Dorpt* pays according to their Capitulation 25000 Rubels, *Riga* 600, *Oesel* 9000, and *Revel* 15000. Besides the ordi-

nary Taxes above mention'd, the Inhabitants of the great Towns pay a Ground Rent to the Government for their Houses, which are not built on White Ground, (or on such Lands as were antiently granted to great Men and exempted from Taxes) at the Rate of five Copecks a Year for every Fathom Square : And there is also a personal Tax laid on all those who exercise Trade and Handicrafts in Proportion to their supposed Gains : An ordinary Citizen pays a Rubel annually for his Bagnio : A Man of Wealth, or a Nobleman, three Rubels *per Ann.* and this is almost the only Duty the Nobility pay for their Houses, which are free from other Taxes.

The Clergy are not exempted from Taxes : Their Bishops are possess'd of great Estates, and are never spar'd in levying the publick Duties. In the beginning of the late War with *Sweden*, when the Government was reduc'd to some Distress, all the Church Lands were seiz'd, as well those belonging to the Bishops, as the Monasteries, and united to the Demesns of the Crown ; but in the Year 1711, the Bishops Lands were restor'd to them again, the Government being under some apprehension of an Insurrection : However, the Court, after the President of *France*, continue to demand a free Gift of the Clergy, besides their other Taxes, every three or four Years. Most of the largest Monasteries also procur'd part of their Lands to be restor'd ; but the *Czar* having laid his Hands on the Patriarchal Lands, entirely suppress'd that Dignity. The secular Clergy, as they are less respected than any Persons in *Russia*, so are they griev'd with severer Taxes than any other Subjects. The Minister of the Place pays six Copecks, or

Pence,

Pence, to the Government for every House in his Parish, tho' he sometimes raises not so much from them; he pays also a farther Tax on Account of his being a Priest, and another for every Child he hath; and as he hath more frequent occasion for the Bagnio than a common Man, being oblig'd to bath after conjugal Embraces before he can perform Divine Service, he pays a Rubel, or nine Shillings for the Bagnio, whereas a Farmer pays but fifteen Pence. The following State of the fix'd Revenue is given us by a late Writer, viz.

Constant
Revenue.

Governments	Towns	Burgher Houses	Peasant Houses	Rubels
Mosco	39	17301	236672	1149687
Petersburgh	28	8324	132652	408627
Kiow	56	1864	25816	114857
Archangel	20	4302	92298	374276
Riga	17	1771	42555	83039
Asoff	17	958	40700	154933
Siberia	30	3740	36154	222080
Tasan	54	2545	20571	344064
Nizegorod	10	3694	78562	259581
	271.	44499.	705980.	3111144.

And not withstanding *Asoph* hath been since restor'd to the *Turks*, the Villages laid to that Government are most of them still under the Dominion of *Russia*; and therefore the Revenues of them are not to be totally deducted in this Account. The reason of the Disproportion between the Number of Towns and the Burgher Houses in the Government of *Kiow* is, that this Government comprehends *Ukrania*, or the Country of the *Cossacks*, the Natives whereof are exmpt from Taxes, and therefore

Variable
Revenue.

therefore only the Number of *Russian Houses* is mention'd, which are liable to the publick Duties. It is much the same in the Government of *Asoph*, where the *Don Cossacks* inhabiting the Plains near the River *Don*, are also exempted from Taxes, as remaining an Out-guard against the *Tartars*. *Riga* and *Smolensko*, with the Places belong to them, are but one Government; and the reason they yield so little at present is, the Devastation which was made the last War in *Livonia*, of which *Riga* is here reckoned the Capital. The uncertain, or variable Revenue is, 1. that which is laid upon the Subject on some extraordinary Emergency: As in the Year 1711. When the War commenc'd with the *Turks*, &c. and these are not always alike, but suitable to the Occasion. In the Year 1716. the following extraordinary Duties were laid upon every House, whether those of Burghers, or Peasants, viz.

Copecks, or Pence.

For furnishing <i>Petersburg</i> and <i>Riga</i>	}	57
with Provisions		
For supplying the Admiralty at <i>Revel</i>	}	24 $\frac{3}{4}$
with Materials		
Every hundred Houses to furnish one	}	3
Day Labourer, for whose charges		
each House was rated at		
Five hundred Houses to find one	}	1
Carpenter, and pay towards		
maintaining him		
For Salaries of Landraths, or provincial Commissioners, Justices,	}	10
and other Civil Officers, pursuant		
to an Order of the 28th of <i>January</i> ,		
1715.		

95 $\frac{3}{4}$

2. The

2. The Coinage is another Article, which brings in a Revenue to the Crown. There are two Mints at *Mosco*; in one of which nothing is coin'd but Copper Money, at the Rate of two Pounds of Copper for a Rubel; in the other the Silver Species of all sizes are coin'd; and it is computed that both these Offices yield the *Czar* about two hundred thousand Rubels *per Ann.*

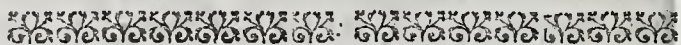
3. The Monopoly of strong Liquours brings in a considerable Revenue to the Crown, none are allow'd to sell Beer, Mead, or Spirits drawn from Corn but the *Czar's* Agents, unless in *Ukrania*, or *Livonia*; and as no Nation is more addicted to drinking than the *Russes*, this brings in a considerable Sum; especially, if it be consider'd that the Liquors vended in publick Houses are sold at twice the Price of the prime Cost. As the Soldiers and Labourers receive one half of their Pay in Provisions, and the other half in Money; it is observ'd, they lay out the latter immediately at the Ale-House, so that great part of the Money the Government issues for the Maintenance of the Troops, soon returns into the Treasury again. The Revenue arising by strong Liquors is usually computed at a Million of Rubels *per Ann.*

4. The Government Monopolize also the Trade of Tobacco, Potashes, Weedash, Tar, Isinglass, Salt and *Siberia* Goods, under which they include those which come through *Siberia* from *China*; but what Advantages they reap from these Monopolies is uncertain.

5. All other Goods in which the Subject is permitted to trade, pay Duty of Import, or Export: There is no Town in *Russia* where there is not a Tolboth, at which the Merchant enters

Customs.

enters his Goods, but they reckon only five general Custom-Houses, viz those of Archangel, Petersburg, Astracan, Kiow, and Mosco.



C H A P. XI.

Treats of the Civil Government, Laws, and Punishments of the Russians.

Civil Government

BOTH the Civil Government and the Levying the publick Taxes, are under the Direction of the Governours of the respective Provinces, as hath been intimated already; except such Causes as relate to the Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction, and the Civil Government of their Cities and great Towns; the latter of which, is at present administred by the principal Citizens and Townsmen, who are denominated Burgher-Masters. Before the Regulations made by the late Czar, says Mr. Perry, the Lives and Fortunes of the People seem'd to be absolutely at the Disposal of the Governors of the respective Provinces. They used each of them to have a Court in the City of Mosco, where they resided; consisting of a Bench of *Diacks* or Judges, whose Business it was to hear and determine Causes brought before them from inferiour Districts, within the Jurisdiction of each Governor, to sign Orders, as well relating to the Taxes, as the Military Service, and examine all Controversies relating to them; and to make a Report from time to time to their respective Lords, of such matters as came before them. The Governor seldom gave himself the trouble of examining any Cause himself, but de-

termin'd

termin'd according to the Representation his *Diacks* or Substitutes were pleas'd to make ; and from these Courts antiently there was no Appeal. Every Governor also had a Power of appointing the Governors of the Cities and Districts within his Province ; and each of these inferiour Governors had their *Diack* or Judge, with a Court in each City, call'd a *Precause* where he sat to administer Justice, and to take care of the *Czar's* Revenue. Every Man Pleaded his own Cause, without being ty'd up to any particular Form, and the *Diack* was sole Judge of the matter ; only in Capital Cases, a State of the Fact was to be transmitted to the Governor of the Province at *Mosco*, before the Offender was executed. The Governor had no stated Salary, but usually at the entrance on his Government, in which he remain'd three Years, unless remov'd for some notorious Mismanagements, the People presented him with three or four thousand Rubles, and his *Diacks* or Substitutes also had considerable Presents made them. But notwithstanding the Governors had no Salary, it is observ'd that they usually grew very rich, during their short Administration ; for says my Author, Mr. *Perry*, in every Cause, the first step is to bribe the Judge ; Money is known to be taken on both sides, and he who bribes highest, usually carries his Point. Another Perquisite belonging to the Governor was, the Profits arising from the Assessing and Collecting the Publick Taxes, which they us'd to bring up under a Guard to their Office at *Mosco*, where the Accounts of their Receipts and Disbursements were made up, and sent into the Office of the Great Treasury, which seldom examin'd very nicely into their Conduct ; but this

Branch of Business has been since put into the Hands of certain Merchants and Burger-Masters, whom the *Czar* presum'd wou'd do him more Justice in his Revenue. But the most Villainous way these Governors and their Substitutes had of raising Money, was the procuring People to be falsely accus'd, or encouraging frivolous Petitions against them, and then examining them with threats, ordering them to be Bastinado'd or Whipp'd almost to Death, if they would not buy off the Punishment with a swinging Fine: and I don't perceive they are in a much better Condition at this Day. The late *Czar* indeed gave Permission to any of his Subjects to Petition him directly, against the Oppressions and Injustice of his Officers and Magistrates; but then if the Suggestions in the Petition were held groundless or frivolous, the Petitioner was to suffer Death; as the Judge was on the other side, if they were found to be true. But the hazard being so very great, there have scarce any been found bold enough to Petition; they choose rather to acquiesce under an unjust Judgment.

Laws.

As to the Laws of *Moscow*, they are no other than their antient Customs, which the late *Czar* collected into a Body; I have not yet met with them, but it seems they are of very little use to the common People, who are all Slaves to their respective Lords, and can have no Properties but what they may be divested of, except the Merchants and Tradesmen in their Cities and great Towns, whose Fortunes however the Government can command.

Criminal
Prosecu-
tions.

Their Punishments for Criminal Offences seem to be Arbitrary: The Judge or Governor

nor may inflict Corporal Punishments, put the Offender to Death, or Imprison him as he sees fit ; of which a very late Writer hath given us some Instances : he was present he says, at the Great Court at *Mosco*, the *Dernier Resort*, where the *Vice Czar* sat in Person ; above two hundred Suitors or Petitioners appear'd before him, *Russians*, *Siberians*, *Astracanians*, *Cossacks*, *Calmucks*, and *Tartars*, some of them came with Complaints, and others to give in their Accounts ; of whom thirty were dispatch'd that morning. The Criminals he punish'd Arbitrarily, there being no Appeal from his Sentence : His severe and rigorous Executions had render'd him the Terror of the Country. Mercy he seem'd a Stranger to, and his very Speech and Looks were enough to make the People tremble. The *Czar* had a very great regard for him, because he was never mov'd by any Respect to Persons, or Bribes, in the Administration of Justice ; and he had caused some thousands of Robbers and Murderers to be put to Death ; which had not however prov'd a sufficient Remedy for those Crimes, our Author observes ; inasmuch as the *Russians* seem very indifferent as to Life or Death, and undergo Capital Punishments with an unparallel'd Indolence. Towards the latter end of his Administration, he at one time hang'd up two hundred Robbers upon Iron Hooks by the Ribs ; the dread of which, struck such a terror into their Brethren, that their number soon after diminish'd. The Prisons of *Mosco* are full of these Criminals, who subsist by begging, and some of them remain there all their Lives. When the Country is at any time infested by Robbers, the Governor usually orders some Offenders

to be executed for an Example ; and if their Magistrates were not very severe, it wou'd be impossible to live in any tolerable safety. The same Writer relates, that Princee *Menzikoff*, passing through a Town, was attack'd by the Inhabitants, who knew him very well : That several of his Retinue were kill'd, and he very narrowly escap'd by the swiftness of his Horse ; for which he afterwards caused all the Inhabitants, guilty or not guilty, promiscuously to be hang'd, not sparing the Minister of the Parish ; which shews, that whatever Laws they may have, their Grantees act as Arbitrarily as if they had none, and the Sovereign deals with them in the very same manner as they do by their Inferiours.

Punish-
ments.

Bataogs.

Of their Punishments, Mr. *Perry* gives us the following Account. The first he calls the *Bataogs* ; where the Offender is laid flat on his face, with his back bare, and his legs and arms extended, while two Persons whip his back with *Bataogs* or small Sticks, of the thickness of one's little finger ; one of them sitting on his feet, and the other at his head, who continue to beat him until the Person who directs the Punishment bids them hold their hands. The greatest Men, as well as the meanest Slaves, suffer this Punishment, which is sometimes inflicted with that severity, that the Person dies under it ; and yet the Power of inflicting it is lodg'd in every Person who hath power over another ; as in Noblemen, Gentlemen, Officers, Masters, &c. who on any real or pretended fault, without any Trial, Arbitrarily exercise this discipline on those under their Power ; and the Person punish'd is oblig'd to own himself in a fault, or be *Battoag'd* till he does. He must also fall down before

before his Lord with his face to the ground, and thank him that he hath been so merciful to inflict no more Stripes on him. It is not an uncommon thing for their Subjects or inferior Judges and Magistrates to undergo this Punishment, and yet be continued in their Post. It is not the Custom of *Russia* to turn their Officers out of Business for little Knavish Practices, but to inflict Corporal Punishment on them, or put them into some inferiour Employment.

The *Knout* is another kind of Punishment, but not inflicted without Trial as the last, unless by the Command of some great Man. The *Knout* is a thick hard Thong of Leather, about three Feet and half in length, fasten'd to a stick near a Yard long; for lesser Crimes the Offender is taken up on the back of another Man, and the Hangman gives him as many Strokes on the bare back, as the Judge directs; which are laid on with that force, that the Blood flies at every stroke; and their Executioners are such Artists at it, that they will lay them on by the side of each other, from the top of a Man's shoulders down to his middle.

The
Knout.

When the *Knout* is given for great Offences (which Punishment is also call'd the *Pine*) the Offender's hands are tied together behind his Body, and then he is drawn up by them with a Pully; a great Weight being at the same time hung at his feet, and being thus hoisted up, his shoulder bones are dislocated, and his arms come right over his head: while he is hanging in this Posture, the Executioner is order'd to give him a certain number of strokes with his Whip or *Knout*; which is usually executed very leasurely, while a *Subdi-*
ack,

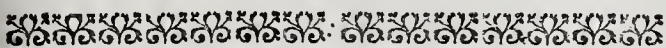
The *Pine.*

ack, or Clerk of the Court, examines him as to his Guilt, the number of his Accomplices, &c. after which he is taken down, his bones reduc'd, and he is remanded to Prison. But if he be charg'd with Treason, or some other Capital Crime, after the Offender is taken down, he is tied to a long Pole, as upo a Spit, and his raw back held to the fire, till the Examiners have extorted such a Confession from him as they deem sufficient, which the *Subdiack* or Clerk takes down in Writing. But if the Person will not accuse himself, and the Proof is not clear against him, and he can hold out against this variety of Tortures, which perhaps is inflicted two or three Weeks successively, he is sometimes acquitted; otherwise, after all his Sufferings he is put to Death.

Hereticks, or those who are deem'd such, are burnt to Death : of which a late Writer has given us an Instance in the Person of a *Russian* Priest, who publickly preach'd against the Worship of Pictures, and Invocation of Saints ; and on a publick Festival, hew'd to pieces with an Ax, the Pictures of the Blessed Virgin *Mary*, and St. *Alexius*, Painted upon Wood (for they suffer no Carv'd Work in their Temples) he shew'd great Resolution at the Stake, and preach'd to the People against Idolatry to the last moment.

Le Brun relates, that he saw a Woman who had murder'd her Husband at *Mosco*, set up to the neck in the ground, who died the next Day ; but that many of them will live several Days in this Condition, before they expire : in extrem cold Weather they cannot hold out long. A great Man formerly was seldom call'd to account for killing a Peasant, or any other Person under his Power ; and if it was taken
notice

notice of, a Fine to the Government was all the Punishment inflicted on him ; but they seem to be more tender of the Lives of the common People of late. There are Instances, where the Czar hath punish'd their Governors very severely, for oppressing his Subjects under their care, in the last Reign.



CHAPTER XII.

Treats of their Language, Characters, Learning, Chronology, Religion, Marriages, and Funerals.

THE Religion of the *Russians* being the same with that of the *Greeks*, already so largely treated of, except that they have some Superstitions peculiar to themselves ; I shall have but little to observe here upon that Head ; and therefore have brought their Language, Learning, Matrimonial, and Funeral Rites into the same Chapter, with which I shall conclude the State of *Russia*.

Their Language is a mixture of the *Sclavonian* and *Polish*. Their Characters they have from the *Greeks*, but something alter'd, and augmented the number of their Letters, being thirty eight. Their *Æra* was the Creation of the World ; which they reckon to be seven thousand, two hundred, and thirty four Years old, but have very little besides Tradition to found this Opinion upon. Their Year began the first of *September*, which they kept with great Solemnity ; admiring the Goodness of God, in creating the World in Autumn, when Corn, and all manner of Fruits were ripe ; not considering that when it is Autumn in this

Language

Characters.

Æra.

this part of the World, the Spring is coming on in the Southern Latitudes. The late *Czar* order'd that their Year shou'd begin the first of *January*, and that the Incarnation of our Saviour shou'd for the future, be their common *Era*, as in the rest of *Christendom*; and on the first of *January*, 1700. *O. S.* he order'd a general *Jubilee* to be proclaim'd, and to be solemniz'd a whole Week together with firing of Guns, Illumination, and other Expressions of Joy; forbidding the *Russians* under a certain Penalty to date the Year in their Writings from the Creation any longer. Their Stile is the same with ours, though why we do not both follow the *Roman* or *New Stile*, when we are sensible this is the more correct, is a little unaccountable; unless it be, that because we don't like the Principles of the *Roman Catholics*, we are afraid of countenancing them, by imitating their real Improvements.

Learning. Learning and the liberal Arts were, till very lately, perfect Strangers to *Russia*. No People ever took more pains to excell, than these did to remain, in Ignorance. They were jealous of every Foreigner who came amongst them, least he shou'd introduce something new; nor ever suffer'd a Subject to travel, for much the same reason. The late *Czar* observing how mean a figure his Country made, occasion'd by that profound Ignorance which reign'd in his Dominions, about the Year 1698, visited *England*, *Holland* and *Germany*, in order to be acquainted with the Customs of other Nations, and observe the Improvements which were made in Arts and Sciences. And when the *Czar* left *England*, he obtain'd leave of King *William* to take some young Mathematicians out of *Christ's Hospital*, together with

Mr

Mr. *Ferguson*, and other Men of skill, to instruct his People in that Science, and particularly in Navigation, Ship-building and Engineering. He agreed also with great numbers of Artificers in *England* and *Holland*, and carried them over to *Russia*; and soon after erected a large School at *Mosco*, in which young lads were taught Arithmetick at the *Czar's* charge, and allow'd a handsome subsistence; and out of these he chose the most ingenious, and sent them into foreign Countries, to qualify themselves for the Service of his Navy, &c. He employ'd also Mr. *Ferguson* to teach Astronomy, and other parts of the Mathematicks, to calculate the Eclipses, shew how they wou'd appear in *Moscovy*, &c. His Majesty also order'd Globes, Telescopes, and other mathematical Instruments, to be brought over, discoursing frequently with his Lords on the Motions of the heavenly Bodies, &c. Before this there never had been so much as a School to teach Arithmetick, nor did they know the use of Figures, but made use of Beads set upon Wires, with which they multiplied and divided in a tedious way, subject to very gross mistakes; and in many of the publick Offices observ'd the same method very lately. As to the Laity, they were perfectly ignorant of Letters. If a person cou'd read his Mother Tongue, he was reckon'd sufficiently qualify'd for Holy Orders. And yet it is not to be conceiv'd with what contempt they look'd upon other Nations. The late *Czar* set up Schools in all the Great Towns, and pass'd an Edict, that whoever did not learn to read and write, and get a tolerable Knowledge of the Latin Tongue, or some other foreign Language, shou'd be disabled to inherit his Father's Estate, if it exceeded five

hundred Rubels *per Ann.* And that no Man shou'd be permitted to officiate as a Priest, who did not understand Latin. He set up Printing-Houses also, and having procur'd several valuable Books to be translated out of foreign Languages, dispers'd them through his Dominions. Colleges were erected at *Mosco* and *Petersburg* for teaching the liberal Arts, Libraries compil'd, and a multitude of other Improvements made, which I have already mention'd in the Description of the City of *Petersburg*, and other parts of this work. Elegant Buildings, Painting, Statuary, Medals, Antiquities, and whatever might entertain the curious, has also been introduc'd and encourag'd in the last Reign and the present, that *Russia* in another Age, possibly may vye with the politest Nations of *Europe*.

Religion. As to their Religion, 'tis said Christianity was first introduc'd among them in the Reign of the Great Duke *Wolodimir*, who marrying the Daughter of *Basilius*, the *Grecian* Emperor, became her Convert about the Year 989, tho' according to the Tradition of the *Russians*, St. *Andrew* first planted the Gospel in *Moscovy*: but however that be, 'tis agreed that Paganism had again overspread the Face of the Country, and that Christianity did not revive till about the tenth Century. They had their Patriarch till the last Reign, like the other *Greek* Churches, who was vested almost with Sovereign Power, and might in some respects, be said to share the Empire with the *Czar*; for he was not only Supreme in all Ecclesiastical Causes, but had a Power of making Laws for the Reformation of Manners, and might punish the Offenders with Death, by his sole Authority. And on *Palm-Sunday* the *Czar* himself us'd to lead

lead the Horse he rode on to the great Church, carrying a Palm Branch in his Hand before him. But here, 'tis true, the Patriarch represented our Saviour riding to *Jerusalem*. But whether the late *Czar* thought these Honours and Privileges too great for a Subject; or was apprehensive a Patriarch might oppose the Reforms he intended in Church and State; or lastly, whether the vast Possessions annex'd to the Patriarchate were any Temptation to him, I shall not determine; but upon the Death of the last Patriarch, the *Czar* seiz'd his Revenues, and entirely suppress'd the Office, or rather transferr'd it to himself: for he engross'd all the Power of the Patriarch, read the Offices himself which the Patriarch us'd to perform on Solemn Occasions, and substituted the Archbishop of *Rezan* to execute such parts of the Patriarchal Function, as he cou'd not attend himself. This Alteration in their Ecclesiastical Polity, was not well relish'd by the *Russian* Clergy; and one of their Bishops having talk'd pretty freely upon the Power the *Czar* had assum'd, he order'd him to be degraded; but they represented that this could not be done, without a new Patriarch; whereupon the *Czar* created a Bishop after his own Heart, who made no scruple of degrading the offending Bishop, by taking the Mitre from his Head. It is observable however, that the late *Czar* did not take upon him to displace any Bishop by his absolute Power, but caus'd them to be degraded in form, by some other Bishop; which is a Circumstance that has not been always observ'd in some Christian Countries nearer home. But the Church of *Russia* hath still its Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops, like the rest of the *Greek* Churches, and their

Sees are generally well endow'd ; but their Secular Priests have neither Glebe or Tyths for their Maintenance, as I can learn, but depend chiefly on some Perquisites, which arise from the Offices they perform, and their Learning has hitherto been suitable to their Maintenance ; but by the late *Czar's* Regulations, none are to be admitted Priests, who do not understand Latin, as hath been observ'd already. They perform Divine Service in the same manner as hath been describ'd in speaking of the *Greek Church*, and have as little Preaching as their Brethren in *Turky*, except in *Petersburg*, and some of the principal Cities, during *Lent*, when there is now and then a Sermon.

Monasteries.

There are many Monasteries and Convents of Monks and Nuns in *Russia*, the one govern'd by their Priors, or Archimandrites ; and the other by their Igumenes, or Abbesses. They had large Possessions of Lands and Villages, and a multitude of Slaves belonging to them ; and were exceeding rich in Jewels, Pearls and Gold, till the late *Czar* seiz'd their Lands and rich Goods to maintain his Armies : and tho' he return'd some part of them again about ten Years afterwards, he annex'd a great part of their Lands to his own Demesns. And observing that the shutting up so many young People in Monasteries prevented the encrease of his Subjects ; he order'd that no Man under fifty Years of Age should be admitted into a Religious House. Their Nunneries remain in much the same state they did, whither Women retire frequently from their Husbands when they are ill us'd, and Daughters from their Parents ; and after they are shav'd, there is no reclaiming them. Prince

Gagarin,

Gagarin, it seems, would have compell'd his Daughter to marry a Courtier she did not like, whereupon she fled to a Monastery and had her Head shav'd; and notwithstanding his Quality, the Prince was oblig'd to submit to it. The Husbands also sometimes force their Wives into a Monastery, that they may be at Liberty to marry again: And Parents and Brothers send their Daughters and Sisters to Convents that they may not be oblig'd to raise Fortunes for them, as is frequently practis'd in *Roman Catholick* Countries. They perform their Devotions Night and Day, as in the *Latin* Convents; and their Fasts are as long and as severe as in the other *Grecian* Churches. The *Russians*, like other Christians of the *Greek* Communion, abhor all manner of carved Images, as expressly prohibited by the second Commandment; but no People deal more in Pictures: They have the Picture of God the Father, whom they draw like an Old Man, with grey Hairs and a long Beard. The Picture of our Saviour on the Cross, and in the Arms of the Blessed Virgin, whom they make an agreeable young Lady, *St. Andrew*, *St. Nicholas*, and *St. Sergius* are their Favourite Saints; and being painted on Boards, are hung or set on Shelves about their Rooms; to whom every Stranger who enters, first pays his Reverence before he addresses himself to the Family; and not a Woman but hath a Cross about her Neck. One who travell'd into *Russia*, observes, that tho' no People are more wantonly inclin'd than the *Russians*, they constantly take the Cross off their Mistresses Necks, and cover all the Pictures of their Saints before they dare be familiar with them; as if they thought them really animated, and dreaded their

Worship
of Saints.

their being Witnesses of those impure Enjoyments.

The *Russians* of Quality lay out immense Sums in adorning the Pictures of their Saints with Jewels; but the late *Czar* endeavour'd to lessen their Number, keeping only the Cross and the Picture of our Blessed Saviour in his own Palace, and his Courtiers many of them follow'd his Example: And when he observ'd that some of his Lords had fill'd the Cabbins of their Ships with Pictures of this kind; he told them, One was enough to Cross themselves before: and order'd all the rest to be remov'd out of the Ship.

At *Mosco* there is a Picture of the Virgin *Mary*, whose miraculous Power if any one had doubted some little time ago, he wou'd have run the hazard of being mobb'd: They believe it to have been drawn by *St. Luke*, and consecrated by the Virgin her self in these Words, *My Grace, and my Power be with this Picture*. They have peculiar tutelary Saints in every Family, and almost for every particular Business; and if a Man sees his Friend prosper, he immediately applies to him to lend him the Saint who has been so propitious to his Family; and will even advance a Sum of Money for the loan of it. Pilgrimages to the Bones, and Reliques of their Saints were discountenanc'd in the last Reign, and are now pretty much disus'd. The late *Czar* also endeavour'd to bring off his People from their rigorous Fasts, which he found had been very fatal to great Numbers of the labouring Men and Soldiers in his Service: For when his Army lay encamp'd in a plentiful Country, perhaps their *Lent* came on, and they starv'd with all Necessaries about them; a little after
they

they remov'd into a Desert, and then they would have eaten if they could have met with Provision; and what between their real Wants, and those of their own making, it is inconceivable what Numbers perish'd in the late War. Notwithstanding the *Czar* brought his People off from many other of their antient Customs, they seem'd pertinaciously to adhere to this of Fasting: A late Writer says, he was acquainted with some old *Russians* of Quality who were very ill, and yet durst not break the Rules prescrib'd them by their Religion in this particular, till they had first obtain'd a Dispensation from the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, which they sent for with the utmost Secresy, the *Czar* having prohibited all Applications to that Patriarch, being under an Apprehension that his Dominions would be drain'd of great Sums of Money by that means. And thus much may be sufficient to observe of the Religion of *Russia*, which differs but little from that of the other *Greek Churches*, of which I have spoken so largely already in treating of *Turkey* in *Europe*. I shall only add, that the present Government allow Liberty of Conscience to all Denominations of *Christians*; and will admit Foreigners to their Religious Worship, and to be buried in their Church-Yards; which are Favours they would have made some difficulty in granting before the Reformations made by the late *Czar*.

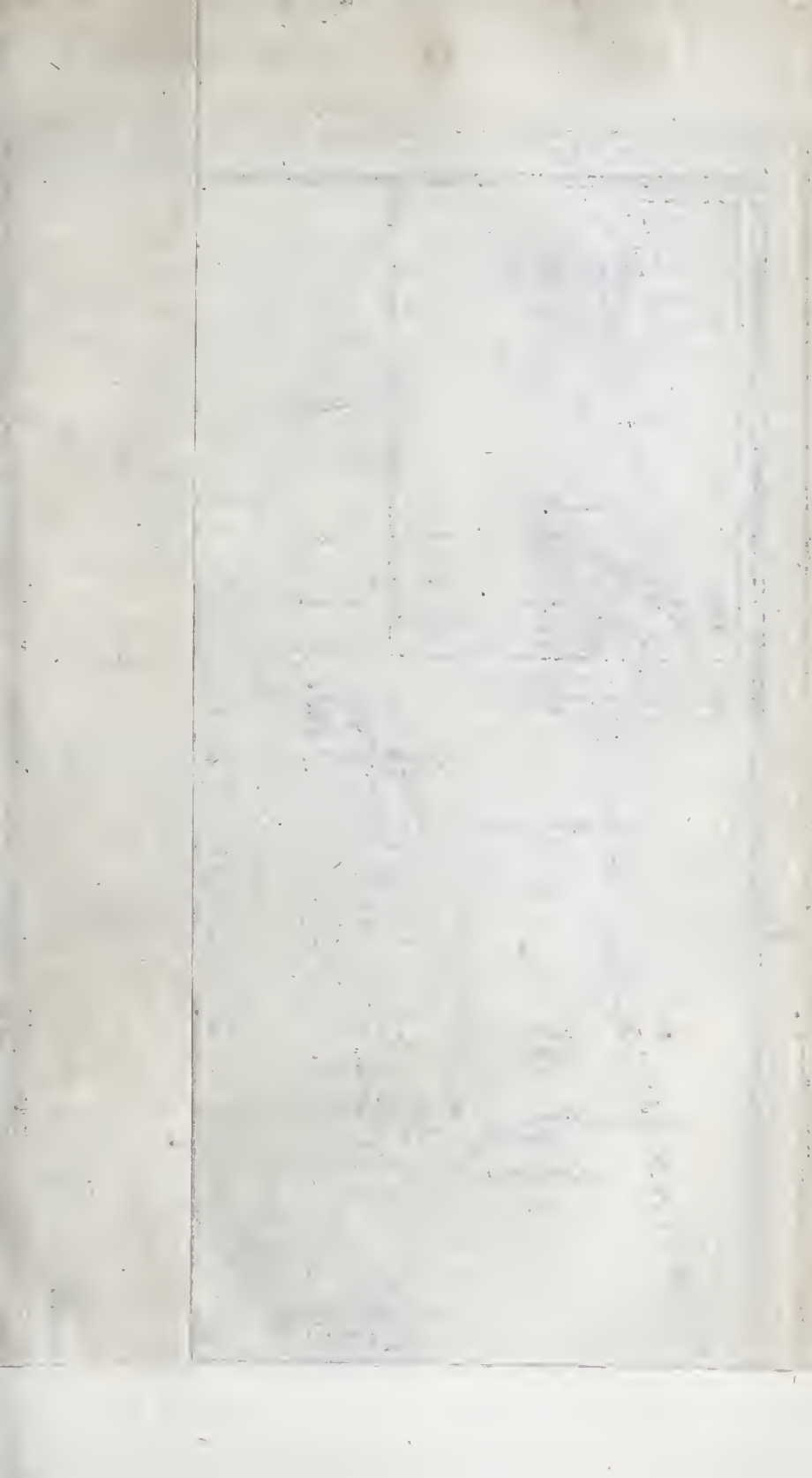
As to their Marriages and Funeral Rites, they are in a manner the same with those of the other *Grecian Churches* already describ'd; only it is observable, that whereas they formerly kept up their Wives and Daughters, and wou'd not let them be seen, the *Czar* has so discountenanc'd

Marriages
and
Funerals;

countenanc'd these blind Bargains, that a Gentleman has now the same Liberty of waiting on his Mistress, and courting her as in this part of the World; and the married Women meet at their Entertainments and Assemblies with the Men, as in other parts of *Europe*. That immoderate Mourning, and howling also, with which they us'd to attend their deceas'd Friends to the Grave, is now entirely laid aside by the better sort of People, and those who are under the Eye of the Court; and they conform themselves almost in every other respect, to the Customs of their politer Neighbours.

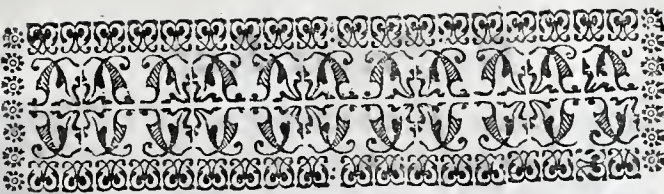
The Weights and Measures of *Russia*, which I had omitted, are as follows: *viz.* Forty Russian Pounds make a Pood, or thirty six Pounds *English*. An Arsheen, their common Measure is eight and twenty *English* Inches.







SWEDEN
and
NORWAY
Agreeable to Modern History.
By Herman Moll Geographer
1727



THE PRESENT STATE OF S W E D E N.

CHAP. I.

*Treats of the Situation and Extent of the Kingdom
of Sweden ; of the Air and Climate ; and of its
Seas, Lakes and Rivers.*



SWEDEN, part of the antient
Scandinavia, is bounded by
Norwegian Lapland towards
the North : By the Domini-
ons of *Moscovy* towards the
East : By the *Baltick Sea* to-
wards the South : and by
Denmark and *Norway* towards the West. Ex-
tending from the 56th to the 69th Degree of
North Latitude, and from the 10th to the
30th Degree of Longitude, reckoning from
the Meridian of *London*. But then within these
Bounds *Finland* is included, which I have al-
ready describ'd as a Province of *Moscovy*, it
having been entirely conquer'd by the late
Czar. I find however that the *Moscovites* in
pursuance of the late Treaty of Peace, have
restor'd five of the seven Provinces of *Finland*

Bounda-
ries and
Extent of
Sweden.

Finland,
most of it
restor'd to
the *Swedes*.

Ingria, Livonia, and most of their German Territories lost.

Mountains of Sweden.

Rivers.

Lakes.

Seas.

to the *Swedes* again, retaining only the Districts of *Kexholm* and *Carelia*, to the Northward of the River *Nye*; and of these *Sweden* hath made an absolute Cession to *Moscow*, as well as of the rest of the *Swedish* Dominions to the Southward of that River, namely, of *Ingria*, *Estonia* and *Livonia*, the richest and most commodious of all the *Swedish* Territories, and which that Crown would never have parted with, but upon the last necessity. Part of the *Swedish Pomerania* in *Germany*, with *Bremen* and *Verden*, have been also relinquish'd to other Powers by the *Swedes*; so that *Sweden* is now reduc'd almost within its antient Bounds, of which I shall take further notice, when I come to the Description of *Germany*.

The most considerable Mountains in this Country are the *Dofrine Hills*, being a long Chain of high rocky Clifts, which separate *Sweden* from *Norway*, and are almost continually cover'd with Snow. There are also a Multitude of other stony barren Mountains dispers'd over the whole Country, which give it but a disagreeable Aspect; and from these fall innumerable Rivers, or rather Torrents, not many of them navigable, on account of the Rocks and Cataracts which obstruct their Passage; they form however several considerable Lakes, the chief whereof are the *Wener* and the *Weter*, either of them near an hundred Miles in Length; and the *Meller*, on which *Stockholm* stands. The Seas of *Sweden* are the *Ore Sund* or *Sound*, which divides *Gothia* and *Schonen* from *Denmark*: The *Baltick* or *East Sea*, which flows between *Sweden* and *Germany*, and between *Sweden* and *Livonia*: The *Bothnick Bay* or *Bodenzee*, which separates *Sweden* from *Finland*: And the Gulph of *Fin-*

land

land, which divides *Finland* from *Livonia*; but of this the *Moscovite* has in a manner the Dominion at present, being possess'd of *Wybourg*, *Petersburg*, *Narva*, *Revel*, and indeed of almost all the other Ports upon it. *Monf. Motraye* observes of the *Baltick Sea* (of which all the rest are but Branches) that its Waters are not near so salt as those of the Ocean; which he ascribes to the many Rivers that fall into it, and the Currents sitting out of the *Baltick* into the Ocean, and the *Baltick* receiving no Waters from thence; consequently there is no Tide in the *East Sea*.

As to the Air and Seasons, these are much the same as in the Northern parts of *Moscow*, already describ'd. They have seven Months Winter in some parts, and in others near nine, when the Snow covers the Ground, and their Lakes, Seas, and Rivers, are frozen up. They travel also in Sledges over the Snow, as in other Northern Countries. In *Lapland* they have the Sun for two Months together in Summer time, without any intervening Night; and in the Winter, a Night proportionably long. At *Stockholm*, the capital City, the Sun is 18 Hours above the Horizon, at the Summer Solstice; and consequently they have but little Comfort in that Planet in the Depth of Winter: And as the Winter is extremely cold, their Summers, 'tis said, are proportionably warm; especially in the Valleys, which are surrounded by Woods and Mountains, where the Heat is reverberated from side to side for many Hours together, without Intermission. The Country is generally healthful, as may be discern'd from the hale Complexion, and robust Constitutions of the Natives.

Air and
Seasons.



C H A P. II.

Treats of the respective Provinces of Sweden, and of their chief Towns, Palaces, and publick Buildings.

Grand Divisions of Sweden.

1. Gothland.

THE six Grand Divisions of Sweden are
1. *Gothia*, or *Gothland*, bounded on the North by *Proper Sweden*: on the East and South by the *Baltick Sea*: and on the West by the *Sound*.

2. Sweden.

2. *Sweden*, properly so call'd, or *Old Sweden*, is bounded on the North by *Swedish Lapland*: on the East by the *Bothnick Bay*: on the South by *Gothland*: and on the West by the *Dofrine Hills*, which divide it from *Norway*.

3. Lapland.

3. *Swedish Lapland*, being bounded by *Wardhuys*, or the *Norwegian Lapland*, on the North: by *Moscovian Lapland* on the East: by *Sweden Proper* on the South: and by the *Mountains of Daarfield*, which divide it from *Norway*, on the West.

4. Finland.

4. *Finland*, bounded by *Kimi Lapmark* on the North: by *Moscovy* on the East: the *Gulph of Finland* on the South: and by the *Bothnick Gulph* towards the West,

5. Pomerania.

Bremen and Verden.

5. The *Swedish Dominions* in *Germany*, which were lately the *Upper Pomerania*, *Bremen* and *Verden*. But as these were entirely conquer'd by the *Danes* and their *Allies* in the late War, and *Sweden* hath by a Peace resign'd her Interest in *Bremen* and *Verden* to *King George*, and her Right in *Stetin*, &c. to the *King of Prussia*, there remains but little in the Possession of the *Swede* in *Germany*, except the City

City of *Stralsund*, and the Territory about it, lying over against the Isle of *Rugen*.

6. The Islands of *Sweden*, which are very numerous, and of these the Isles of *Gothland*, *Oeland*, *Aland*, *Huena*, *Rugen* and *Usedom* are the chief; as for the Islands of *Oesel* and *Dago*, and the other Islands on the Coast of *Livonia*, these were resign'd by *Sweden* to *Russia*, with *Livonia* it self, by the last Peace. *Gothia* is again subdivided into *East Gothland*, *West Gothland*, and *South Gothland*. In *East Gothland* are the Provinces of *East Gothland Proper*, and *Smaland*. *East Gothland Proper* is bounded by *Sudermania* on the North: by the *Baltick Sea* on the East: by *Smaland* on the South: and by the Lake of *Wetter* on the West.

Swedish Isles.

Subdivisions of Gothland.

East Gothland Proper.

Smaland is bounded by *East Gothland Proper* on the North: by the *Baltick* on the East: by the Province of *Bleking* on the South: and by *Halland* on the West.

Smaland.

In *West Gothland* are the Provinces of *West Gothland Proper*, *Wermeland*, and *Dalia*.

Subdivisions of

West Gothland, properly so call'd, is bounded by the Lake of *Wenner* towards the North: by the Lake of *Wetter* towards the East: by *Smaland* towards the South: and by the Sea of *Gothland* towards the West.

West Gothland.

West Gothland Proper.

Wermeland is bounded by the Province of *Dalecarlia* towards the North: by *Westmania* and *Nericia* towards the East: and by *Dalia* on the West and South.

Wermeland.

Dalia is bounded by *Wermeland* on the North and East: By the Lake of *Wenner* on the South: and by the Province of *Bahus* towards the West.

Dalia.

In *South Gothland* are the Provinces of *Schonen*, *Bleking*, and *Halland*. *Schonen* or *Scania* is

Subdivisions of South Gothland.

Schonen. is bounded by *Halland* on the North, and by the *Baltick Sea* on the East, South, and West.

Bleking is a narrow Tract of Land on the *Baltick Sea*, North-East of *Schonen*.

Halland is bounded by *West Gothland* towards the North and East, by *Schonen* on the South, and by the *Sound* towards the West.

The chief Towns of *Gothland*, are, 1. *Lunden*, or *Lund*; the Metropolis of *Schonen*, lying in 56 Degrees odd Minutes, North Latitude, and about thirty Miles to the Eastward of *Copenhagen*. It is an Episcopal See, a University, and the Residence of the Governor of the Province. The Town is however upon the decline, and hath nothing remarkable, except its Cathedral, dedicated to *St. Lawrence*; which Travellers tells us is a magnificent Building, with a very high Spire, which serves for a Sea-Mark to Mariners as they pass the *Sound*; from whence it is not above eight or

ten Miles distant. 2. *Malmo*, a Port Town, about twelve Miles to the Southward of *Lunden*.

3. *Landskroon*, a well fortify'd Place, and a good Harbour, sixteen Miles North-West of *Lunden*.

4. *Helsenburg*, a small Town upon the *Sound*, almost over against *Elfsnore*.

5. *Christianople*, a Port Town on the *Baltick*, the Capital of the Province of *Bleking*, and lies North-East of *Lunden*.

6. *Carelskroon*, where the Royal Navy is usually laid up, is built upon a little Island on the Coast of *Bleking*; being join'd to the Continent by a long Bridge.

7. *Calmar*, a Port Town, twenty Miles to the Northward of *Carelskroon*, over against the Island of *Oeland*, a Place of pretty good Trade. 8. *Westerwick*, a Port Town, fifty Miles to the Northward of *Calmar*.

9. *Jenköping*, situate at the West End of the Lake of

of *Wetter*. 10. *Halmstat*, the Capital of *Halmstat*.
land, a Port Town, about sixty Miles to the
Northward of *Lunden*. 11. *Gottenbourg*, the
Capital of *West Gothland*, is situate in 58 De-
grees odd Minutes, an hundred Miles and
upwards to the Northward of *Lunden*; is a well
fortify'd Town, and a good Harbour; and
being to the Northward of the *Sound*, is of
great consequence to *Sweden*, because a Trade
may be carried on from thence, without being
oblig'd to pay any Duties to *Denmark*. 12.
Scara, the antient Seat of the *Gothick* Kings,
and at present a Bishop's See, about eighty
Miles North-East of *Gottenbourg*. 13. *Lid-*
koping, situate on the South side of the Lake
Wenner. 14. *Marienstat*, to the Eastward of
it, upon the same Lake. 15. *Dalebourg*, the
Capital Town of *Dalia*, situate on the Lake
of *Wenner*, forty five Miles North of *Gotten-*
bourg. 16. *Carolstat*, the Capital of *Wermer-*
landia, situate on the North-East side of the
Lake *Wenner*. 17. *Linkoping*, an Inland Town,
the Capital of *East Gothland*, about thirty
Leagues to the Northward of *Calmar*. 18. *Su-*
derkoping, a handsome open Town, about twen-
ty Miles to the Eastward of *Linkoping*. 19.
Norkoping, situate on the Banks of a Lake be-
tween *Linkoping* and *Suderkoping*.

Scara.
Lidkoping.
Marienstat.
Dalebourg.
Carolstat.
Linkoping.
Suderkop-
ping.
Norko-
ping.

Sweden Proper, or *Old Sweden*, is divided in-
to eleven Parts, viz. 1. *Upland*. 2. *Suderman-*
nia. 3. *Westmania*. 4. *Nericia*. 5. *Gestricia*.
6. *Helsingia*. 7. *Dalecarlia*. 8. *Medelpadia*.
9. *Femptia*. 10. *Angermania*, and 11. *West*
Bothnia.

Sweden
Proper,
Subdivi-
ded into
eleven
Parts.

1. *Upland* is bounded by *Gestricia* on
the North; by the *Baltick Sea* on the East; by
Sudermania on the South, and *Westmania* on the
West.

2. *Sudermania* is bounded on the North by the *Lake Meller*, which divides it from *Upland*; by the *Baltick* on the East; by *East Gothland* on the South, and by *Nericia* on the West.

3. *Westmania*, bounded by *Dalecarlia* on the North; by *Uplandia* on the East; by *Nericia* on the South, and by *Wermeland* on the West.

4. *Nericia*, bounded by *Westmania* on the North; by *Sudermania* on the South-East, and by *Wermerland* towards the West.

5. *Gestricia*, is bounded by *Helsingia* on the North; by the *Bothnick Bay* towards the East; by *Upland* on the South, and *Dalecarlia* on the West.

6. *Helsingia* is bounded by *Madelpadia* towards the North; by the Bay of *Bothnia* towards the East; by *Gestricia* on the South, and by *Dalecarlia* on the West.

7. *Dalecarlia* is bounded by *Helsingia* and *Gestricia* towards the East; by *Wermerland* and *Westmania* towards the South, and by part of *Norway* on the West.

8. *Madelpadia*, bounded by *Femptia*, or *Fempterland* towards the North; by the *Bothnick Bay* towards the East; by *Helsingia* towards the South.

9. *Femptia*, or *Fempterland*, is bounded by *Norway* towards the North and West; by *Angermania* towards the East, and by *Dalecarlia* towards the South.

10. *Angermania*, bounded by *West Bothnia* towards the North; by the *Bothnick Bay* towards the East; by *Madelpadia* towards the South, and by *Fempta* towards the West.

11. *West Bothnia*, bounded by *Swedish Lapland* towards the North and West; by the Gulph of *Bothnia* towards the East, and by *Angermania* towards the South, and is call'd

West.

West Bothnia, as lying opposite to *East Bothnia*, on the other side the *Bothnick Bay* in *Finland*.

The chief Towns in *Proper Sweden* are, 1. *Stockholm*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, situate on the *Lake Meller*, near the *Baltick Sea*, in 59 Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, and seventeen of Longitude, reckoning from the Meridian of *London*. The access to it by Sea is extremely difficult, on account of the great Numbers of small Islands which lie before the entrance of the Harbour, and secure it from any Insults by Sea : It is neither Wall'd or fortify'd by Art ; nor is there much occasion for either : It is strong by Nature ; having a dangerous Sea on one side, and the *Mel-lern Lake* on the other, which render it an Island ; and on the Land side there are such Hills and Rocks, that there is no approaching it, but at certain Passes, which may be defended by a small Force against a numerous Army. The Harbour, when you have enter'd it, is as spacious and secure as most in *Europe*, and Ships of the greatest Burthen may ride close to the Keys ; but then it seems it is no less difficult to get out of the Harbour, than it is to go in ; and it is in a manner block'd up by the Ice four or five Months of the Year ; the different Winds also which are requisite to carry a Fleet out, demand a great deal of time, and there is no Tide to help them, so that an Enemy may destroy the whole Coast, before the *Swedes* can put to Sea ; to prevent which, *Charles XI.* chose to lay up most part of the Royal Navy in the Harbour of *Carelskroon*, as the *Swedes* do at this Day. The City extends over the whole Island of *Stockholm* ; being an *English* Mile and half in circumference, which is much

Chief
Towns in
Proper
Sweden,
Stockholm.

less however than either of its Suburbs: It is not suppos'd to contain more than thirty thousand Inhabitants; but to make amends for its smallness, says *Motraye*, it hath all that is requisite to render it in the Eyes of good Judges, one of the finest Cities in the North of *Europe*. Besides the Island of *Stockholm*, there are five other small Islands built upon, and join'd to it by Bridges, viz. *Riddersholm*, *Konningsholm*, *Hoglandsholm*, *Schipsholm*, and *Ladduggarstrand*, which are frequently look'd upon as part of the City. In the Island of *Stockholm* was the Citadel and Royal Palace (long since burnt down) the King's Chapel, and the magnificent Church of *St. Nicholas*, the Senate House, the Court of Chancery, the Criminal College, and a noble Library. In *Riddersholm*, or the *Knights Island*, is the Cloyster Church, as 'tis call'd, and several fine Gardens. *Hoglandsholm* is the quarter of the Mechanicks. In *Schipsholm* is the Court of Admiralty, the Arsenal and Magazines of Naval Stores. *Ladduggarstrand* is full of Pleasure Houses and Gardens; and here also is the King's Park, Menageries, &c. The South Suburb on the Continent is join'd to the City by a Bridge: Here is a noble Exchange, and the Merchants Houses, who had a pretty brisk Trade, till it was interrupted by the late Wars and heavy Impositions of the Government. The other Suburb lies North of the City, and is join'd to it by two Bridges. This Suburb, as well as part of the City, is in the Province of *Upland*; and the rest, with the Southern Suburb, in the Province of *Su-dermania*. A Stone Pillar is set up to mark the Boundaries; with the Arms of each Province in *Basso Relievo*; and in like manner
are

are the Boundaries of other Provinces describ'd in *Sweden*.

In the City are nine Churches, of which that of *St. Nicholas* is the largest, supported by Marble Pillars and cover'd with Copper; and in it are a great number of Tombs of different kinds of Marble, with the Arms and Busts of the Persons deceased. The Statue of *St. George* on Horseback trampling on a Dragon in this Church is much admir'd: It is the History of *St. George's* delivering *Cleodolinda*, Daughter of the King of *Lydia*, and twelve other devoted Virgins, from the Fury of the Dragon; where *Cleodolinda* is seen in a kneeling Posture, and Hands lifted up, returning Thanks to their Preserver. Over the Altar in this Church is a Cabinet finely gilded, and set open on *Sundays* and other Festivals, wherein is a Table of a Pyramidal Form, with five Partitions, or Shelves of Massy Silver; wherein are the following Histories in *Basso Relievo*: On the first is the Nativity of Christ: On the second his last Supper: On the third his Crucifixion: On the fourth his Burial: And on the fifth his Resurrection. And on the top is a little Statue of Silver (as all the rest are) about two Feet in height, which represents the Ascension. There are other little Silver Statues, or Images of the same height accompanying them, as that of *Moses* with the two Tables, *John* the Baptist with a Cross and Lamb, and the Evangelists with the Animals usually assign'd them by Statuaries and Painters, all of Massy Silver; weighing together about thirty thousand Ounces; but so exquisite is the Workmanship, that they were not purchased, 'tis said, under eighty thousand Crowns. On the right side

of the Altar upon the Wall, Paradise and Hell are painted in lively Colours; being a large Picture reaching from the Pavement to the Roof; and 'on the left side of the Altar is painted the Crucifixion of our Saviour with the two Thieves. This Church is very rich in Plate, and there is particularly a Chalice of Beaten Gold embellish'd with Jewels, which according to *Monf. Mottraye*, is not worth less than forty thousand Crowns. Of the other Churches I don't find any thing remarkable; but that they are generally cover'd with Copper, and have very lofty Spires, and instead of Bells to ring, they have musical Chimes in their Steeples, which play upon Festivals and other solemn Occasions. The Royal Palace hath been burnt down ever since the Reign of *Charles II.* and is not yet re-edified. The Palace where the States assemble is said to be a stately Pile, as is the Bank: These and the other Houses of the Nobility are built of Brick, or Stone, and being cover'd with Copper make a handsome Appearance. The Citizens Houses are of Brick, except in the Suburbs, where they are built of Wood, and frequently destroy'd by Fire; to prevent which the City is divided into twelve Wards, each of them having a Master and four Assistants, under whom the People range themselves in any such Calamity, and observe their Directions for extinguishing the Fire. *Stockholm* hath not been built much above three hundred Years: It was till then a barren Island, inhabited only by two or three Fishermen, when a Castle was built upon it to prevent the Incursions of the *Russians*; soon after the Court remov'd thither from *Upsal*, and it became the Metropolis of the

the Kingdom, and the greatest Town of Trade in *Sweden*, as it is at this Day.

2. The City of *Upsal* is situate in sixty Degrees North Latitude, in the middle of a large Plain, upon the River *Sala*, about forty Miles to the Northward of *Stockholm*; and was antiently the Capital City of the Kingdom. It is still an University, and the See of an Archbishop; being the only Archbishoprick in any *Lutheran* Country; here the Kings of *Sweden* were Crown'd and Interr'd before the Reformation. The Buildings are generally of Wood, except the Palace of the Archbishop, and some of the principal Citizens, which are built of Brick. Travellers usually take notice of the Cathedral, the Library and Physick Garden, as best worth Observation. The Cathedral is a fine piece of Gothick Architecture, seven hundred and forty Feet long, one hundred and forty Feet broad, and two hundred and thirty Feet high from the Pavement to the vaulted Roof, which is covered with Copper. The Marble Tombs of their antient Kings and Queens are seen here in sixteen Antique Chapels, in which there were as many Altars before the Reformation. The Library must be something extraordinary, being the Plunder of some of the best Libraries of *Germany*, of which their King *Gustains* made a Present to this University.

3. The City of *Enkoping* stands on the North side of the Lake of *Meller*, about forty Miles to the Westward of *Stockholm*. 4. *Nykopping*, the Capital of *Sudermania*, a pretty good Harbour on the *Baltick*, about fifty Miles to the Southward of *Stockholm*. 5. *Stregnes*, a Bishop's See, near the Lake of *Meller*, about thirty Miles North of *Nykopping*. 6. *Orebro*,

- Orebro.* 6. *Orebro*, the Capital of *Nericia*, situate between the Lakes of *Wener* and *Meller*. 7. *Orosio*, or *Westeras*, the chief Town of *Westmania*, a Bishop's See, situate on the North side of the Lake *Meller*, about thirty Miles South West of *Upsal*. 8. *Gevalia*, the Capital of *Gestricia*, situate on the *Bothnick Gulph*, fifty Miles to the Northward of *Upsal*. 9. *Hundswickwald.* *Hundswickwald*, the Capital of *Helsingia*, situate on the *Bothnick Gulph*, about fourscore Miles to the Northward of *Gevalia*. 10. *Indal.* *Indal*, the chief Town of *Madelpadia*, forty Miles North of *Hundswickwald*. 11. *Hernofand.* *Hernofand*, the chief Town of *Angermania*, situate on the Gulph of *Bothnia*, about twenty Leagues to the Northward of *Hundswickwald*. 12. *Uma.* *Uma* in *West Bothnia*, eighty Miles to the Northward of *Hernofand*. 13. *Torne.* *Torne*, the chief Town of *Bothnia*, situate at the bottom of the *Bothnick Bay*, on the Confines of *Lapland*. 14. *Lida.* *Lida*, the chief Town of *Jemptia*, tho' others say *Resundt* is the chief Town, a Fortrefs, which stands fourscore Miles West of *Hernofand*. And 15. *Hedmora.* *Hedmora*, the chief Town of *Dalecarlia*, sixty Miles North West of *Upsal*, tho' some late Writers assure us, that *Falun* in this Province is the largest City of *Sweden* next to *Stockholm*.

*Swedish
Lapland.*

I come next to the Province of *Lapland*, which lies to the Northward of *Proper Sweden*, usually subdivided into five Parts, (*viz.*) *Torne Lapmark*, *Kimi Lapmark*, *Lula Lapmark*, *Pitha Lapmark*, and *Uma Lapmark* : Which Subdivisions take their respective Names from certain Rivers, which rise in, or run through each Province into *Bothnia*, and afterwards discharge themselves into the *Bothnick Bay*; and it is observable, that there is a

Town

Town at the Mouth of every one of these Rivers of the same Name with the Province in *Lapland*, from whence it flows; and these Towns are generally deem'd to be in the Province of *Bothnia*, tho' as they lie upon the Borders of *Lapland*, they are taken sometimes to be in one and sometimes in the other. *Torne* and *Kima* particularly, the Reader will find at the bottom of the *Bothnick Bay*, just upon the Confines of the two Provinces of *Bothnia* and *Lapland*.

Swedish Lapland is a Province which extends so far to the North, that very few have travell'd over it. None, *Monf. Motraye* assures us, have had the Curiosity before him, to traverse it from side to side, so as to be able to give a tolerable account of the Country, or its Inhabitants. This Gentleman relates, that he set out from *Stockholm* in the Company of one of his *Swedish* Majesty's Secretaries in the Beginning of *April*, 1718, and arriv'd at *Uma* on the Borders of *Lapland* the sixth of *May* following. *Uma* stands on the North side of the River *Uma*, (which was at this time frozen) and is the Residence of the Governor of *West Bothnia*. This Town was twice burnt by the *Moscovites* in the late War, which was no difficult matter to effect, being all built of Wood, and scarce any Fortifications to defend it. On the 12th of *May* he prosecuted his Journey in a Sledge towards *Torne*, having obtain'd Recommendations from the Governor to the Magistrates of such places as lay in his Road, and Orders to furnish him with Guides and other Conveniencies. He pass'd through the Towns of *Pitha*, *Lulo*, *Rono*, and *Calis*, which were built of Wood, except the Churches of *Pitha*, and *Lulo*. All of them had their Parochial

Torne.

chial Priests, who entertain'd our Traveller very hospitably. He arriv'd at *Torne* the 19th of *May*, where he was oblig'd to wait till the Ice was gone, it now beginning to thaw, that he might continue his Journey up the River in a Boat, there being no Road beyond this Town, or any possibility of travelling further by Land at this Season. *Torne*, like *Uma*, and other Towns on the Coast of the *Bothnick Bay*, lay in Ruins then, having lately been destroy'd by the *Moscovites*, who visited them also a second time in the Year 1720. A Country one would think whose Poverty should have sufficiently secur'd from the Ravages of War, and was certainly never attempted by any other Nation but the *Russians*. The Town of *Torne* stands upon a little Island made by the River, which divides it self into two Streams just above, and unites again in one a little way below it, falling into the *Bothnick Gulph*, about six *English* Miles from the Town. The Trade of these People is in salted Salmon, or other Fish, dry'd without Salt, upon the Rocks in *Lapland*; and in the Skins of Rein Deer and other Animals, which they carry as far as *Stockholm*. The Banks of the River *Torne* are inhabited with Fishermen for an hundred Miles and upwards to the Northward of the Town, here being greater plenty of Fish than in any other Stream in the Country. There are some few ploughed Fields also to be seen upon the River, cultivated with a great deal of Labour; but these do not yield near Corn enough for the Inhabitants, who generally live upon Bread made of the White inward Bark of the Fir Tree, which being dry'd, they grind in Mills, and afterwards work up into a Paste, mixing it sometimes with a certain Herb, call'd

Myesslein,

Myeffein, which is found in great Plenty on the Banks of the River, or with Flower made of wild Oats, which grow in the Woods.

The Current of the River *Torne* is so rapid, that a Boat can make but little way against the Stream; and there are frequently such Cataracts and Water-falls in it, that the Watermen are forc'd to drag their Boats on Shore till they are pass'd them. There are several Iron and Copper Mines and Forges upon the River; most of them run to decay, or lately ruin'd by the *Moscovites*, and the Miners forc'd to turn Fishermen. The most considerable Mines of Copper and Iron are those in the Mountain of *Suapawara*, about two hundred Miles to the Northward of the Town of *Torne*, which have yielded four and twenty hundred Weight of Copper annually, besides great quantities of Iron. The Tents or Hutts of the *Laplanders* in the Neighbourhood of this Mountain are built with long Poles, set in a circular Form, bending inwards, towards the top, resembling a Sugar Loaf. They are cover'd with a thick coarse Stuff to keep out the Weather. The Fire-place is in the middle of the Hutt, round which they lie or sit cross-legg'd upon the Skins of their Rein-Deer, and there is an opening at the top to let out the Smoke. The Upper Garment, both of the Men and Women, is made of Skins with the Hair on, and fashioned like a Ploughman's Frock, girt about them with a broad Belt; they wear Breeches which reach down to their Ancles, and their Cap is made of a Young Fawn's Skin, and sits close to their Heads as a Scull-Cap, covering also their Necks and Shoulders. Their Shoes are made also of Skins, and without Heels, piqued and turn'd

Mines in
Lapland.

up at the Toes ; and the Finery of the Women consists in a kind of Pewter-Wire or Tinsel ; with which they Work the Bosoms of their Coats, their Girdles, and the Edges of their Caps. Neither Sex know what it is to wear Linnen ; but in the cold Season have a Waistcoat of Fawns Skins next them. Almost the only difference between the Dress of the Men and the Women is, that the Womens Coats are something longer than the Mens. A Purse hangs at their Girdles, with their Money, Rings, and Toys ; a Knife, and a Leather Bag, in which they put their Thread, which is made of the Nerves of Beasts. In Summer they wear a short Cap of Stuff or Skin, which does not come so low as their Ears ; but their Winters will not admit of this Airy Dress. Their Food is the dry'd Flesh of Rein-Deer, Cheese made of their Milk, or dry'd Fish, without Salt in any of them ; and the soure curdled Milk of their Does, or fair Water, is their usual Drink. As for Bread they know not what it is, nor have they any Word in their Language to express it. Both Men and Women chew Tobacco, which they get of the *Swedes*, but few smoak any. As to their Lodging, they have no other Bed or Covering but their Rein-Deer Skins ; between which they lie naked, without either Shift, Drawers, or Waistcoat. Their Arms are Bows and Arrows, which they manage with that dexterity, that they seldom miss their Mark. Their Riches consists in Flocks of Rein-Deer ; two hundred of which is deem'd a great Stock ; they drive them Northwards, as the Summer approaches ; these Creatures not being able to endure the Heat, and if they do not die in hot Weather, they are infected with Insects, which makes

Sores

Sores and Holes in their Skins ; after which they are good for little. When these *Laplanders* decamp, they pack up the Covering of their Tents and Baggage in Bundles of forty or fifty Pounds Weight ; which they fasten two and two together, and lay them cross the Rein Deer ; and upon these Packs they place their Children which are too young to march on Foot ; and thus they drive the loaden Deer before them, leaving the rest of the Herd to follow in the Rear. They halt sometimes in the Woods, or in the Vallies between the Rocks and Mountains as they pass along, but never pitch their Tents till they arrive at the place where they design to reside. As for the Wood of their Hutts, they leave it behind them ; there being no want of Wood for their purpose wherever they come. The feeding of their Herds of Rein Deer is their principal Employment ; besides which, they spend some time in Fishing, Hunting, and Shooting with their Bows and Arrows ; furnishing themselves thereby with Provisions, and Skins of Ermins, and other Animals, which they exchange with their Southern Neighbours for Necessaries. As to their Religion, they are usually denominated Christians ; and by the Innocence of their Lives, perhaps deserve to be rank'd in the first Class ; but seem to have very confus'd Notions of its Doctrines. *Motraye* says, he ask'd one of the most Intelligent amongst them, if he ever frequented any particular Church. To which he answer'd, He had formerly, when his Friend the Curate of *Juckacerwa* was alive ; but that he had of late Years encamp'd at too great a distance from any Churches to frequent them. Being ask'd if he knew what the Sacrament meant, he said it was a little round piece

of Bread as thin as Paper, which the Priest put into the Mouth of the Communicant (the *Lutherans* using Wafers) and after it made him drink a Spoonful of Wine ; and that he understood, the Body of Christ was conceal'd in the Bread, tho' it cou'd not be discern'd. But it being demanded if the *Laplanders* did not believe the Body of Christ to be risen again, and now alive ; after a considerable pause, he answer'd only, *God knows*. Another of them, of whom *Mottraye* demanded what God he worship'd ; answer'd, the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost : but being ask'd if these were not three Gods, he answer'd they were a Triangle ; by which he supposes the Priests had endeavour'd to illustrate the Mystery of the Trinity ; and these were the most satisfactory Answers he cou'd get from them, in relation to their Religion : only they acquainted him further, that every Year they paid to the Curate or Minister of the Parish they belong'd to, a certain quantity of dry'd Fish, Furrs, Skins, and Cheeses, in Proportion to their Stock, besides Fees for Christenings, Marriages, and Buryings. Our Traveller next enquir'd what Notion they had of the Witchcraft and Magick, with which some of their Countrymen were charg'd ; to which one of them answer'd, that the Professors of the Black Art were to be found most commonly in *Kimi Lapmark* and *Finland* ; that they convers'd with the Devil, and knew every thing that was done ; and if they were provoked by any one, or hir'd to do a Man Mischief, they cou'd inflict Diseases on him, his Wife, Children, or Cattle: and pretended to Instance in some whom they had struck blind, and others, whose Cattle were kill'd by their Sorcery :

adding,

Magick
of the
Laplan-
ders.

adding, that there were some of them who cou'd remove the Diseases that they themselves or others had inflicted, and had done so on their being treated with good Liquors, or handsomely presented by the Sufferers. They gave our Traveller also an Instance of a young wealthy *Laplander*, who upon his breaking his Word with a Girl he Courted, was struck blind by her Mother, who was skilful in the Black Art, and wou'd not restore him to his sight, till he agreed to marry her Daughter. And certain it is, that the poor ignorant *Laplanders* have a very great Veneration for these Pretenders to Magick, courting their Friendship, and by all imaginable means avoiding their Anger. *Motraye* relates, that he hir'd a Person to carry him to the Tent of one of these Conjurers, in the most Northerly Part of *Lapland*; having first given him all imaginable Assurances that he wou'd not betray him to the Government (the Laws against Witchcraft being as severe in *Sweden* as they are with us); he found the Wizard in a poor Hutt, and as wretched Circumstances as those People are usually represented to be in this part of the World: upon which he made the common Observation, that if these People had any Interest with the Devil, he wou'd surely reward them better. But to proceed, the Conjurer gave our Traveller his Hand, and order'd him to follow him to the top of a high Mountain, which lay to the Eastward of his Hutt, where he desir'd him to stand till he fetch'd his Drum and other Utensils, necessary to the acting his part. Soon after the Man return'd with his Drum, which he had hidden among the Shrubs and Stones, for fear of a discovery. It was of an Oval Form, and had but one Head;

Head, and there was fastned to it a Chain, with several Brass Rings. Before the Operation begun, the Wizard demanded if they had any Brandy, and half a Pint being presented to him, he immediately drank two thirds of it, then putting the Chain and Rings into the inside of his Drum, and turning the bottom upwards, he beat upon it with a forked piece of a Rein Deer's Horn (the Head was cover'd with a transparent Parchment, wretchedly painted with the Celestial Signs) he beat on it for a few Minutes, the Rings all the while jumping about, and making a jingling noise ; then he laid himself down flat on his Back, setting the Head of his Drum upon his bare Breast, and having shut his Eyes, seem'd to be in a Trance, not breathing for some time, and having fetch'd a deep Sigh, he gently rais'd the Drum above his Head, and look'd upon the Rings, which he could easily discern thro' the Parchment ; and having consider'd their Position and distance from the Celestial Figures, he fix'd his Eyes upon our Traveller, and declar'd that he would run a great hazard on the Water as he return'd in his Sledge, and again in going down the Cataracts or Water-falls in a Boat : That he would have another great Escape from Fire ; that his Life should be long and healthful, after he had overcome two great Fits of Illness ; both which would seize him within the space of two Years. And for the Interpreter who led *Motraye* to his Cell, he directed him to go out a Fishing the 20, 22, 24, 26, and 28th Days of that Month, and the 3, 6, 9, 12, 16, 20, 24, and 28th of the next, and he shou'd return home loaden with Fish ; and that the same Days of the Months of *September,*

ber, *October* and *November* would be equally fortunate to him in Hunting. And having finish'd his Predictions, *Motrave* demanded if he could tell whether he was a Batchelor, or a married Man; into what Countries he had travell'd besides *Torne Lapmark*, &c. but our Conjurer was too wise to guess at things that were pass'd, in which he knew his Ignorance might be too easily discover'd. *Motrave* afterwards made the poor Fellow a Present of half a Crown, with which he seem'd extremely satisfied, as the Guide was with the Predictions concerning his Success in Fishing and Hunting. So extremely credulous, our Traveller observes, these poor *Laplanders* are, and so prejudic'd in their Favour, that they implicitly follow their Directions. If these pretended Wizards tell them that on such a Day they shall take plenty of Fish, or Game, they will not fail to go out that Day; and if they mark another Day as unfortunate, they infallibly make it so, by not going abroad in quest of any thing. And as there is most commonly plenty of both in this Country, they usually verify the Prediction, by coming home loaded whenever they go out in search of Game.

And now our Traveller was advanc'd so far to the Northward that he could discern the Ocean, and consequently must have gotten into *Norwegian Lapland*; tho' it may be difficult to adjust the exact Boundaries: and it being pretty near the Summer Solstice, he had a perpetual Day, the Sun when lowest appearing as far above the Horizon as it does here three quarters of an Hour before Sun-set. These are the most remarkable Incidents which *Motrave* takes notice of in his Journey to *Swedish Lapland*, except it be that the *Laplanders*

landers busy themselves part of the Year in transporting the Copper and Iron Oar which is dug in the Mines of their Country, down to *Torne*, and other Towns on the Frontiers of *Bothnia* in their Sledges ; resorting annually to the Fairs which are held there in *January*. And this is the only time that the *Laplanders* frequent Churches, or have any Conversation with the *Swedish* Priests ; here they get their Children baptiz'd, solemnize their Marriages, receive the Sacrament, and pay their Dues to the Priest and to the Government ; and now they lay in a stock of Tobacco and other Necessaries, which the *Swedish* Merchants exchange with them for their Furs, &c. After which they return to their Mountains, leaving their Priest to preach to the Walls till the next Season ; for there is seldom more than two or three little Huts besides the Parsonage-House in any of their Villages ; but during the Fair their Congregations are pretty numerous. The *Laplanders*, I perceive, are a very Innocent People, scarce guilty of any of the Vices of their Politer Neighbours, tho' they will probably improve in time ; for the *Swedish* Merchants who resort to these Fairs frequently make them drunk with Brandy at those times, and then over-reach and cheat them of their Furs, which may be no difficult matter to do ; these People drinking nothing but Milk or Water all the rest of the Year ; and so far are they from thieving from one another, that if any of them find a stray Rein-Deer, they don't fail to send it home to the Owner : And if they agree to graze their Deer on this or that Mountain, and leave the other to their Neighbours, no Man ever encroaches upon another, or needs any Law to restrain him

him within the Bounds allotted him : But as the Country is but thinly peopled, and there is room enough for all, possibly they have little Temptation to break into one anothers Bounds. Murder is scarce ever heard of amongst them, tis said ; tho' *Motraye* gives us one Instance of a *Laplander* who was broke upon the Wheel for killing his Friend, when he was drunk, at one of their Fairs : which is the only time that the *Swedish* Governors have an Opportunity of exercising their Jurisdiction over these People, and perhaps there may be very little occasion for the Animadversion of their Governors at other times, when they are at a distance from strong Liquors. Without these the Common People amongst us would be abundantly more Innocent than we find them.

Motraye having finish'd his Travels thro' the *Swedish Lapland*, presents us with a Dissertation on the Magick and Witchcraft imputed to the Natives. Magick, says he, if there be any such Science, may be defin'd a Knowledge of the secret Effects of some natural Causes, and as such, we must not expect to find it amongst the *Laplanders*, who still labour under the grossest Ignorance : Indeed the Magick ascrib'd to these People has ever been look'd upon as Supernatural and Diabolical ; tho' it appears to be nothing more than a feign'd Enthusiastick Fit, accompanied with some strokes on their Magick Drum, and other trifling Ceremonies ; and he thinks it may be said of these Enchanters, as a famous Physician said of a Woman who pretended to be possess'd, *Much is owing to Nature, more to Design ; but nothing at all to the Devil*. For had the Devil that Fore-knowledge and Power

Remarks
on the
Magick
and
Witch-
craft of
the *Lap-
landers*.

which the Superstitious attribute to him, and could communicate it to his Vassals, we might expect to see the Order of Nature chang'd every Moment, and more frequent Revolutions in Kingdoms and private Families than we do at present. What could a Prince do better than to retain some of these Magicians in his Fleets and Armies to procure Intelligence, or furnish him with a Wind and annoy his Enemies in a hundred Instances? And in Fact, in those Ages when nothing would go down but Tales of Gyants and Knight Errantry, the Necromancer, or Wizard, was ever brought in to make part of the Entertainment; and there are those of the present Age who are highly delighted with Relations and Representations of this kind. As to our common People, they believe as firmly as the most credulous *Laplander*, that their pretended Wizards can give and remove Diseases, raise Tempests, and do abundance of Supernatural Feats, equal to any Miracles almost produc'd for the Evidence of our Religion. But to return to *Motraye*. Tho' many Princes and Ecclesiasticks, says he, have shewn themselves very zealous for the Extirpation of Witchcraft, and have upon incompetent Evidence condemn'd some poor Wretches to suffer for the pretended Crime; yet none could ever yet demonstrate they entertain'd any Commerce with the Devil. There have been those, he acknowledges, who would have given themselves to the Devil in the most solemn manner, in hopes of finding their Account in it, and have been convicted of the *Intention*; but that none of them ever succeeded in their Design. He Instances in Baron L—s, a *Danish* Officer, who was in Prison at *Stockholm*

holm on a Charge of having sold himself by Contract to the Devil, on Condition he would direct him how to procure a Sum of Money which he wanted ; and to that end, had with his own Blood sign'd a Bond, by which he and some others of his necessitous Companions transferr'd their Souls over to Satan after their Deaths, on Condition he would be Propitious to them in this particular. But neither the Baron, or any of his Friends finding any benefit by the Conveyance they had made of themselves to the Old Gentleman ; tho' they went in the Night to Gibbets and burying Places to invoke and treat with him on this Head : One of them observing that no Voice was heard, or Apparition approach'd to deliver them from their Distress, determin'd to do for himself what either the Devil would not, or could not do for him ; and accordingly soon after robb'd and murder'd a Man, for which he was apprehended and executed ; when he confess'd the Arts they had first us'd, as above, to supply their Necessities, and the Original Bond was found torn to pieces in Baron L——-s's Chamber.

In the Days of Ignorance and Superstition, says our Author, Men admir'd and fear'd every thing they were Strangers to, and all Effects, the Causes whereof they could not penetrate into, were deem'd Infernal and Supernatural : The *Magi* of old reserv'd to themselves the Right of explaining Eclipses, and the Motions of the Heavenly Bodies ; and were thereupon deem'd Superior to common Mortals. The first Discoverers, or Introducers of some particular Sciences were thought to have their Knowledge communicated to them by Dæmons, or Spirits ; and even the

Indian Juglers, whose Accomplishments were nothing more than a Slight of Hand, whereby they imposed upon our Sight, were thought to have dealt in the Black Art, till some of our own People learnt to out-do them in their own way. When the *Laplanders* were first seen at a distance, cloath'd from Head to Foot in Hairy Skins, it reviv'd the antiquated Fables of Fawns and Satyrs, especially as they seem'd to fly from those who approach'd them ; and might with some Propriety be said to have Wings upon their Feet : For with their Wooden Skidders, made in the Fashion of Scates, but longer, they skid over the Snow and Ice swifter than the fleetest Horse can run ; and to this Day they flee from Men they see in a strange Dress, as *Motraye* assures us they did from him, till his Guide, their Countryman, gave them a better Opinion of him than they usually have of Strangers. And how natural was it for People who first visited this Country, tho' but moderately tinctur'd with Superstition, to look upon the Natives as Creatures of another Species ; and with the Additions which their Fancies might create, as Inhabitants of another World, or at least conversant with those of the lower Regions ? tho' at this Day, upon a better Acquaintance with them, we find them to be Men like our selves, differing from us only in their Habits, and some other Circumstances occasion'd by their Situation, or the difference of the Climate.

Finland
and
Livonia.

4. From *Swedish Lapland* we descend to the Province of *Finland*, which lies to the Southward of it, but this hath been describ'd already, in treating of *Moscovy* ; the *Czar* having made a Conquest of it in the late War,
the

the greatest part of *Finland* however was restor'd to the *Swedes* by the last Treaty of Peace between the two Nations, as hath been observ'd above. As to *Carelia*, *Esthonia*, and *Livonia*, these were absolutely surrender'd by the *Swedes* to the *Russians* by the same Treaty, and are now become part of the *Moscovite* Dominions, and have been consider'd as such.

5. The *Swedish* Dominions in *Germany* consist now only of some part of the *Upper* or *Swedish Pomerania*, bounded by the *Baltick Sea* towards the North; by the *Lower*, or *Brandenburgh Pomerania* towards the East; by the *Marquissate* of *Brandenburg* towards the South, and by *Mecklenburgh* on the West: of which *Stralsund* is now the chief Town in the Possession of the *Swedes*; *Stetin* having been yielded to the King of *Prussia* by the last Treaty of Peace between *Sweden* and *Prussia*, about the same time that *Bremen* and *Verden* were confirm'd to King *George*, as Elector of *Hanover*, which he had before purchased of the *Dane*, who made a Conquest of those Provinces in the late War.

Swedish Pomerania.

Stralsund is situate on the Shores of the *Baltick Sea*, over against the Island of *Rugen*, in 54 Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, about fourscore Miles North-West of *Stetin*, and forty North-East of *Rostock*. The Strength of the place may easily be gather'd from that memorable Defence it made against the United Forces of the *Danes*, *Prussians*, *Poles*, and *Moscovites* for five Months and upwards, viz. from the 15th of *July*, to the 24th of *December* 1715, and surrender'd at last upon honourable Terms. It was defended indeed by the late King of *Sweden*, *Charles XII.* in Person, the bravest, if not the greatest General of the Age;

Stralsund.

Age ; who retir'd but a Day or two before the Town capitulated. But of *Pomerania* and the City of *Stralsund* in particular I shall give a further account when I come to Treat of *Germany*, of which *Pomerania* is a Part.

*Swedish
Islands.*

Aland.

6. The sixth and last grand Division of the *Swedish* Dominions are the Islands belonging to that Kingdom, which are all of them situate in the *Baltick*. And 1. *Aland* (about which lie a great Number of lesser Islands) is situate at the Mouth of the *Bothnick Bay*, in 60 Degrees of N. Latitude, almost in the mid way between *Stockholm* in *Old Sweden*, and *Abo* in *Finland*. I do not find any great Town upon the Islands of *Aland*, and all the Villages were reduc'd to Ashes by the *Russians* in the last War. A Congress was then held for some time in the little Island of *Loffo*, one of the Isles of *Aland*, for treating of a Peace between the Northern Powers ; but it broke off in the Year 1720, and came to nothing ; whereupon the *Czar* again harraßs'd the Coasts of *Sweden*, Burning their Towns and Villages, even in sight of *Stockholm*, and destroying most of their best Copper and Iron Works ; till he at length compelled the *Swedes* to confirm the Conquests he had made of *Carelia*, *Ingria*, *Esthonia*, and *Livonia*, the most desirable Part of the *Swedish* Dominions. 2. The Island of *Gothland*, situate about twenty Leagus to the Eastward of the Coast of *Gothland*, and sixty Leagues to the Westward of *Livonia*, being about thirty Leagues in length, from North to South, and twelve in breadth : The chief Town whereof is *Wisby* or *Visburg*, situate on the West side of the Island, in 57 Degrees odd Minutes ; it stands close to the Sea, from whence it rises agreeably, and extends itself to the top of a little Hill.

Gothland.

Wisby.

Hill. The Harbour is large, but the Pieres being destroy'd, it is almost choak'd up with Sand. There were formerly thirteen Churches and six Monasteries well endow'd in the Town : of wick there are now remaining entire, only the Church of *St. Mary* ; which since the Reformation hath lost its rich Plate and Ornaments antient Historians mention, as well as its Revenues. This City hath still several fine Fountains, which form'd as many Canals, and many large Cisterns are yet to be seen, some entire, and others in Ruins. Historians look upon this Place to be the first Colony of the *Goths*, who afterwards descended further Southwards in such Multitudes, and overspread the finest Countries in *Europe* and *Asia* ; and it is observ'd, that three of the Villages in this Island still retain the Name of their three great Deities, *Wodin*, *Thor*, and *Friga*. There are several good Ports, both on the East and West side of the Island, and the Country is agreeably diversified with Meadows, and Arable Lands. Their Fields are full of Cattle, and their Seas afford plenty of Fish. They dig also good Free Stone in the Island ; and a kind of grey Marble, not unlike *Granite* ; with all these Advantages, the Island hath been upon the decline for two hundred Years past.

3. The Island of *Oeland*, a long narrow Island, lying a little to the Eastward of the Continent of *Gothland*, extending about 25 Leagues from North to South, and being about four in breadth : The chief Town whereof is *Bornholm* or *Barkholm*, a Fortrefs situate on the West side of the Island, over against *Calmar*. Oxen, Horses, and Fallow Deer abound in this Island, which consists chiefly of Pasture Ground

4. *Huena* is a small Island in the *Sound*, over against

Oeland.

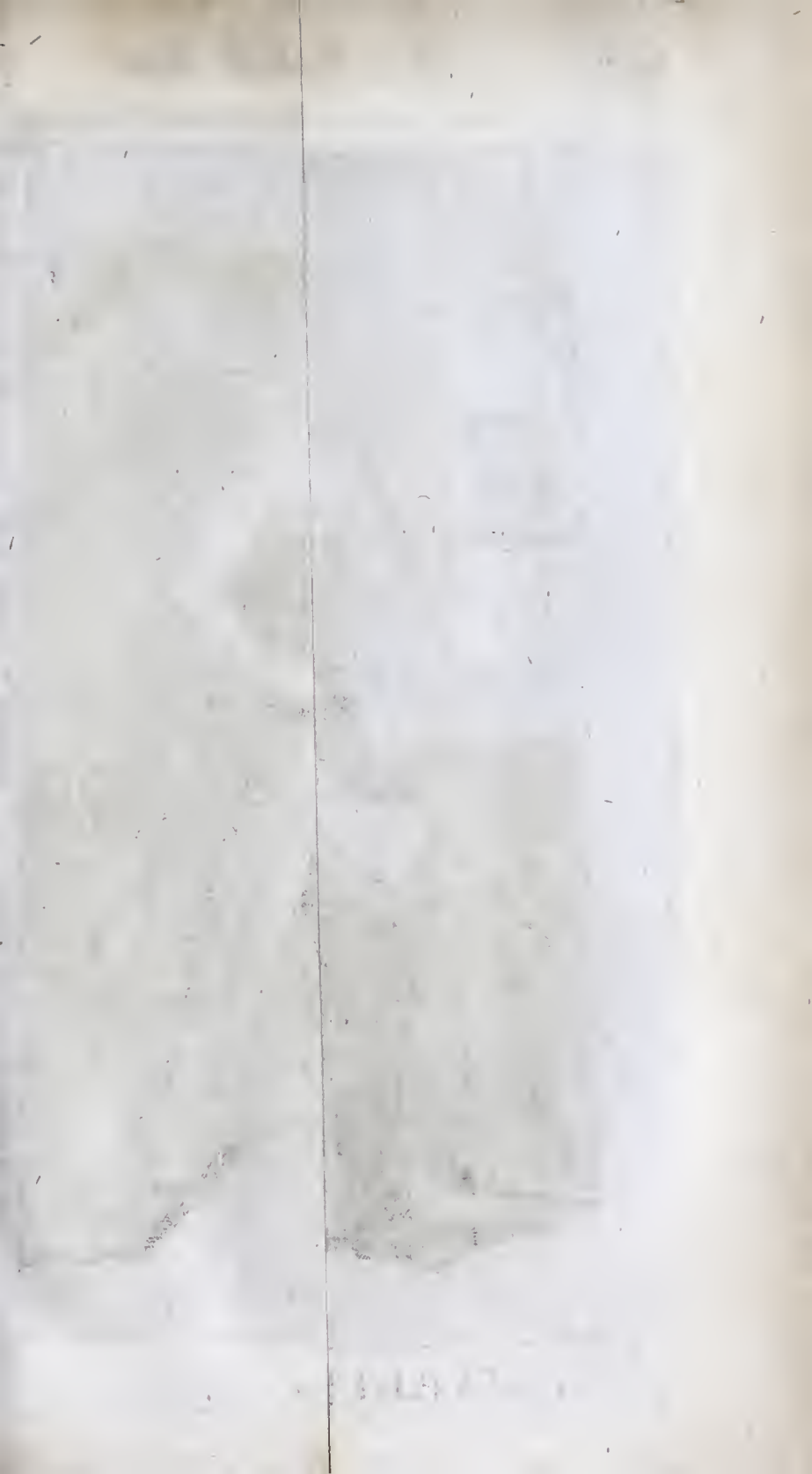
Huena.

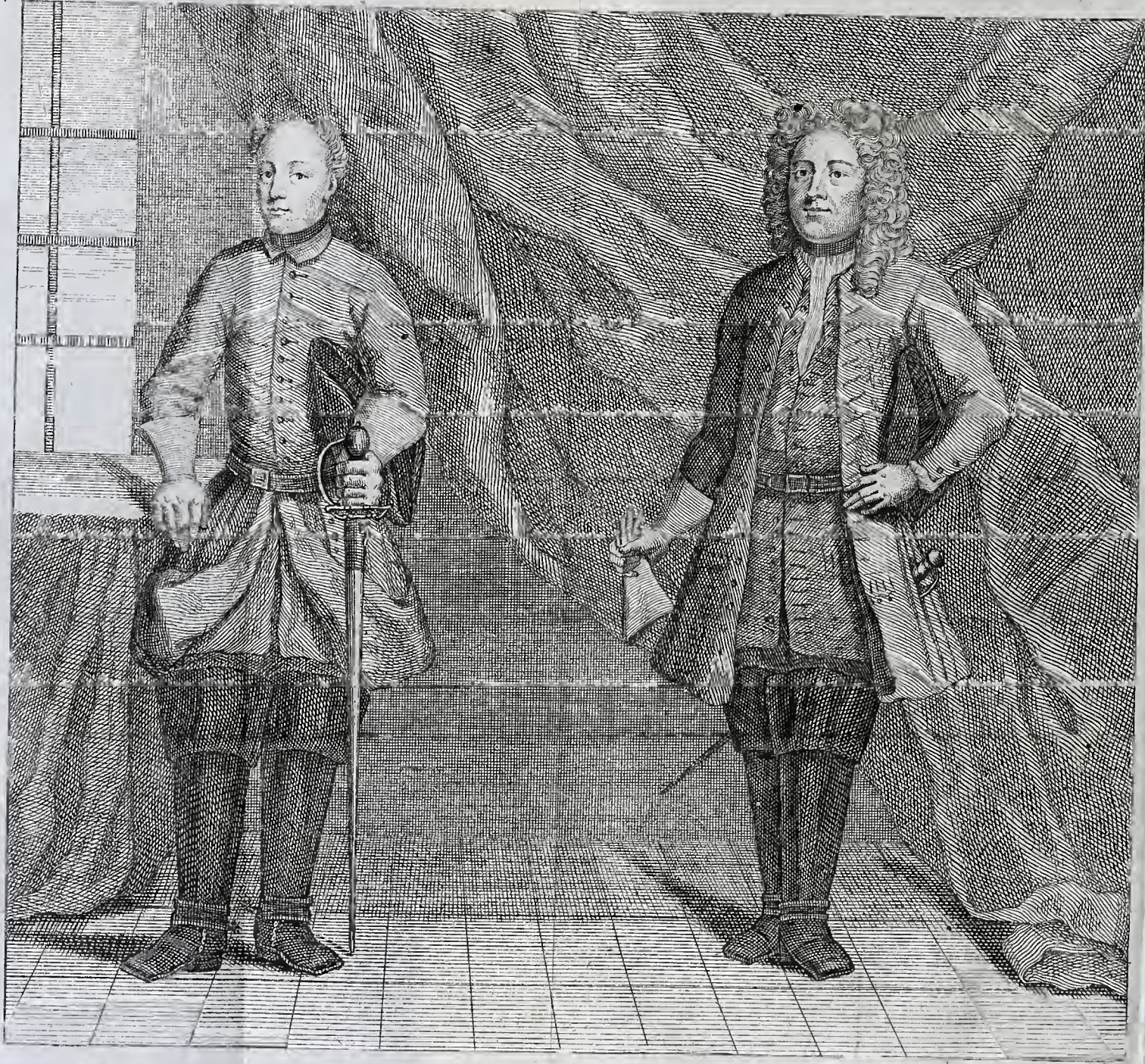
Carelscoon ;

Rugen.

Usedom
and Wol-
lin.

CarelsCroon : The chief Town whereof is *Urainberg*, built, 'tis said, by the King of *Denmark*, for the use of that great Mathematician *Tycho Brahe* ; for this, as well as the two former Islands, were subject to *Denmark*, about three or fourscore Years ago. 5. The Island of *Rugen*, situate over against *Stralsund*, in the *Upper Pomerania* ; from which it is separated by a very narrow Streight, not a League over. The Island is thirty Miles long, and as many broad, but so indented by Creeks and Bays of the Sea, that there is no part of it a League distant from the Coast. There is no Wall'd Town upon the Island, but some Forts, and several Villages : The chief whereof is *Bergen*, consisting of about four hundred Houses. It is a plentiful Country, abounding in Grain and Cattle; and was conquer'd by the *Dane* and his Confederates in the late Northern War, but restor'd to the *Swedes* again by the Peace, *Anno* 1720. And, 6. The Islands of *Usedom* and *Wollin*, which lie to the Southward of *Rugen* on the same Coast of *Pomerania*, just in the Mouth of the River *Oder* ; in which I do not find any great Towns, or any thing they are remarkable for, but their Situation, by which they command the Navigation of the *Oder*. The Passage between these two last Islands is narrow, and known by the Name of the *Swin Sound*. As to the Islands of *Dagoe* and *Osel* upon the Coast of *Livonia*, these were yielded to *Russia*, as hath been intimated already, by the last Peace. There are 'tis said, besides these, near six thousand lesser Islands on the Coast of *Sweden*.





CHARLES XII King of Sweden.

A Swedish Officer

C H A P. III.

*Treats of the Persons and Habits of the Swedes ;
their Genius and Temper, Diet, Exercises,
Roads, and way of Travelling.*

THE Swedes are of a good Stature, and robust Constitutions, qualify'd by Nature and Education for enduring Hardships and Fatigues. Their Complexions good, where they are not too much expos'd to the Weather ; and their Hair frequently inclin'd to yellow, like that of other Northern Nations. The Women are of a just Proportion, and have tolerable Features ; and those who are above the Vulgar, and not put to the common Drudgeries of Husbandry, &c. are generally fair ; for here the Peasants make their Females undergo at least a share of all laborious Employments. They go to Plow, Thrash their Corn, Row upon the Water, serve the Bricklayer, and carry Burthens, as the Men do with us. Their Cloathing in Winter, which lasts the better half of the Year in Sweden, is Furrs : instead of which, the common People who cannot afford them, make their Cloaths of Sheep Skins with the Wool on ; and are, as a Modern Writer observes, better provided with cloathing suitable to their Condition, than the common People of most other Countries ; tho' where Cloaths are wanting, it usually proves fatal to them in the severity of the Winter, occasioning the loss of their Limbs, and sometimes of their Lives. The usual Remedy to recover a Nose or a Limb, when it happens to be fro-

Persons
and Ha-
bits of
the
Swedes.

zen, is to rub the Part with Snow; if they come to the Fire (or into their Stoves, which are almost as common here as in *Russia*) they endanger the loss of it. As to the Fashion of their Cloaths, they are much the same with those of the *Germans*, and other *European Nations*, and therefore need not any particular Description; and like them in Summer-time, they wear such Cloth or Stuffs, as they can procure.

Genius
and Temper
of the
Swedes.

Their Genius and Temper is best describ'd by their own judicious *Puffendorff*. They have commonly, says that Gentleman, a sort of Gravity, not unbecoming, when it is temper'd by a Correspondence with other Nations. They have a natural itch to make a great Appearance, by which many of them ruin their Families. They are very well vers'd in the Arts of Dissimulation, and extremely jealous and distrustful. The *Swedes* in general, have a good Opinion of themselves, and of all that relates to them, and are very apt to condemn others. They are inclinable enough to learn the first Elements of any Art or Science, but few of them have the patience to sound things to the bottom, and perfect themselves in the Arts to which they apply themselves; and many of them are apt to think themselves Masters of a Science, before they are half instructed in it. As they have but little Inclination to Mechanick Trades, and even slight them, tis observ'd, that they are but ill qualify'd for Manufactures, especially such as require Ingenuity and Industry. The *Finlanders* are a rustick, stiff, opinionative People, but extremely laborious, and make very good Soldiers, when they are disciplin'd. Thus far *Puffendorff*. Another Writer observes, That

as

as the Air of *Sweden* is very healthful, and dry as well as sharp, and disposes the Natives to a vigorous Constitution, which is confirm'd by a hardy Education, coarse Fare, and hard Lodging ; they are qualify'd to endure whatever uneasy Circumstances may befall them. But on the other hand, as if the Severity of the Climate had in a manner cramp'd their Limbs, and indispos'd them for any great Degrees of Dexterity or Activity ; the same may also be observ'd of their Minds too, which are seldom found endu'd with an eminent share of Vivacity or Pregnancy of Wit, and yet by Industry, Experience and Travelling, some of them arrive at a mature and solid Judgment, being led by their Genius to serious Things ; and if they happen to have Patience to go through with the Studies they apply themselves to, become excellent, and merit the Title of Great and Able Men. But this seems not to be the Talent of that Nation, they are generally more apt to sit down with superficial Acquisitions, than to pursue their Studies to any Degree. This Disposition qualifies them rather for a life of labour and fatigue, than of Art and Curiosity, as is visible in every Class of Men amongst them. The Nobility, who apply themselves chiefly to a Military Life, are more famous for Courage, and bearing Hardships, than for Stratagems and Intrigues. Those who are employ'd in Civil Affairs, are laborious and indefatigable, but seldom raise their Speculations above what the necessity of their Employments require ; and their Abilities proceed not so much from Study as a long Experience. In point of Learning, they choose rather to transcribe from others, and make Collections, than to digest their own Thoughts. In matters of Trade, they will

rather do the Drudgery, than dive into the Mystery of Commerce or Manufactures, and in whatever requires Ingenuity or Dexterity ; therefore they are forc'd to be serv'd by Strangers. Their common Soldiers endure Cold, Hunger, and hard Marches to admiration, and are rather valuable upon account of their Courage and Obedience to Command, than for learning their Duty readily. Their Peasants also are tolerably laborious, when Necessity compells them, but have little regard to the Niceness of their Work and are, with difficulty persuaded to quit their old slow toilsome methods for any new Inventions, how easy and dexterous soever. Their Nobility and Gentry are generally Men of Courage and a graceful Deportment, and endeavour to make the best Appearance they possibly can, and therefore are more extravagant in the Number of their Retinue, the Magnificence of their Buildings, and the Richness of their Dress, than in plentiful Tables, and on other occasions which are less observ'd. The Gentry will not condescend to accept Employments in the Church, to Practise Law or Physick, or Exercise any Trade. The Clergy affect Gravity and long Beards ; and as they are given to Hospitality, are much respected by the common People. They are however but moderately learned, and very little vers'd in controversial Points ; for they admit none of a different Persuasion amongst them ; they allow neither Liberty of Conscience or Disputes about Religion. Their Citizens understand but little of Traffick, but are pretty much inclin'd to over-reach and impose upon those they deal with. The Peasants, tho' mighty submissive and respectful to their Superiours while

while they are sober, are mad and ungovernable when they get any Liquor in their Heads. They live in a wretched poor way, make their Cloaths, Shoes, Hats, and Instruments of Husbandry themselves, after a slovenly manner, having but little Money to purchase them. And of the whole Nation in general it may be said, according to this Author, that they are a People very religious in their way ; constant Frequenters of the Church ; eminently loyal and affected to Monarchy ; and Grave, even to Formality : apt to entertain Suspicions, and envy each other, as well as Strangers : more enclin'd to pilfering and secret Frauds than open Violence, such as breaking open Houses, and robbing on the Highway, which are Crimes rarely committed in this Country.

As to the Diet of People of Condition, it is much the same with our own ; except that every one of the Guests at an Entertainment, is oblig'd to take off a Bowl of Wine of a Quart, besides a great Quantity of other Liquor. But there being a very great Scarcity of Corn in *Finland* and the Northern part of *Swedeland*, the poor People live upon Bread made of the inward Bark of the Pine Tree, with Roots, Salt Fish, and Dry'd Flesh, as the *Laplancers* do ; and have but little strong Liquor to comfort their Hearts with in that cold Climate. Diet.

The Sports and Exercises peculiar to the *Swedes*, *Moscovites*, and other Northern Nations, are their running Races in Sledges, and sailing in Yatches upon the Ice ; in which they will turn and alter their Course, sailing with incredible Swiftnefs, much beyond any Vessel in the Water, and with much less Danger of oversetting. Exercises.

The

High-
ways and
Travel-
ling.

The Highways in *Sweden* are better than cou'd be imagin'd, considering the many Rocks and rugged Mountains in the Country. These are plain'd and made even by the Peasants, who receive their Orders from the Governors of the respective Provinces from time to time, and obey them punctually; insomuch that *Motraye* observes, there are scarce better Ways in any Country in *Europe*; nor is there a place where a Man travels with more Security, or less Charge; for Horses are hir'd for about a Penny a Mile; but then there is very poor Accommodation, it seems, both for Lodging and Diet upon the Road. The easiest and most expeditious way of Travelling is in Winter in their Sledges, especially in those parts of the Country which abound in Lakes and Rivers, for these are all frozen up, and consequently here they meet with no Obstacles in their way; and may more easily carry Provision with them in the Sledge, than they can on Horseback. And the Want of the Sun is so well supply'd by the Whiteness of the Snow, and the Clearness of their Heaven in Winter, that travelling by Night is as usual as in the Day, and Journeys begun as frequently in the Evening as in the Morning.



C H A P. IV.

Treats of the Nature of the Soil, and of their Plants and Animals.

The Face
of the
Country,

SWEDEN is of a vast Extent, says *Pufendorf*, but great part of it is nothing but Woods, Lakes and Pools. In several places

ces it presents us with prodigious Rocks, and Nature which makes Foreigners look upon it as a Culture of horrid disagreeable Country ; but if we the Soil, take a narrow View of it, we shall find it not altogether so shocking. In the Heart of the Country *Sweden* has a quite different Aspect than it hath about *Stockholm*, and among the Rocks by the Sea Side. There are a great many fertile pleasant Plains ; and their Woods and Forests are not only necessary to skreen them from the Winter's Cold, but very useful in preparing the Metals they dig out of their Mines. The Lakes also are well stor'd with Fish, and afford both Pleasure and Profit, and an easy Transportation for their Goods in Summer by Water ; and in Winter by the Sledge. Besides, says the same Writer, the incomparable Sweetness of their Summer, and the light Nights, which continue for near three Months together, sufficiently balance what others boast of in their Southern Climates. But does not Monsieur *Puffendorff* here seem to talk with the Partiality of a Native, and willingly pass over those other three Months in Winter, when it can scarce be said they have an Hour's good Day-light, and great part of the Nation for that time, are condemn'd to use Lamps and other artificial Lights? But so difficult is it for us to shake off that immoderate Fondness we have for our own Country, that the same great Author proceeds to acquaint us, that the Soil produces Corn enough for the Subsistence of the Inhabitants, the Plenty of one Province supplying the Scarcity of another ; except in some extraordinary barren Years. Whereas on the contrary, all Travellers assure us, that the *Finlanders*, and the Natives of the Northern Provin-

Provinces, are forc'd to live upon Bread made of the inward Bark of Trees, as hath been observ'd already, which it must be presum'd, they wou'd not do if there was plenty of Corn to be had. 'Tis true, that fine Corn Country of *Livonia* was under the Dominion of *Sweden* when *Puffendorff* wrote, and then this might be assert'd with more Colour ; but I take it, that *Livonia* only supply'd the Southern parts of *Sweden*, even then ; the other Provinces were either too remote, or the People not in a Condition to purchase the Corn brought from thence. But to proceed, the whole Year in *Sweden*, Travellers observe, is divided into two Seasons, viz. Winter and Summer. The Spring and Autumn are of so short Duration, that they scarce deserve any Consideration. It was the Remark of a *French* Ambassador, that there was in *Sweden* nine Months Winter, and all the rest was Summer ; for as the Winter commonly begins very soon, so the Summer immediaily succeeds it, and leaves no Space to be call'd Spring. And the Productions of the Earth are accordingly more speedy in their Growth than in other places. In the Beginning of the Summer the Fields are stor'd with Variety of Flowers : And Strawberries, Rasberries, and such kind of Fruits grow upon every Rock. Melons are brought to Perfection in their Gardens in dry Years. But Peaches, Apricots, and other Wall Fruits are exceeding scarce. As are also Apples, Pears and Plumbs, and those they have are not well tasted. Cherries they have of several Sorts, and some tolerably good ; and Plenty of all kinds of Roots, which are a great Support to the common People. The Gardens about *Stockholm*, Mr. *Mottraye* assures us are very fine. And notwithstanding

Fruits.

standing the Severity of the Winter, their Green-houses afford Orange, Fig, Myrtle, and other Trees, Plants and Flowers of the most tender Nature. Their Woods consist chiefly of Fir, Pines, Beech, Birch, Alder, Juniper and some Oak, particularly in the Province of *Bleking*; and the Trees grow in most places so thick, that they are not passable. The Trees are generally strait and tall and fit for Building. Firing also is extremely plentiful, except near the Mines where it hath been destroy'd, and these are supply'd from other parts by the Sledge or Water Carriage on their Lakes and Rivers.

Trees:

Their Cattle are but of a small size; but the Horses of *Finland* however are so tough and hardy, that they value them beyond the *German* Horses. Their Sheeps Wool is but coarse, and only fit to make Cloathing for the common People. Their Wild Beasts are Bears, Wolves, Elks, Deer, Foxes, Hares and Squirrels, of which the three last change their Colour to White in the Northern Provinces, 'tis said, in Winter time, as they do in *Moscow*. There are but few Parks, and those indifferently stock'd, the Charge of keeping the Deer being so great during their long Winters. The *Swedish* Hunting can hardly be call'd such, for they surround the Game, and shoot and murder it as they can, without giving any Law. There is very little riding in the Case, either here or in Germany.

Cattle and Wild Beasts.

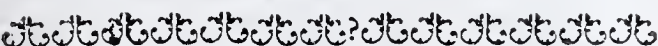
Tame and Wild Fowl are very plentiful and good. The *Reder*, a Fowl as big as an ordinary Turkey, is much admir'd; as is the *Orras*, about the Bigness of an Hen. Partridges abound here, and a Bird call'd a *Yerper*, not

Fowl.

unlike a Partridge. In Winter they take great Numbers of Thrushes and Blackbirds, and another beautiful Bird of the Bigness of a Feldfare, whose Feathers are tipp'd with Scarlet, suppos'd to come from *Lapland* in the hard Season. Pidgeons they have but few, the Northern Countries abounding so much in Eagles, Hawks and other Birds of Prey.

Fish.

Their Lakes and Rivers are well stor'd with Variety of good Fish, particularly Salmon, Pearch, Trouts, Tench, Pikes and many others, of which the *Streamling*, a Fish something less than a Pilchard, is very common. These are salted and barrel'd up, and sent to all parts of the Country. They salt up also their Salmon and large Pikes, which serve them for Food in the Winter when their Waters are frozen up, and there are no fresh Fish to be had. And if the Rivers are frozen to that Depth as Travellers relate, namely, an Ell or two thick, one would think the whole Breed should be destroy'd; but possibly Instinct may lead them in the Beginning of the Winter to their Lakes; some of which are an hundred and two hundred Fathoms deep, for their Preservation; as the feather'd Race fly to the Southward when the Winter approaches. But besides Fish for eating, they have Seals and some others in the *Bothnick Bay*, of which they make great Quantities of Train Oil.



C H A P. V.

Treats of their Mines, Manufactures, Trade and Commerce.

AS the principal part of the *Swedish* Mines and Manufactures consists in what they make of Copper and Iron, their Minerals and Manufactures naturally fall under the same Head. There is in *Sweden* also a Mine of Silver, the first landing Place whereof is an hundred and five Fathom deep, the Roof of which is as high as a Church, and supported by vast Arches of Oar ; from thence there is a descent by Ladders, or Baskets to the lowest Mine, being above forty Fathom more, where they now work. They have no Record so antient as the first discovery either of this, or their great Copper Mine, which seems to have been the Work of many Ages : The Oar of the Silver Mine seldom yields above four *per Cent.* and requires great Pains to refine it : They are also at the charge of a Water-Mill to drain the Mire, and make use of another to draw up the Oar. It produces about twenty thousand Crowns of fine Silver Yearly, of which the King hath the Pre-emption, paying one fourth less than the real Value. The great Copper Mine is eighty Fathom deep, and of a great Extent ; and yields annually the Value of two hundred thousand Pounds Sterling, of which the King hath a fourth Part in kind, and of the remainder he hath a Duty of twenty five *per Cent.* when it is exported unwrought. They have

also a great Number of Iron Mines and Forges, especially in the Mountainous part of the Country, where they have the Convenience of Water-falls to turn their Mills ; and from these, besides what serves for their own use, they export annually to the Value of three hundred thousand Pounds in Iron to Foreign Countries.

A Ship-
pund 300
Weight.

The latest Writer who treats of their Mines and Forges, is *Mottraye*, who travell'd through *Sweden* in the Years 1716 and 1718. He relates, that near the Town of *Arboga* in the Province of *Westmania*, there are several Forges, whose large Hammers and vast Bellows are put in Motion by Wheels, such as are us'd in Water-Mills ; and that two of these Forges annually Work four thousand Shippunds of Iron, every Shippund being three hundred Weight *English* : From hence he went to *Orebro*, the Capital of *Nericia*, which Province, as well as many other, hath the advantage of Wood for firing and rapid Torrents, that fall with Violence on the Wheels, which actuate the vast Bellows and Hammers of their large Forges : In one of these, call'd *Axberghammer*, are three Hammers, which annually Work two thousand Shippunds of the best Iron. And there is a Fair held every Year in *January* at *Orebro*, whither the Citizens of *Stockholm* and *Gottenburg* chiefly resort ; having the Privilege of buying up the Iron of the Bruckpatrons, or Masters of the Iron Works in this Province, and selling it to Foreigners, who have not the Privilege of buying it at the first Hand. Besides the great Forges which serve to hammer and frame the Iron into Barrs, there are frequently other lesser Hammers and Bellows,

which

which are put in Motion by the same Streams, and serve to form part of the Iron into Bayonets, Hammers, Hatchets, and other Implements.

From the Iron Mines our Author set out for *Salsberg*, a little Town, remarkable only for its Silver Mines near it. The most ancient of these Mines was ruin'd by the falling in of the Earth ; the Miners not having rais'd and dispos'd the Pillars properly to support it. The Mines they work in at present are call'd *Nygrafwar*, or the New Mines, which at first produc'd twenty thousand Pound Weight of neat Silver annually for fourscore Years successively, but of late have not produc'd above a thousand or twelve hundred Weight in any one Year. *Mons. Motraye* had the curiosity to descend into one of these Silver Mines, and take a view of it, and accordingly was let down in one of their Buckets to the first Floor, which is ninety Fathoms deep ; and afterwards into the second, which is twenty Fathoms lower ; from hence he went down into the third by Ladders, which is thirty five Fathoms more. His Guides lighted him and his Company down with Torches, where they drank the Miners Health in a Glass of Brandy, in Imitation of *Charles XI.* King of *Sweden*, who formerly had the Curiosity to take a view of the same Mine ; and having observ'd their Method of softning the Rocks in order to break the Oar, and their manner of working it : Our Traveller and his Company ascended again by the same way they came ; and he was shewn in an Office adjoining to the Works some pieces of Maiden Silver, which came pure out of the Mine without refining, and a kind of Cotton, or a softer Substance, which they

they pretended to be the *Asbestos*, or incum-
bustible Matter mention'd by the Antients,
of which they made the Linnen they wound
the Bodies of their deceased Friends in to
burn, whereby they preserv'd their Ashes
from mixing with those of the Funeral Pile.

The Copper Mines were next visited by
Motraye : They lie near the City of *Falun* in
the Province of *Dalecarlia*. He pass'd by se-
veral Furnaces continually burning to melt, or
cast the Metal, before he came to the Mine,
which hath no less than seventeen Openings,
all of them in *Stora Koparbeg*, or the Great
Copper Mountain, which is the Name of the
Mine. This artificial Abyss, he says, ap-
pears like Mount *Vesuvius*; and the Smoak
which issues from it, and from the Furnaces is
not less offensive. And this sulphurious
Smell causes frequent Sneezings in those who
are not us'd to it. The largest Opening is
two hundred and sixty Fathom in Circum-
ference, and seventy in depth to the first land-
ing Place, and as much more to the second :
Some of these Mines, or rather Openings, are
wrought, and others become useless by the
falling in of the Rocks and Earth, which
bury several of the Miners every Year, and al-
most every Month ; two of the Miners had
been crush'd to pieces and three more lam'd
but the Week before our Author arriv'd. He
visited however one of these Caverns, but
came out of it as Black as Soot, and almost
suffocated by the sulphurious Smell. This
Mine of *Koparberg*, he observes, is the most an-
tient, and the most considerable of any in
Europe. Some hold that they transported
Copper from hence into Foreign Parts before
the Birth of our Saviour ; but there are Manuscripts

scripts which speak of its flourishing State five hundred Years ago ; and their old Utenfils, which are made entirely of Brass, as Mattocks, Hatchets, Nails, &c. and the Arms of the same Metal, as Sabres, Ponyards and Knives, which are still preserv'd in the College of Antiquities, prove that this Metal was first in use here. The Mine yields annually six thousand Shippunds of Copper, and formerly yielded a great deal more ; but hath been damaged by the falling in of great quantities of Earth ; and the Master Miners complain that the Government instead of encouraging them by new Privileges have abridg'd the old, particularly the Power of protecting Criminals, and those who are prosecuted for Debt ; and the Liberty of selling their Brass to whom they please, or coining it, which they were indulg'd in formerly : On the contrary, new Taxes have been laid upon them, that they do not clear five and twenty *per Cent.* at present, their Charges deducted. As to the Mines in *Lapland* near the River *Torne*, these have been taken notice of already.

The principal Manufactures of *Sweden*, as appears at present, are those of Copper and Iron ; tho' formerly, it seems, either through Pride, or Slothfulness, they suffer'd their Oar to be carried into Foreign Countries and wrought abroad. The *Hans* Towns in the *Baltick* monopoliz'd this Branch of Trade till about the time of the Reformation. Very little Iron was made in *Sweden* till then ; but the Oar being carried to *Dantzick* and other parts of *Prussia*, was there forg'd into Barrs ; which is the Reason, according to a late Ingenious Writer, that the *English* Smiths still call Foreign Iron, *Dantzick*, or Spruce Iron. The

Manufactures.

Swedish

Swedish Nation owes its greatest Improvements in this Manufacture to those Ingenious Mechanicks who were driven out of the Low Countries by the Duke of *Alva*, at the beginning of the Reformation. These People not being allow'd the Liberty of their Religion at home, transported themselves to *Sweden* where they erected Forges, and other Conveniences for the making of Iron Guns, Wire, and all manner of Manufactures of Copper, Brass and Iron, which are still carried on chiefly by the Descendants of those People. The Exports from *Sweden*, besides their hard Ware are Pitch, Tar, Masts, Deals, and Wooden Ware; and they have endeavour'd to set up the Silk and Woollen Manufactures; in the latter of which they have in some measure succeeded. The *Swedes* however import from abroad, Cloth, Silks, Stuffs, Wine, Brandy, Sugar, Spices, Tobacco, Paper, Linnen, and other Merchandize, which usually balance their Exportations, and sometimes exceed them. Their Trade to *England* is held to be most beneficial to them, as it takes off their own Manufactures, and brings them in return near two thirds in Money. Their most disadvantageous Trade is that to *France*, which furnishes them only with Silks and other Trifles to supply their Vanity, and takes off but little of their native Commodities. The College, or Board of Trade, which consists of a Treasurer and four Counsellors, hath the Direction of their Commerce, and determines all Matters in Relation to it. The Bank of *Stockholm* is of great Advantage to the Trade, the Merchants usually making the Payments to each other by Bills drawn upon it, which saves them the Trouble of transporting

porting Money from Place to Place ; and this is no small Convenience in *Sweden*, where their Payments are frequently made in Copper Money, that require a Wheel-barrow, or a Cart to bring home an ordinary Sum. The Management of the Trade in *Sweden* hath ever in a great measure been in the Hands of Foreigners ; the Natives wanting either Capacity, or Application, but chiefly Stocks, to carry it on. Without Credit from abroad they are not able to keep their Iron Works going ; and therefore at the beginning of the Winter they make their Contracts with the *English* and other Foreigners, who thereupon advance them considerable Sums, and receive their Iron the Summer following. If the *Swedes* were not thus press'd by Necessity, Foreigners would scarce be permitted to live and trade amongst them ; and as it is, they treat them but very indifferently ; for the *Swedish* Burghers cannot with any Patience see Strangers thrive amongst them, especially the *English*, who are inclin'd to live Well and make a Figure abroad ; whereas the *Dutch* and other Nations, living in a more frugal Manner, and becoming Burghers frequently, are not so easily distinguish'd. The Exportations of the *English* to *Sweden*, as hath been intimated, scarce amount to a third part of what they import from thence, and consisted chiefly in Cloth, Stuffs, and other Woollen Manufactures, of which we formerly vend'd to the Value of fifty thousand Pounds, besides Lead, Tin, Pewter, Sugar, Fruits, Tobacco, Coals, Herrings from *Scotland*, and other Wares to the Value of an hundred thousand Pounds *per Ann.* but the making Cloth in *Sweden*, being of late Years encouraged by that Government,

and Workmen from *Germany*, *Scotland*, and even from *England* invited over, proves a great hindrance to the Sale of *English* Cloth, which is now charg'd also with such Duties there, that it is scarce worth the while to send any thither. We find the *Swedes*, as well as some other Nations, have follow'd the Example of the *English*; and establish'd an Act of Navigation, whereby Foreigners are prohibited to import any Goods but what are of the Product of their Country; but this indeed Affects the *Dutch* more than the *English*, who are the common Carriers of *Europe*, transporting the Effects of one Country to another, and having little or nothing of their own growth. But to proceed, could the *English* improve their Plantations in *America* so as to be supply'd with Naval Stores from thence: It is no matter how little they dealt with any of the Northern Powers, who at present receive little of us but ready Money, for what we import from thence; they either work their Woollen Cloths themselves, or purchase them at other Markets, where the Cloth indeed is not so good, but can be had cheaper than of us.



C H A P. VI.

Treats of the Forces of Sweden, the Strength of its Situation and Frontier Towns, and of the publick Revenues.

Lands
generally
held by
Military
Tenures.

THE antient Military Tenures are suppos'd to have been first establish'd by the *Swedes* and *Goths*. And certain it is, that their Nobility

Nobility and Gentry held their Lands of the Crown by Knights Service; that is, they were oblig'd to maintain and bring into the Field a Body of Horſe, in proportion to the Value of the Lands they held of the Crown: but wherever the *Feudal* Laws had their Riſe, no Inſtitution ſeems more generally to have prevail'd in the World than this, eſpecially among thoſe People whoſe Dominion was founded in Conqueſt; nor cou'd any thing be more rational, or tend more to the Security of their Conqueſts, than to parcel out the Country among the Officers of their Armies, who wou'd for their own Intereſt defend the Territories committed to them, and be always ready to aſſiſt the State with a Body of Troops maintain'd upon the Lands aſſign'd them, without any Charge to the Government. Such was originally the antient Conſtitution of almoſt every Northern Kingdom; and the Deſcendants of theſe Officers in our own Country, generally obtain'd the Name of Barons. Lands were alſo convey'd to inferiour Officers on the ſame Conditions, which Tenure was call'd Knights Service. But though this was a very Politick Contrivance for the ſecuring a new acquir'd Dominion, it ſeems in a Succeſſion of time, to have been attended with great Inconveniencies to the Sovereign: for the Barons forgetting their primitive Obligations to the Crown, frequently confederated together againſt it, and indeed ſet up a Dominion independent of it; as was the Caſe in *England*, when the Barons prevail'd againſt the King. In ſome Places they dethron'd their Princes, and render'd the Crown Eleſtive; and in others ſhar'd the Regal Authority with him, or put Conditions and Limi-

Forces of
Sweden.

tations on their Sovereign, by some stil'd the Original Contract, which they compell'd him to submit to when their Arms were prosperous. And this is the Reason we find so many different Forms of Government in *Europe*, tho' most of them had the same Original. As to the Militia of *Sweden*, it seems yet to be upon the same Foot it was originally, only with some few necessary Alterations. In former Ages, when Military Discipline was scarce any where observ'd, and there was no such thing as standing regular Troops kept up in any Kingdom, all People were upon the Level in this respect; and the Lords who held by Military Tenures, so as they brought able-body'd Men, and sizable Horses into the Field, sufficiently answered the Design of their Institution. But since most Nations have entertain'd standing Troops train'd up to War, the Militia upon the ancient Establishment have been look'd upon very little better than an armed Mob; as indeed they are with us; and the Reason of it is, because they are seldom or never exercis'd, and the Men and Horses are chang'd almost as often as they are muster'd: whereas in *Sweden* they have been oblig'd of late Years, constantly to send the same Men and Horses into the Field, as long as they are fit for Service, which has made their Militia equal to the best Troops in *Europe*; and were ours under the same Regulation, a standing Army would be perfectly unnecessary in *England*. But to proceed, no Levies cou'd have been made of Foot in *Sweden*, without the Consent of the Commons, or fourth Estate, till the Reign of *Charles XI.* in the obtaining of which there was usually found much Difficulty, and very great Delays, to the Prejudice of the publick Service

Service. Whereupon Commissioners were appointed by that Prince, to allot each Province their Proportion of Soldiers, according to the Number of Farms it contain'd, and every Farm of sixty or seventy Pounds a Year, was charg'd with one Foot Soldier, who receives from the Farmer his Diet, Lodging, and ordinary Cloaths, and about twenty Shillings a Year in Money. Or else a little Wooden House is built for him by the Farmer, who allows him Hay and Pasturage sufficient to keep a Cow, and ploughs and sows Land enough for him to supply him with Bread, which the married Soldiers usually accept of, instead of quartering on the Farmer; and when they are once listed in the King's Service, they cannot quit it on pain of Death. This Regulation was very burthensome to the Farmers at first, being oblig'd to advance ten, and sometimes twenty Pounds to a Man, to induce him to enter into the Service, and this they are oblig'd to repeat, whenever their Soldier dies or is disabled. Thus both the recruiting and maintaining the common Foot Soldiers is entirely at the Countries Charge. The Officers of Horse and Foot are maintain'd out of Lands lately resum'd and re-united to the Crown. Every Officer hath a House and a Parcel of Land assign'd him in that part of the Country where his Regiment is quarter'd, and the Rent of other Farms to the Value of his Pay, which they receive either in Money, Corn or other Goods, and are much better satisfied with it, than the Pay they us'd to receive from the Treasury, tho' it be not altogether so much, on account of their being oblig'd to attend and solicit so long for it. The Lands assign'd for the Payment of a Colonel of Foot, are

are about three hundred Pounds *per Ann*, and the rest of the Officers in Proportion. The Pay of all the Officers of one Regiment amounting to two thousand five hundred Pounds *per Ann*. and there were lately twenty eight Regiments of Foot upon this Establishment, besides fifteen Regiments of Horse, the Officers whereof were provided for after the same manner, out of the Rents of the Crown Lands. And that the Houses may not run to decay, or the Lands be beggar'd, they are annually visited by Commissioners appointed to survey them. And as every Officer upon his coming to such an Estate, is oblig'd to sign a particular of the Condition he finds it in, he cannot enter upon a superiour Command, till he hath made the former Estate as good as he found it. The Soldiery are subject to the Civil Magistrate while they remain in their Quarters, but when they are call'd out to actual Service, they are under Military Discipline : Nor is a private Soldier allow'd to lie out of his Quarters, or to be absent a Day from the Parish to which he belongs. The Officers also are oblig'd to reside constantly with their Regiments, unless they have a special License to be absent. Every Company assembles to perform their Exercises once a Month, and every Regiment once or twice a Year, when only they wear the King's Cloaths, which at other times are laid up in the Churches. The Names of every Military Officer are enter'd in the King's Books, with the time he came into the Service, and the Steps by which he hath been advanc'd; whereby his Majesty understands at one View the Merits and Services of all his Officers. The Guards and the Forces in *Pomerania* and *Bremen* are not upon this Foot, but are paid

in Money issued out of the Treasury, as with us. Before the last Reign, and the Loss of *Livonia* and *Bremen*, the Militia of *Sweden* were computed as follows, viz. 15 Regiments of Horse, amounting to 17000 Men; 28 Regiments of Foot, 35000 Men; one Regiment of Foot Guards, 2000 Men; the Forces of *Pomerania*, *Bremen* and *Verden*, six Regiments, 6000 Men. In all fifty Regiments, amounting to 60000 Men. But the late King of *Sweden*, *Charles XII.* at first in Defence of his Dominions against *Denmark*, *Poland* and *Moscovy*, by whom he was attack'd all at once in the Beginning of his Reign, and afterwards to revenge himself on that Confederacy, and to extend his Empire, rais'd more than twice that Number of Forces: And as the Kings of *Sweden* were become absolute, levy'd both Men and Money by such ways and means, and in such Proportion as he saw fit; in which War, tho' successful for the first twelve Years, he lost *Livonia*, and great part of his *German* Dominions, and so beggar'd his Country, that it must require an Age and more to restore it to that flourishing Condition he found it in at his Accession. The *Swedes* indeed have now recover'd their Liberties again, if not extended them beyond whatever they cou'd pretend to in any former Reign; and by their Instrument of Government, as'tis call'd, have restrain'd the Sovereign from raising Forces, or levying Money without Consent of the States assembled in their Diet. But to proceed. In the Establishment of the Forces in the Reign of *Charles XI.* there was besides the ordinary Rents belonging to every Regiment, about twenty Farms assign'd, to answer any extraordinary Expences, and provide a Sub-

sistance

stance for disabled or superannuated Officers. As to the common Soldiers, who were maim'd or grown old in the Service, there was one general Hospital, endow'd with a good Revenue ; besides which, every Officer, upon his Promotion, contributed a certain Sum to it, in Proportion to the Post conferr'd upon him. Their principal Magazines of Arms were at *Stockholm* and the Castle of *Jencopping*, towards the Confines of *Denmark*, which were supply'd from a considerable Iron Work at *Orebro* in *Naricia*, which is continually employ'd in forging of Arms. There are no fortify'd Places in the Heart of *Sweden*, except the Castle of *Jencopping*, where the Train of Artillery usually stands.

Their Rocks are a better Defence than Walls and Bastions : It is but guarding their Passes, and no Enemy can penetrate far into their Country. On the Frontiers towards *Norway* there are some little Forts ; and the Castle of *Bahus*, situate on a Rock in the middle of a River, a little above the City of *Gottenburgh*, at the entrance of the *Sound*, also is deem'd a strong Town. *Marstrand*, *Elisburgh*, *Warbourg*, *Halmstat*, *Landscroon*, and *Malmö*, which lie upon the Sea over against *Denmark*, are Places of Strength ; and *Carelsroon*, where the Royal Navy is laid up ; and *Calmar* upon the Eastern Coast, over against the Island of *Oeland*, are Fortify'd ; and there are two small Forts at the entrance of the Harbour of *Stockholm*. They are sufficiently cover'd by the Snowy Mountains of *Lapland* on the North : but as the *Moscovites* are now Masters of part of *Finland*, and have a Fleet superiour to the *Swedes*, their Country lies extremely expos'd on that side, as they will soon experience, if
 ever

ever they engage in a War with *Russia* again. On the other hand, shou'd *Moscovy* and *Sweden* Unite their Fleets, they will infallibly have the Dominion of the *Baltick*, and may bid defiance to any Maritime Power in *Europe*; at least in their own *Seas*; and if ever the Duke of *Holstein* shou'd happen to Succeed to the *Swedish* Crown, as it is extremely probable he will; an Alliance, if not a Union between those Powers, will certainly be the consequence of it.

As to the Royal Navy of *Sweden*, I look upon it to be inferiour to that of *Denmark*, as well as to that of *Moscovy* at this Day: but what gave the *Russians* the greatest advantage against the *Swedes* in the last War, was their Gallies, with which they Row'd up to the very further end of the *Bothnick Gulph*, that wou'd not admit of large Ships, ravaging all the *Swedish* Coasts on that side, as far as *Lapland*, without Opposition, destroy'd their Copper and Iron Works, and burnt their Towns, doing them an irreparable damage. The *Swedes*, it seem finding their error, have now begun to build Gallies; but as they are exceeding poor, being drain'd of all their Treasure, and their Foreign Trade in a manner ruin'd by the late War, they will not suddenly be a Match for the *Moscovites* in those Seas, who have not built less than three or four hundred Gallies already; nor can the Allies of *Sweden* give them much assistance in this Case; their Ships drawing too much Water, to venture higher than *Stockholm*.

The publick Revenues of *Sweden* arise either out of the Demesn Lands of the Crown, from the Customs, the Coin, Copper and Silver Mines, Tythes (which the Crown seiz'd

Swedish
Navy.

Revenues
of *Sweden*.

at the Reformation, and were before appropriated to Bishopricks or Monasteries) Poll-Money, Fines, Stamp'd Paper, and other Duties, payable on Proceedings at Law; all which are computed to amount to a Million of Pounds Sterling; whereof the Customs produce about a fourth Part, and the Demefn Lands a Third. The Poll-Tax was levy'd only upon the Peasants; every one of whom above sixteen Years of Age, and under sixty, paid twelve-pence a Year; but in the Distress the Kingdom of *Sweden* was reduc'd to in the late War, no means were left unattempted for raising Money. It was part of the Charge against Baron *Gortz*, the Prime Minister, that he had drawn up a Placart; whereby the Subject was oblig'd to pay, besides all other Taxes, the sixth Penny of all their Effects; in which the Furniture of their Houses was not exempted, and were oblig'd to declare the full value of their Substance upon Oath, and to forfeit all they were worth, in case of any concealment.

But the greatest Piece of Oppression actually put in Practice in the last Reign, was the compelling the People to bring in all their Silver and Brass Money, and exchange it with the Government for *Muntetkins*, a Copper Coin, of very little intrinsick worth, which the Government were pleas'd to put what value they pleas'd upon; and thus a piece of Copper, not worth a half-penny, was to pass in Payment for half a Crown or more, and other Pieces in Proportion; nor did this Placart extend only to the Natives, but Foreigners suffer'd extremely by it, being oblig'd to take this Coin at this imaginary value for their Merchandize. At other times, the late Government

Government impos'd their Notes upon the People, which they were forc'd to take as Specie, tho' no Funds were assign'd for the Discharge of them; and in short, the Subjects cou'd scarce be said to have any Property left. It is no wonder therefore that they sacrific'd Baron *Gortz* to their Rage, whom they look'd upon to be the Author of these destructive Councils, when his Master, *Charles XII.* who protected him, was dead.



C H A P. VII.

Treats of the antient and present Constitution of the Government, and the Revolutions it hath undergone.

THE antient Government of the *Goths*, *Swedes*, and other Northern Nations, appears to have been Monarchical: and according to *Tacitus*, their Sovereigns were not restrain'd by any Compacts with their People, nor held their Crowns at the Will of their Subjects; but their Dominion was absolute. The Nature of their Constitution may in some measure be collected from the Governments they establish'd in every Country they conquer'd. In these we find the *Feudal Tenures* universally took place, as hath been observ'd already. Their Princes or Leaders, parcell'd out their Conquests among their Followers, reserving certain Rents and Services to supply the Exigencies of the State; and appropriated to themselves, Lands sufficient for the Support of their Households, which were call'd their *Dessein Lands*. I don't apprehend that the Go-

The antient Government of Sweden.

thick or *Norwegian* Nation, singly, cou'd supply those vast Numbers, which over-run the Kingdoms of the South at different times. It is evident that most of the Northern People were united in those Expeditions; and as they were subject sometimes to the *Norman* or *Norwegian* Princes, and at others, to *Swedish* or *Gothick* Sovereigns, it is probable they were denominated *Normans* or *Goths*, according to the Nation the General or Sovereign happen'd to be of; nor did these Nations descend immediately so low as *Persia*, *Greece*, *France*, *Italy*, &c. but first subdu'd *Moscovy*, *Poland*, *Germany*, and the Countries which lay contiguous to them; and having establish'd themselves there, were join'd by many Adventurers from those Kingdoms, in hopes of sharing the Plunder of the World with them: And thus re-inforc'd, they proceeded gradually further South. But how many Northern Nations soever might be assembled, and join in the Destruction of the Southern Kingdoms of *Asia* and *Europe*, it seems, the *Goths*, *Normans*, or *Vandals*, had the Credit of those Enterprizes in *Europe*; and those who march'd towards *Persia*, *Armenia*, *Asia Minor*, &c. were generally still'd *Scythians* or *Tartars*. The *Vandals*, according to the Learned, were of *Gothick* Extraction; tho' their last Abodes, before their *Spanish* Expedition, might be in the Northern Parts of *Germany* or *Futland*.

But to return to the antient Government of the Northern Kingdoms: As the greatest part of the Lands were divided among the Military Men, who afterwards constituted the Nobility and Gentry, and held their Estates upon Condition of performing certain Services to the Crown, it was not an uncommon thing,

thing, when the Sovereign requir'd any thing of them, which was not suitable to their Inclinations, to enter into Confederacies, and dispute his Power; and if their Arms were successful, they compell'd him to submit to certain Limitations or Conditions of Government; to allow them a share in the Legislature and Administration; and perhaps in the Election or Confirmation of their future Princes; which was the Case of *Sweden* for some hundreds of Years. And as the Clergy, after the establishment of the Christian Religion in any Country by the Emissaries of *Rome*, assum'd a Power of controuling the Civil Magistrate; these also became another powerful Body, and had their share in the Legislature, &c. As to the Burgeses and Commonalty, these seem to have deriv'd their Privileges chiefly from the Crown, and to be introduc'd into the Legislature by the Sovereign, in order to ballance the Power of the Nobility and Clergy, who being possess'd of the greatest share of the Lands, and having a Majority of the People consequently for their Tenants and Vassals, were in many Kingdoms an overmatch for the Crown; till Princes, by Enfranchising the lower part of the People, and admitting their Representatives into the Legislature, engag'd them in their Interest, and by that means supported their Authority against the mutinous Barons and Clergy. But whatever was the Original of the Institution, we find four Estates establish'd in *Sweden*, for several hundred Years past, consisting of, 1. The Nobility, 2. The Clergy, 3. The Burgeses, and 4. Of the Commonalty or Peasants. And besides the States of the Kingdom, there was a Senate or Council establish'd; which during

Govern-
ment of
Sweden be-
comes
Elective.

4 Estates
in *Sweden*,
and a Se-
nate.

during the Intervals of their Sessions, did not only advise, but controul the King, who cou'd not Act in some Cases of Importance, without the Concurrence of a Majority of them. They took an Oath of Fidelity also to the Kingdom, rather than to the King, and were to remain Senators for Life ; any Attempt against their Persons, or even their Reputation, being made Treason.

The Estates were usually assembled once in three Years, or oftner, if the Exigencies of the State requir'd it ; Letters being sent to the Governors of the respective Provinces, signifying the time of their meeting. They wrote to the several Noblemen and Gentlemen in the Province, to acquaint them with it ; and to the Bishops, who caus'd the same to be publish'd in the Churches.

1 Estate. One is chosen out of each Family of the Nobility and Gentry, which were about two thousand, to represent that Body ; and with them, the Colonels, Lieutenant Colonels, Majors, and Captains of every Regiment sit and Vote.

2 Estate. The Clergy choose one out of every Rural Deanery, consisting of ten Parishes, and their Charges are born by the Electors. These, with the Bishops and Superintendents, make about two hundred, who represent that Body.

3 Estate. The Magistrates and Common-Council of every Corporation choose the Representatives of the Burghers, of which there are four Elected for *Stockholm*, and two for every other Town, amounting to about an hundred and fifty in the whole.

4 Estate. The Peasants choose one out of every District, to represent them, of their own Quality, and not a Gentleman, as in some other Countries,

tries, whose Charges they bear, and these amount to about two hundred and fifty.

They usually meet at *Stockholm*, in a large Room of the Castle; where his Majesty being seated on his Throne, and the Senators or Privy Council, sitting at some distance from him, the President of the Chancery compliments the Assembly in the King's Name; after which, a Secretary acquaints them with the State of Affairs since their Recess; and the occasion of requiring their Advice and Assistance. To which the Marshal of the Nobility returns an Answer. And after him, the Archbishop for the Clergy. The first Burgher-Master of *Stockholm*, in the Name of the Burghers; and one of the Peasants for that Body. Then they separate to four several Houses or Chambers, and choose a Secret Committee, compos'd of an equal Number of each Body (but there is some Alteration made in this, particularly an Act of this present Reign, as I shall take notice of hereafter) To this Committee, the Ministry communicates such other Particulars, as are not thought proper to be made publick, and they prepare the Matters to be propos'd to the respective Bodies. In each Chamber, the Votes of a Majority conclude the rest, but all the Chambers must concur in the passing of an Act. When the Particulars propos'd by the King have been consider'd and dispatch'd, each Chamber offers their Grievances separately to his Majesty: to which he returns an Answer. And each Member of the three Inferiour Houses have a Copy deliver'd them, of all Acts pass'd by the States, and of the King's Answers to their respective Grievances, which they communicate to their Electors.

The

The Crown of *Sweden*, says a late Writer, was not only Elective for some hundreds of Years, but the Royal Authority was so limited, that the Prince had little more than the Name of King left ; he cou'd neither make War or Peace, Levy Money or Troops, without the Consent of the Estates (or of the Senate, during a Recess). He cou'd neither erect a Fortrefs, introduce Foreign Troops, or put any strong Place into the Hands of a Foreigner. The Revenue of the Crown arose only from some small Demesns about *Upsal*, and a light Poll-Tax on the Peasants, and from some Fines and Forfeitures, which accrued to the Crown in Criminal Proceedings. The Government of Castles, Fieffs, or Mannors, which were granted by the Crown at first only for Years, or Life at most, were insensibly charg'd into Hereditary Possessions, which the Nobility held by no other Title; but Force ; withholding the Rents which were reserv'd out of them : As the Bishops and Clergy who possess such Estates also did ; on pretence, that the Lands of the Church ought to be exempted from all Duties. And in short, the Nobility and Clergy had so reduc'd the Royal Revenue by their Encroachments, that 'tis said, the King cou'd not, with what was left, maintain five hundred Horse, and was consider'd as little more than Captain General, during a War, and as President of the Senate, in time of Peace. The Executive Power was almost entirely lodg'd in the Senate, which was usually compos'd of twelve Lords, of whom the Archbishop of *Upsal*, Primate of *Sweden*, was one ; and the rest were the principal Officers of State, and Governors of Provinces. The King had indeed the Nomination of the Senators,

Senators, upon a vacancy ; by which means, it might be thought he had a fair Opportunity of advancing his Creatures. But these, when they came to taste the sweet of Sovereign Power, usually forgot their Obligations to their Prince, and became of a different Interest. The Prelates and Nobility fortify'd their Castles, and made them the Seats of so many Independent States; and arming their Vassals, frequently made War on each other, and sometimes on the r Sovereign. They neither sought or expected Redress from the King's Courts; when they apprehended themselves injur'd, but every one of these petty Sovereigns took upon him to do himself Justice, despising the Weakness of their injur'd Prince. The Kingdoms of *Norway* and *Denmark* were under the like Form of Government, both of them were Elective, and had their respective Senates, without whose Concurrence, or the States assembled in their Diet, the King cou'd transact nothing of Importance. But *Gustavus Erickson*, a *Swedish* Nobleman, elected King about the Year 1523, having render'd himself extremely Popular, by rescuing *Sweden* from the Usurpation and Oppression of the *Danes*, found means to advance the Royal Authority to a very high pitch. The Estates, who thought they cou'd never sufficiently express the Sense they had of their Deliverance, or their Gratitude to their Deliverer, made a solemn Act or Decree, whereby *They oblig'd themselves to approve whatever Gustavus shou'd think fit to do for the Preservation of his Dignity* (there being a Pretender set up against him.) Particularly they empower'd him to make War and Peace, and resolv'd that the Enemies of *Gustavus* should be reputed the Enemies of the Nation.

In the
Reign of
Gustavus I.
the Pre-
rogative
of the
Prince
enlarg'd
again.
1523.

This happen'd just at the time when *Luther's* Doctrine and the Reformation began to prevail in *Sweden*; and the *Romish* Clergy, who were the greatest, if not the only Enemies to the Accession of *Gustavus*, being now in Possession of half the Lands and Revenues of the Kingdom; and among others, of many of the Royal Castles and Demesns, he look'd upon this as a proper time to attempt the Resumption of those Castles and Lands which had been alienated from the Crown, by falling in with *Luther's* Doctrine, and pretending to advance the Reformation of the Church.

The Castles and Lands given to the Church, resum'd by the King.

But not to trouble the Reader with all the steps that were taken by *Gustavus* to break the Power of the Clergy, and advance the Revenues and Prerogative of the Crown; it may be sufficient to give an Abstract of an Act, which he procur'd to be pass'd by the States, in the Year 1527. by which it was ordain'd, ' That the Bishops should immediately surrender their Castles to the King, and disband their Troops. That their pretended Right to Fines and Forfeited Estates, which originally belong'd to the Crown, shou'd be entirely abrogated. That all the superfluous Plate and Bells in the Churches, should be sold to pay the Publick Debts. And that all Grants of Estates to the Clergy, since the Edict of King *Canutson*, who began his Reign, *Anno*. 1445. shou'd be vacated, and the Lands re-united to the Crown. And that two thirds of the Tythes, which were generally possess'd by the Bishops and Abbots, shou'd be sequestred for maintaining the Army in time of War; and for erecting and endowing publick Schools and Hospitals in time of Peace. And that all the Privileges

of

of the Clergy shou'd be entirely at his Majesty's disposal". This Act the States directed the Chancellor and Doctor *Olaus Petri* (the great Promoter of *Lutheranism* in Sweden) to present to the King, and to assure his Majesty, *That he shou'd never find the least Opposition to his Pleasure in that Assembly.*

The King finding himself thus Master, both of the Religion and Revenues of the Church, says the Abbot *Vertot*, march'd through great part of his Dominions, at the Head of a Body of Horse, to see the Act put in Execution ; being attended by *Olaus Petri*, and other *Lutheran* Doctors, whom he order'd to preach before him in the principal Churches. And wherever he came, he commanded the Titles and Grants, by which the Clergy held their Lands, to be brought before him ; and either re-united to the Crown, or restor'd to the Heirs of the antient Proprietors, all such Lands as had been alienated to the Church, since the Reign of King *Canutson* ; whereby he recover'd from the secular and regular Clergy, more than two thirds of their Revenues, seizing upon near thirteen thousand considerable Farms. He caused the Church Plate also to be melted down, and carried into the Publick Treasury. This occasion'd some Conspiracies and Insurrections against the Government ; but these were easily suppress'd, and serv'd only to confirm and advance the Regal Authority. And now having succeeded so happily in suppressing his greatest Enemies, the Clergy, he fell upon another Project, for encreasing the Revenues of the Crown. Most of the *Swedish* Provinces, it seems, were antiently cover'd with huge Forests, which former Kings had caus'd to be disforested, and granted the Lands to the Nobility and Gen-

try, reserving a certain Rent to the Crown but the Lords taking Advantage of the low Condition of the Crown, had neglected to pay them, and they seem'd now to be entirely abolish'd by a long Prescription. But this King, whose Claims and Demands, says *Verot*, differ'd not from the most arbitrary Decrees, requir'd the Nobility and Gentry to resign up their Fieffs, or to pay the Rents which were originally reserv'd on them. Whereupon they were oblig'd to compound with the King on such Terms as he was pleas'd to prescribe. They agreed to pay him a certain Sum every Year, for all such Fieffs or Mannors as they held of the Crown.

The
Crown
made He-
reditary
again.

The next thing he attempted was the entailing the Crown upon his Issue, to accomplish which he summon'd the States of the Kingdom, and propos'd to abrogate the Custom of electing their Princes. He set before them the Services that he and his Family had done to *Sweden*, and the fatal Consequences of the Divisions and Contests which happen'd at Elections; but as my Author observes, his Authority was already so well establish'd, that he needed no Rhetorick to prevail on the Assembly, not a Man of them durst oppose what he requir'd. The respective Houses consented with the greatest Submission to the abrogating their Right of Election, and settled the Crown on his eldest Son, Prince *Eric*, and the other Princes his Children successively, according to their Seniority, and on their respective Heirs. And the Crown hath accordingly been enjoy'd by his Descendants ever since, in Pursuance of this Act, which was pass'd in the Year 1542. King *Gustavus* looking upon himself also to be invested with a Power of parcelling out his

Dominions

Dominions as he saw fit, a little before his Death, devis'd *Finland* to his second Son *John*; to his third Son *Magnus*, *West Gothland*; and to his youngest Son *Charles*, the Provinces of *Sudermania*, *Nericia* and *Wermeland*; but to hold of their elder Brother *Eric* as Fees of the Crown, and to furnish their Quota of Troops whenever the Exigencies of the State requir'd it. King *Eric* reign'd about nine Years, but these younger Brothers thinking themselves hardly us'd, confederated themselves with some other Malecontents, and in the End dethron'd him, on Pretence of Male-administration, and *John*, his second Brother, succeeded him. It was however in the Reign of this unfortunate Prince, King *Eric*, that part of *Livonia* was added to the *Swedish* Dominions. *Eric* having been confin'd in Prison some Years, and frequently attempting to make his Escape, was at length poyson'd by the Order of his Brother *John*.

Eric
1559.

John 3.
1568.

King *John* was succeeded by his Son *Sigismund*, who was before elected King of *Poland*; but *Sigismund* residing for the most part in *Poland*, and endeavouring to restore the *Roman Catholic* Religion in *Sweden*, gave an Opportunity to his Uncle *Charles*, the youngest Son of *Gustavus Ericus*, to insinuate himself into the Affections of the Nobility and States of the Kingdom, who thereupon depos'd *Sigismund*, and advanc'd *Charles IX.* to the Throne. The States also pass'd an Act excluding *Uladislaus*, the Son of *Sigismund*, from the Crown of *Sweden*, because his Father refus'd to let him be educated in *Sweden*, in *Lutheran* Principles, and settled the Crown upon *Gustavus Adolphus*, the Son of King *Charles*, after his Father's Decease, and upon his Heirs Male. They also invested the

Sigismund.
1592.

Charles 9.
1604.

the new King with an absolute Authority to act according to his Discretion in the present Posture of Affairs.

*Gustavus
Adolphus.*
1611.

The
Crown
settled
on his
Daughter
Queen
Christina.
1633.

*Charles
Gustavus.*
1654.

Gustavus Adolphus succeeded his Father King *Charles*, Anno 1611, and having great Success against the *Moscovites* and *Poles*, a Peace was concluded, by which *Lieffland* or *Livonia*, with the Country of *Ingermanland* was confirm'd to the *Swedes*. He afterwards made considerable Conquests in *Germany*, but being kill'd at the Battle of *Lutzen*, left his Crown to his Daughter the Princess *Christina*, then five Years of Age, in favour of whom her Father had prevail'd upon the States to alter the Act of Settlement, which restrain'd the Succession to the Male Line. The War was still prosecuted in *Germany*, till the Peace of *Munster*, by which *Sweden* was confirm'd in the Possession of the *Upper Pomerania*, *Bremen* and *Verden*; of *Stetin* in *Lower Pomerania*, and of the City of *Wismar* in *Mecklenburgh*, and obtain'd a Right to sit and vote in the Diets of the Empire. Queen *Christina*, with the Consent of the Estates, resign'd her Crown to her Nephew *Charles Gustavus*, the fourth Son of *Cassimir*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and of *Katherine*, the Sister of *Gustavus Adolphus*, and afterwards retir'd to *Rome*, having embrac'd the *Roman Catholick* Religion.

Charles Gustavus was mighty succesful in his Wars against the *Danes*, which were concluded by a Treaty of Peace, whereby *Denmark* confirm'd to *Sweden* the Provinces of *Schonen*, *Halland* and *Bleking*, together with *Lyster*, *Huween*, the Isle of *Bornholm*, and the Fieff of *Druntheim* in *Norway*: and by this Treaty it was stipulated, that the *Swedes* shou'd have a free

free Passage through the *Sound*, without paying any Duties to the *Dane*.

Charles the 11th succeeded his Father *Charles Gustavus*, being then but five Years of Age, whereupon the Administration of the Government was committed to the Queen, together with the five great Officers of the Crown, untill the Year 1672, when the King was declared Major, and took the Government upon him, being then seventeen Years of Age. He found the Nation engag'd in an unsuccessful War, the Odium of which was thrown upon the Ministers who were at the Helm during his Minority; whereupon a Committee was chosen out of the several Bodies of the States, to enquire into the Miscarriages of their Administration. And it was resolv'd, that the Power the Senators had assum'd to themselves, was a principal Occasion of their Misfortunes; and therefore declar'd, that as they the States needed no such Mediators between the King and them, so neither did they think his Majesty by his Coronation Oath (in which he engages to govern with the Advice of the Senators) was oblig'd any longer to have their Concurrence in his Councils; upon which, several of them were laid aside, and the rest, instead of their former Titles of Counsellors, or Senators of the Kingdom, were stil'd only *the King's Counsellors*. The States also declar'd further, that though the Regents during a Minority might be call'd to account for their Administration, yet the King, who receiv'd his Crown from God, was accountable only to God for his Actions, and tied to no other Engagements than what his Coronation Oath imported, namely, *To rule the Kingdom according to Law*. Large Taxes were immediately given, answerable

Charles II.
1660.

The Senate dissolved.

The
States re-
sign their
Power
to the
Crown.

able to the Necessities of the Government, and a new Court or College of Reduction was establish'd for re-uniting to the Crown all such Lands as had been alienated from it, the Choice of the Members of this Court being left to the King, and the Care of the Kingdom was recommended to his Majesty by the States, praying him to make such Establishments in relation to the Forces by Sea and Land, and the fortify'd Places, as shou'd appear needful; and indeed he had scarce occasion to ask any thing of them, *each Body of the States striving which shou'd out bid the other in their Concessions.* The Nobility and Gentry not being able to subsist on their private Fortunes, which were much diminish'd by Taxes, without some Office or Place at Court, were ready to comply with the King in every thing, rather than hazard their present Employments, and future Hopes of Advancement; and from the Officers of the Army who sat in the same House, the Court were sure to meet with no Opposition; the Clergy, Burghers, and Commonalty being taught to believe that their Miseries proceeded from the too great Power of the Nobility, and that the King cou'd never be too much trusted, who had given eminent Proofs of his Piety, as well as of his Valour and Conduct in rescuing the Kingdom from the distress'd State he found it in at his coming of Age. And being glad also of an Opportunity of humbling the Nobility, who were always imperious in their Prosperity, each Body of the States readily came into whatever the Court requir'd of them, and gave the King an Opportunity of Establishing as absolute a Dominion as any Sovereign in *Europe.* He first began to examine the Titles
of

of those who held Lands which formerly belong'd to his Ancestors; and re-united them to the Crown, by which means he recover'd a very great Revenue, but impoverish'd most of the considerable Families in Sweden. A College or Court of Liquidation was also erected as a Barrier to the Treasury, and to keep off all Creditors of the Crown, till their Accounts were first stated and allow'd by this Court. And at the same time if any Person was indebted to the King, he was compell'd to pay it, though greater Sums (as it sometimes happen'd) were due from the Government to him; and the Party left to state his Accounts afterwards in the Court of Liquidation.

In the next Session of the States, *Anno 1683*, The King the Declaration or Promise at the Coronation of *Ruling according to Law* was further explain'd, the States declaring, that his Majesty was not thereby bound up to the Laws then in being; but might alter the same, and add such Constitutions as he thought most useful for the present State of the Kingdom; and that whatever Orders or Instructions he was pleas'd to give to any Court or Officer, the same ought to be a Law to them; only they hop'd his Majesty would communicate to the States such Laws as were of a general Nature, and intend'd to oblige the whole Kingdom. And before the End of this Reign, it appear'd that the Diet or Assembly of the States serv'd to no other Purpose than to record the Acts of the Ministry, their Consent was not demanded to the making any future Laws.

King *Charles XI.* dying on the 17th of *April*, *Charles 12.* 1697, in the 42d Year of his Age, and the 17th of his Reign, was succeeded by his only son *Charles XII.* who not being yet quite fif-

teen Years of Age, the Queen and five great Officers of State were constituted Regents during his Minority: However the States of *Sweden* being assembled on the 16th of *November* following, declar'd the King Major. In the Year 1700. the *Poles*, *Danes*, and *Moscovites* falling upon the young King of *Sweden* without any Provocation that could justify their attacking him, and even before any War was declar'd, the *English* and *Dutch* sent a Fleet to his Assistance, and compell'd the *Danes* to clap up a Peace with him; which gave this young Heroe an Opportunity of marching against the *Moscovites* and *Poles*, whom he defeated in almost every Engagement at the Beginning of the War, with Numbers very far inferiour to those of his Enemies, though he had well disciplin'd veteran Troops of *Saxons* to contend with, as well as *Russians* and *Poles*. He had the good Fortune in this War to dethrone the King of *Poland*, and brought the *Czar* of *Moscovy* almost upon his Knees; till entertaining too great a Contempt of his Enemies, he ventur'd to march into the Heart of their Country without taking the usual Precautions; and being surrounded by the *Czar's* numerous Troops.

1709. his Army was entirely cut off or made Prisoners at *Pultoway*, except three or four hundred Horse, with which he escap'd to *Bender* in the *Turkish* Dominions, of which the Reader hath already had a particular Relation. Some few

1718. Years after his Return to *Sweden*, he was kill'd at the Siege of *Fredrickshall*, having reign'd as arbitrarily as his Father, the States not being suffer'd to resume the Power they had complimented their former Princes with during his Reign. Besides the Instances already produced of the arbitrary Government of *Charles XII*

in levying Men and Money on his Subjects, without their consent. There is a passage in *Mottraye*, which demonstrates still more, how insignificant the States of the Nation had render'd themselves, by their extravagant Concessions.

While his Majesty remain'd in *Turky*, the Senate or Privy Council, it seems had taken upon them to Summon an Assembly of the States, who began to resume their antient Authority. But his Majesty returning to his *German* Dominions, soon let them know, that both the Senate and they, had taken greater Liberties than his Father *Charles XI.* had left them. That they had forgot they were no more the Free Senate and States of the Kingdom, but the King's only ; without whose express Order, they were not to assemble: and order'd Mr. *Multern*, his Chancellor, to signify to them, *That if they were not separated when that Letter should come to their Hands, or did not immediately disperse upon the receipt of it, he wou'd send them one of his old Boots, with express command to do nothing but what that shou'd prescribe them.* And at his return to *Sweden*, depriv'd them of the little share they seem'd yet to retain in the Administration.

In this blessed Condition were the States of *Sweden* at the demise of the late King, who dying without Issue, the Crown, according to the Right of Succession, devolv'd upon *Charles Frederick*, Duke of *Holstein*, Son of *Hedwig Sophia*, the eldest Daughter of *Charles XI.* and of *Frederick* late Duke of *Holstein* ; but the Princess *Ulrica Eleonora*, the youngest Daughter of *Charles XI.* being marry'd to the Hereditary Prince of *Hesse Cassel*, who was then General of the *Swedish* Army, and his Consort, the Princess, promising to restore the States

Princess
Ulrica E-
lected
Queen.

to their antient Power and Privileges, the Duke of *Holstein* was pass'd by, in favour of the Princess *Ulrica*, and a perfect new Constitution struck out, such at least, as that Nation had not known for near two hundred Years past, as I shall relate more at large, that the Reader may be fully inform'd of the Present State of the *Swedish* Government.

Upon the Death of *Charles XII.* the principal Officers of the Army immediately repair'd to the Prince of *Hesse's* Quarters, and gave him an assurance, that the Princess, his Consort, might depend upon their Suffrages and Assistance, in case any Opposition was made to her succeeding her Brother. Whereupon the Prince immediately dispatch'd an Express to *Stockholm*, where the Princess and her Friends manag'd matters so well, that the next *Sunday* she was pray'd for in the Churches, as Queen. However, the Day following she publish'd a Declaration, by the Advice of the Senate, wherein she renounc'd all Arbitrary Power, call'd Sovereignty in *Sweden*, and invited all the States to meet at *Stockholm*, on the twentieth Day of *January* following, to confirm the publick Voice, by their free Election, and consult on the present posture of Affairs. But notwithstanding the States met according to the Queen's Summons, they stil'd her only Princess Royal, and pretended to be voluntarily assembled, upon the Vacancy of the Throne, to elect a Successor; intimating at the same time, that they intended to elect no other but the Princess *Ulrica*, provided she wou'd oblige herself to govern according to such Conditions and Limitations as the State shou'd prescribe to her, which she seem'd very ready to comply with, having no other Title to depend on, than the

Election

Election of the People; for the young Duke of *Holstein*, whose Interest was not inconsiderable, was the Son of her eldest Sister, and consequently ought to have succeeded to the Throne, if they had had any regard to Hereditary Right, or even to former Acts of the States; but they had suffer'd so much by the Ambition and Tyranny of their Princes, that they were determin'd not to let this Opportunity slip, of putting fresh Limitations on the Royal Prerogative. And that Nation must be stupid to the last degree, where the Prince hath no Title but what the States confer upon him, if they do not tie up his Hands from doing publick Mischief, and prevent their own Destruction: Tho' there will be always some, who, in hopes of sharing the Plunder of their Country, with the Court, will be ready enough to compliment the Ministry with their Liberties, and render their Posterity SLAVES and BEGGARS. But to proceed,

The States having oblig'd this Princess to declare, that she held the Crown of the States, and renounce for herself and her Posterity, all Arbitrary Power, call'd Sovereignty in *Sweden*, proclaim'd her duely elected Queen of *Sweden*, and settled the Crown upon her Majesty's Male Issue, if she shou'd have any; but it was provided in the Act of Election, that she shou'd forfeit the Crown, if she endeavour'd, directly or indirectly, to restore Arbitrary Power; and that whoever shou'd propose to her or her Successors, any thing tending to it, shou'd be punish'd as a Traytor. She oblig'd herself also not to admit any Person into any Employment in the Government, who was not a *Lutheran*, and Born a Subject of *Sweden*, and who did not first Swear, not to promote or introduce Arbitrary Power. Among

Limitations and Conditions put upon the Royal Authority.

Among other Articles in their Act of Limitation or Form of Government, it is provided, That the Queen shall profess the *Lutheran* Religion; that no other Religion shou'd be tolerated in *Sweden*, either to Natives or Foreigners (except in Ambassadors Houses) and that the speaking in Derogation or Contempt of *Lutheranism*, shou'd be punish'd by Death, or banishment, according to the Discretion of the Judge. By the 2d, The Queen is impower'd to Pardon Criminals, with some Exceptions. By the 3d, She is restrain'd from alienating any of the Dominions of the Crown, in favour of younger Children. Her Heirs are not to succeed to the Crown, till they are 21 Years of Age, renounce absolute Power, and acknowledge they hold the Crown from the States, their Education to be under the Direction of the States, and to profess the *Lutheran* Religion. By the 4th, The States are not to submit to any Laws, which are not made by their Consent, nor are they to have the Force of Laws without such Consent. The 5th prohibits the augmenting the publick Taxes, without the Consent of the States. The 6th restrains her declaring War, without their Consent, or of the Senate, during a Recess. The 7th restrains her from making Peace, or entering into Alliances, without the Consent of the Senate, or the States. The 9th confirms her Majesties Right of Coining Money, but prohibits a base Alloy, or altering the Value, without the Consent of the States. By the 10th she is restrain'd from going out of the Kingdom, without their Consent. By the 12th There are to be 24 Senators, chosen by a Committee of the Nobility, Clergy, and Burghers. By the 13th her Majesty is to govern the Kingdom,

Kingdom, by the Advice of the Senators. By the 15th the Senators are all to give their Advice, when the Necessities of the State requires it, and to be responsible to the States for their ill Administration. By the 16th the Senate are to take upon them the Administration, when the Queen is absent or indispos'd, and during a Vacancy of the Throne, till the States are assembled. By the 18th a Senator is appointed President of every Court of Justice; and it is provided, That no Gentleman shall be condemn'd, but by the Royal Court of *Hofraten*, where it concerns his Life, or Honour, according to the Privileges of the Nobility. By the 20th the Forces are to take an Oath of Fidelity to her Majesty, the Kingdom, and States. By the 21st no Collonel, or other Officer shall march any Soldiers out of their Quarters, without leave from her Majesty and the Senate, on pain of Death. By the 25th the Queen is to take no Sum out of the Treasury, without the consent of the States or Senate, exceeding twelve Pounds, which may be deliver'd on her Majesty's single Order. By the 34th her Majesty is to dispose of no Place in the Government, without the Consent of the Senate. And the States are to dispose of all Military Employments, above a Lieutenant Collonel. By the 35th the Queen is desired not to Enoble so many as formerly, but only Men of Merit. By the 36th she is to Summon the States once in three Years, or oftner, if the Publick Welfare require it. An account of the State of Affairs since the last Session, is then to be laid before them, and they are then to enquire into the Conduct of the Senate, during their Recess. Upon the Absence, dangerous Sickness, or Death of the Queen,

Queen, the Senate may Summon the States, and if there be no Heir Male, in whose Name they can be Summon'd, they are to assemble themselves the 30th Day after the Queen's Decease. These, with some other less material Articles, were sign'd by the Marshal or Speaker of the Nobility : By the Archbishop of *Upsal*, for the Clergy : By the first Burgo-Master of *Stockholm*, for the Burghers, and by the Senate of the Peasants, for the Commons, and were afterwards sign'd and ratify'd by the Queen.

Prince of
Hesse elect-
ed King.

The States being assembled at *Stockholm*, in *February*, 1720, the Queen propos'd the making her Consort, the Prince of *Hesse*, King jointly with her. The Prince afterwards sent them a Declaration of his Intentions, by which he engag'd himself to renounce Arbitrary Power, to profess the *Lutheran* Religion, and suffer no other in the Kingdom, and in all respects, to conform himself to the Limitations and Conditions contain'd in the Instrument of Government sign'd by the Queen. Whereupon the States presented a Remonstrance to her Majesty, shewing the Inconveniencies they apprehended in the Prince's reigning jointly with her ; to which the Queen answer'd, That if they wou'd consent to the Prince's Advancement to the Throne, and desir'd he shou'd be Invested solely with the Regal Power, she was ready to resign her Diadem to him, provided she might resume the Government again, in case she shou'd survive the Prince. Which being approv'd of by the States, they proceeded to proclaim him King, but with some further Restrictions and Alterations in the Instrument of Government, sign'd by him, than were contain'd in the former, particularly, that the King shou'd not have Power of commanding

commanding any Sum out of the publick Treasury, how small soever, and that the Number of Senators should for the future be reduc'd to sixteen. And on the third of May 1721, the Ceremony of his Coronation was perform'd in the great Church of *Stockholm*. Upon the whole it appears, that the *Swedish* Nobility and Gentry have not only fully recover'd their antient Liberties, but the States have invested themselves with Sovereign Power, and made their King entirely dependant on them; and *Sweden* may now be look'd upon rather as an Aristocracy than a Monarchy. The Peasants or Commons seem to have the least Share in the Government of any of the Houses, for they are not suffer'd to depute any of their Members to assist in the Secret Committee, in which all Affairs of Moment are transacted; and for this mortifying Reason, that they are illiterate, and not qualified to debate Affairs of State. But this I find the Commons look upon as a very great Grievance, and have presented Memorials to the other Houses to complain of it, for which Presumption several of their Members were imprison'd and punish'd in the Year 1723. and they were compell'd by Force to drop their Claim: So that with all their boasted Liberties, the Commons seem to be not much better'd by the Change.



C H A P. VIII.

Contains some further Account of the Senate of Sweden ; of their respective Courts or Colleges for the Administration of publick Affairs, and of their Courts of Justice, Laws, and Civil Government.

The Senate.

THE Senate, without whose Consent the King cannot determine any Affair of Consequence, since the last Act of Settlement, are reduc'd to the Number of fourteen, who are chosen in the following manner, *viz.* twenty four of the Body of the Nobility or House of Lords, twelve of the Clergy, and as many of the Burgesies House, being assembled, take an Oath of Secrecy, after which they proceed to choose three Persons fit to be advanc'd to that Dignity on a Vacancy, in which they must be unanimous. Of these his Majesty appoints which he pleases to supply the place. No Senator can be elected in the Intervals of their Diet or Parliament : Nor may there more than two of any one Family be of the Senate at the same time. And it is observable, that the House of Commons, or Peasants, have no Vote in the Election of a Senator. Every Senator present in Council (and none are to be absent but upon apparent Necessity) is oblig'd to give his Voice, when any Matters of State are propos'd, and they are answerable to the States for all Male Administration. When the King is absent or Sick, the Administration is entirely in their Hands, and every thing decided amongst them by a Plurality of Voices.

Every

Every one of the superiour Courts of Justice hath a Senator for President of it, to whom is added a Vice President, and four other Associates or Assistants. The College of War, or the War Office, also hath a Senator for President, and two others of the same Dignity for his Associates, with a General of the Artillery, a Quarter-master General, and two Counsellors of War; under whose Direction are all the Land Forces, the Artillery and Fortifications. The College or Court of Admiralty also hath a Senator Admiral for its President, who hath all the other Admirals and Sea-Officers for his Associates. The College or Court of Chancery hath a Senator for President, who hath two other Senators, the Chancellor and three Secretaries of State for his Associates. Here all Acts of State, Acts of the Diet, Charters, Patents, and Treaties of Peace and Alliance are drawn up and recorded.

A Senator
presides
in every
Court.

The War
Office.

The Ad-
miralty.

The
Chancery.

The Chamber of Accompts, or *Stadt Comp-
toir*, hath a Senator for President, with another of the same Dignity, and the Counsellors of the Chamber, for Associates, to whom all who are concern'd in the publick Revenues are accountable, and receive Orders from them, and the publick Chest or Treasure is committed to their Care. The College of Mines hath a Senator for President, and four Associates, who have Machines provided, and every thing relating to their Mines improv'd to the greatest Advantage. A Senator also presides over the College of Commerce, who hath two Counsellors, four Assistants, and two Merchants for his Associates, and these have the Regulation of every thing relating to Trade and Manufactures. The first Marshal of the Court is a

Treasury.

The Mine
Office.

College
of Com-
merce.

Govern-
ments.

Senator also, who is Comptroller of the Royal Tables, Palaces and Stables.

Sweden is not only divided into Counties and Provinces, as hath been already observ'd, but the whole Kingdom is again divided into five and twenty Governments, over every one of which is plac'd a great Officer, call'd a *Landshofding*, who antiently had the Authority both of Lord Lieutenant and Sheriff, and was appointed by the King; but now no Employment of Consequence is disposed of without the Concurrence of the Senate, and the Authority of the *Landshofding* seems to be more restrain'd than heretofore: But one thing is very particular in this Office, which is, that the *Landshofding* takes care that all the Lands in his Government are manur'd and cultivated to the best Advantage. To him also the Execution of Judicial Sentences, the Collection of the publick Revenue arising in his Government, and the Care of the Royal Forests, Parks, and other Crown Lands are committed.

Court of
Revision.

The supreme Court of Justice in the Kingdom, is the Court of Revision, to which the Subject may appeal from any other Civil Court, where the matter in dispute amounts to the Value of seventy Pounds. The President of the Court of Chancery, and two or three other Senators, with the Chancellor, sit as Judges in this Court, as the King also does in Person when he pleases. The next Court to this is the Court of Under Revision, of which the Chancellor is President; who having two Secretaries his Assessors prepares such Causes for the Supreme Court as are found proper to come before it. In every Corporation and every District, of which there are many in every

every

Every Province, there is a Court of Justice in the Cities and Towns Corporate; an Alderman presides in them, having some of his Bretheren for his Associates; and in the Country the chief Officer of the District is Judge, having a standing Jury of twelve Men to decide all Facts. This Court is ambulatory, and usually kept near the place where the respective Facts arise. These Courts determine no Cause, where the matter in dispute is above the Value of forty Shillings, and seem very much to resemble our antient Sheriffs Tourn, which was also ambulatory, and the Facts determin'd by a Jury. Causes above the Value of forty Shillings are transmitted to the next Superior Court, of which in Country Causes the *Lathman*, or Judge of the Province is President. And in Corporations the Burghmaster or Mayor is President, and the Aldermen Associates. Capital Crimes are transmitted from these Courts to the respective National Courts, of which there are three, one for the Kingdom of *Sweden*, holden at *Stockholm*; a second for the Kingdom of *Gothland*, held at *Jenköping*; and a third for the Dukedom of *Finland*, held at *Abo*: In each of which, as hath been hinted already, a Senator is President, and the Assessors are Gentlemen of Quality. An Appeal lies to these from the inferior Courts in Civil Actions, where the Value of the thing contested does not amount to more than twenty Pounds. All these Courts sit continually, or but with short Vacations, and as they are not much tied up to Forms, Causes meet with a speedy Dispatch, unless there happens to be tampering in the Case, which it seems is not uncommon in *Sweden*.

Inferiour Courts.

Standing Juries.

Provincial Courts.

3. National Courts.

Facts committed at Sea are try'd in the ordinary Courts, but determin'd by the Sea-Laws of *Wisby*, a Town in the Isle of *Gothland*, which were once as much regarded in the *Baltick*, as the Laws of *Oleron* on this side. Their Court of Admiralty hath no Jurisdiction in Civil Causes.

Eccle-
siastical
Courts.

There is a Consistory in every Diocese for the Tryal of Ecclesiastical Causes, of which the Bishop is President. Here Marriage Contracts and Bastardy are try'd, and Church Censures inflicted; but they cannot Order any Corporal Punishment, or give Sentence of Excommunication, or Administer an Oath to the Party: And an Appeal lies from these Courts to the respective National Courts, and in some Cases to the King. The Power of executing all Sentences in Criminal Matters being in the Governors of Provinces and their Substitutes, or in the Stadtholders of *Stockholm* and some other Cities. It is not easy to procure Justice to be done upon Offenders in Criminal Cases, especially where a Foreigner is concern'd against a Native: These Gentlemen taking the Liberty to interpret the Sentence, or delay it according to their Humour or Interest. In Criminal Matters, where there is a Defect of Evidence, the Party is permitted to purge himself by his Oath, which Answers to our Wager of Law, where the Defendant is permitted to purge himself in like Manner; and in some Cases six or twelve Men, as it was once with us, are allow'd to vouch for him. Tryals by Juries of twelve Men are as antient as any part of their Constitution: Their Historians affirm that it had its Original among them, tho' it be practis'd now only in their inferior Courts; and

and there the Jurors have their Places for Life, and Salaries settled upon them : They must be Unanimous in their Determination of Facts, as with us ; but in the superior Courts every thing is determin'd by Majority of the Judges on the Bench.

Law Suits concerning Titles to Estates do not take up so much time as in *Britain*, all Sales and Alienations of their Lands being registred as well as Incumbrances on them; and the Buyer would run the Hazard of losing his Purchase if he should defer registering the Sale in the proper Court till another had bought the same Lands and registred them. The greatest Charge of Law Suits in *Sweden* is their Stamp'd Paper, on which all the Process is Written, being from two Pence to seven Shillings a Sheet, according to the Value of the thing in Dispute ; other Charges are not great, every Man being permitted to speak in his own Cause if he Pleases. In Civil Matters and Criminal Causes they admit of no Counsel, or Advocates ; so very contemptible is the Practice of the Law in *Sweden*, that no Gentleman will undertake it ; and according to a late Writer, it is rather the Refuge than the Choice of meaner People, consequently there are not many Practisers, and those, it seems, are very Poor.

Sales and Alienations of Lands registred.

Stamp'd Paper.

Law Suits not chargeable.

The Punishment of Theft, at present, is perpetual Slavery. The Criminal is condemn'd to labour all his Life in the Service of the Crown, in carrying Wood and Stone for the repair of the Fortifications, or other kind of Drudgeries : He wears a Collar of Iron Night and Day about his Neck, to this there is a Bow of the same Metal fasten'd that comes over his Head, and holds a little Bell which

Punishments.

Court of
Honour.

which rings upon the least Motion. Duelling, where one of the Parties is kill'd, is punish'd with the Death of the Survivor; and if neither of them fall, they both suffer two Years Imprisonment, and are to live all the time upon Bread and Water, and pay besides a Fine of a thousand Crowns. The National Court acts as a Court of Honour; and where any Person hath receiv'd an Affront, usually orders the offending Party to make a Recantation and beg Pardon publicly. For Capital Crimes, such as Murder, double Adultery, Burning of Houses and Witchcraft, the Criminal, if he be a Man, is hang'd; and if a Woman, beheaded; and where the Facts are attended with aggravating Circumstances, the Offender is Burnt, Quarter'd, or Hang'd in Chains *in Terrorem*, as in other Countries. Where a Nobleman or Gentleman commits a Capital Crime he is Shot to Death. The Punishment of a Popish Priest in *Sweden* by making an Eunuch of him may have been practis'd formerly, but the best Modern Authors do not give us any late Instances of this kind; perhaps the Terror of it may have clear'd the Country of them.



CHAP. IX.

Treats of their Religion, Learning and Universities.

Religion.

WHETHER we deriv'd our Pagan Superstitions immediatly from the *Swedes* and *Goths* may be made a Question perhaps; but certain it is, that the *Goths* and the *Eng-*

lish

lish once worship'd the same Heathen Deities. Near *Upsal*, the *Swedish* Historians relate, was the famous Temple of their *Trium Deat*, *Woden*, *Thor* and *Friga*, as much reverenc'd and resorted to by the Northern Nations of old, as the Temple of *Jerusalem* by the *Christians*, or that of *Mecca* by the *Mahometans* at this Day. *Woden* was their *Mars*, and *Friga* their *Venus*, and *Thor* the Thunderer, presided over the Winds and Storms. And what is this but the antient *Grecian* Superstition communicated to the Northern Parts of the World, with very little Alteration, unless in the Names of their pretended Deities? Some *Swedish* Historians indeed, will have the *Grecians*, and all other Nations, as well as their Customs and Religion, deriv'd Originally from them; holding that *Scandinavia* was the first Country inhabited after the Flood. So fond are all People of being thought the most antient, that there is nothing how absur'd soever but they will assert to countenance their boasted Antiquity.

The Northern People, with much more Colour, pretend that they have communicated their antient Form of Government to most of their Southern Neighbours, and among the rest to *Britain*; but from whomsoever we deriv'd our Constitution, the *English* assume the Honour of planting *Christianity* amongst them in the beginning of the ninth Century, at least, it was first establish'd in *Sweden* by *English* Missionaries, amongst whom *St. Sigisfrid* was Chief, as the *Swedish* Historians relate, he quitted the Archbishoprick of *York*, according to them, to become the Apostle of the *Goths*; and was Martyr'd by their Pagan Governours, with three of his Nephews; as *St.*

Christianity planted here by the *English*.

Eskill and other *English* Missionaries were by the *Swedes*. And *Erick King* of *Sweden* making a Conquest of *Finland*, about the Year 1150, *St. Henry*, an *English* Bishop who attended the Army, 'tis said, made a great Progress in the Conversion of that People ; but was afterwards martyr'd by the Infidels, and his Tomb remains at *Abo*, the Metropolis of *Finland*.

The Reformation.

The Reformation was begun in *Sweden* in the Reign of *Gustavus Erickson*, at the beginning of the 16th Century, who promoted it as well upon Politick as Religious Views. The Clergy in general were his Enemies, and exceeding Rich, which were two very strong Inducements to seize their Lands and Unite them to the Crown : And this he accomplish'd in his Reign, leaving the Clergy but a slender Maintenance.

Lutheranism prevails here, as it does in all *Scandinavia* ; nor will they suffer any other Denomination of *Christians* to profess their Religion here, whether Natives or Foreigners : They have a mighty Zeal for their own Way, and will have every one who resides amongst them conform to it. So exceedingly stiff are they in this Point, and so uncharitable to those of another Persuasion, and even to those of the Church of *England*, who approach nearest to them ; that they would neither give a Chaplain of the Lord *Carteret's* *Christian* Burial, nor suffer the *English* to read their Funeral Service at the Grave, tho' the Lord *Carteret* was then Ambassador in *Sweden*, and the *English* Fleet was at that time their only Security against the Ravages of the *Moscovites* ; and what makes this the more remarkable is, That this *English* Divine was deny'd

deny'd *Christian* Burial by the Direction of the Archbishop of *Upsal*, who was consulted in the Point : Nay, he prohibited the *Swedish* Clergy to assist at his Funeral, or carry him to the Grave, as they usually do a departed Brother, as *Motraye* relates. *Motr.* Vol. 2. P. 379.

As the *Swedes* suffer no arguing against their particular Sect, their Clergy understand but little of the Points in Controversy between them and other *Christians* ; and their People consequently less ; which hath this good Effect, that nice Points of Divinity are seldom handled in the Pulpit ; and they confine themselves chiefly to practical Discourses. The Archbishop of *Upsal* is their Primate, and the only Archbishop of the *Lutheran* Perswasion ; having eight or ten Suffragans under him. The Revenues of the Clergy in general are but mean, as hath been hinted already : The Archbishop himself hath not above four hundred Pounds a Year, and the Bishops proportionably. Besides the Bishops, there are seven or eight Superintendents, who have the Power of Bishops, and only want the Name. They have also a Rural Dean, whose Authority extends over the Clergy of ten Parishes. The Number of Churches both in *Sweden* and *Finland* scarce amount to two thousand ; and their whole Clergy, including Chaplains and Curates, are not suppos'd to amount to four thousand. They are all the Sons of Peasants, or mean Tradesmen, which makes them the better contented with the poor Endowments of their Cures : They have only one third of the Tyths of their respective Parishes, and a small Portion of Glebe, the rest having been seiz'd by the Crown at the Reformation ;

and indeed, great part of the Tythes and Church Lands were possess'd by their Bishops, or Monasteries, in the times of Popery ; so that the Inferior Secular Clergy are not in a much worse Condition than they were then : and it seems, the Clergy by their good OEconomy are generally in a Condition to perform Acts of Charity and Hospitality, notwithstanding the straitness of their Income ; and by this means procure the Respect of their People : tho' perhaps the Bigottry of the Nation for their own Sect, does not contribute a little towards that Veneration they have for their Pastors, as is the case among our Sectaries, and brings in considerable Presents to supply the straitness of their Revenues.

Before the present Reign, notwithstanding all the Chapters in the Kingdom voted in the Election of the Archbishop of *Upsal*, the King appointed another to fill that See whenever he saw fit : And upon the Death of a Bishop the Clergy of the Diocese us'd to propose three to his Majesty, and he made Choice of one of them usually, tho' there are Instances of his passing by all the Candidates, and appointing another to succeed in the See.

The
King's
Engage-
ment to
suffer on-
ly the
Lutheran
Religion
in *Sweden*

By the Instrument of Assurance sign'd by his present Majesty the Prince of *Hesse* on his Accession to the Throne of *Sweden*, Anno 1720. the Power of the Prince in Religious Matters is abridg'd : He therein declares, that
 ' Since his Residence in that Kingdom he
 ' had receiv'd better Information than he had
 ' formerly of the pure Evangelical Religion
 ' And I not only find in me, says that Prince,
 ' a sincere Desire to embrace it, and Re-
 ' nounce the reformed Doctrine (*Calvinism*) ;
 ' but do also promise and engage to remain
 ' firm

firm to the *Lutheran* Principles as long as I live : And that I will cause all the Children which it shall please God to give me by her Majesty, my now Royal Consort, to be educated therein. And do in all Points confirm and ratifie the Instrument of Government, dated the 21st of *February* 1719, which my said Royal Consort then approv'd and subscrib'd, relating to the pure and uncorrupted Evangelical Religion, as grounded on the Writings of the Prophets and Apostles, according to the Confession of *Augsburgh*, as explain'd in *Libro Concordia*; and which in the Year 1593, at the Assembly of *Upsal* was receiv'd and establish'd by the States of the Kingdom to be a Fundamental Law of all the Successors of King *Gustavus* the First. I do in like manner also promise to maintain and protect all the Inhabitants of the Kingdom, both Spiritual and Temporal, in the Enjoyment of the aforesaid *Lutheran* Religion, the true Word of God, and the Uncorrupt use of the Holy Sacraments, as was practis'd in the latter part of the Reign of King *Gustavus* the First, and the beginning of King *John's*, which was also afterwards unanimously approv'd and confirm'd by the States of the Kingdom in their Assemblies held at *Upsal* in the Years 1593 and 1693. And I will never suffer any of the Subjects of *Sweden*, or the Provinces thereunto belonging, of whatsoever Degree or Quality to be entic'd or encourag'd to embrace any other Doctrine: Nor permit any Person, of what Nation or Quality soever, to exercise either publickly or privately any other Religion in the Kingdom, and its Provinces, than the a-
foresaid

‘ foreſaid Evangelical Doctrine, which I am
 ‘ determin’d to maintain in its unalterable
 ‘ Purity, and faithfully ſupport the ſame a-
 ‘ gainſt all Hereſy and publick Violence ; and
 ‘ if need be, will hazard and ſacrifice my
 ‘ Life in its Defence.

‘ II. No Perſons of any other Religion, be
 ‘ they *Papiſts*, *Calviniſts*, reformed *Anabap-*
 ‘ *tiſts*, or profeſſing any other *False Doctrine*,
 ‘ and not of the aforeſaid true Evangelical
 ‘ Religion, eſpecially ſuch as are obſerv’d to
 ‘ incline to Atheiſm and Infidelity, ſhall be
 ‘ employ’d in any publick Office whatever,
 ‘ either Civil or Military, much leſs ſhall any
 ‘ ſuch be admitted in Churches and Schools
 ‘ for the Education of Youth : And in parti-
 ‘ cular, none of any other Religion than is
 ‘ deſcrib’d in the foregoing Article ſhall be
 ‘ appointed and promoted to any Eccleſiaſti-
 ‘ cal Dignity, or be allow’d to inſtruct Chil-
 ‘ dren in publick or private Houſes.

‘ III. What is thus eſtabliſh’d, I will al-
 ‘ ways maintain and proteſt throughout the
 ‘ whole Kingdom, and all the Provinces
 ‘ thereof, and never permit any thing to be
 ‘ done contrary to the Ordinances made for
 ‘ that purpoſe : And particularly the Eccle-
 ‘ ſiaſtical Laws enacted in the Years 1655 and
 ‘ 1686. ſhall not only by me be confirm’d and
 ‘ ratified, but if the States think fit, ſhall be
 ‘ improv’d and amended. But whereas the Mi-
 ‘ niſters of Foreign Princes and States reſiding
 ‘ here, cannot for many Reaſons be deny’d
 ‘ the Exerciſe of their Religion, they may cele-
 ‘ brate Divine Service in their own Houſes
 ‘ after the manner of their reſpective Coun-
 ‘ tries. And as many Foreigners reſide here
 ‘ on Account of Trade, to theſe it ſeems al-

so necessary to permit that they perform what their Divine Service requires in their own Houses, while they do it in private, and give no just cause of Offence; but they ought not to hold either publick or private Conventicles, or keep School-Masters in their Houses for the Instruction of their Children in any but the establish'd Religion: And in case any of their Children will become Burghers, they ought by the Statutes to be educated in the same Evangelical Doctrine. And should any one of what Religion soever, be found within this Kingdom, or the Dominions thereto belonging, who vilifies the Word of God, and our Holy Worship, he shall without Mercy be depriv'd of his Employment, as a Blasphemer, and suffer Death, or other exemplary Punishment suitable to his Offence.

In the Election of the Archbishop, all the Consistories of the Kingdom shall have their Votes: But in the appointing the other Bishops and Superintendents, Three of these who have the most Votes in the Diocese shall be propos'd to us; that with the Advice of the *Kingdom's Council*, or Senate, so important a Charge may be conferr'd on him, who by his Learning and thorough Knowledge of our Holy Evangelical Religion, and his exemplary Life, shall best deserve to be promoted to it. In the providing the Vicaridges and other Ecclesiastical Benefices the Method in use before the Year 1680. shall be restor'd; yet so as the Bishops and Consistories shall not encroach on the *Liberties of the Parishioners*. I will also maintain and protect all Churches, Universities, Schools and Hospitals in the Enjoyment of
their

‘ their Revenues. And in like manner secure
 ‘ to the Bishops, Superintendents, Professors
 ‘ Deans, Pastors, and the rest of the Clergy
 ‘ their just Maintenance, that they may be
 ‘ able to discharge their Duties as becomes
 ‘ them.

Before these late Regulations, the King had in a manner the Disposal of all Ecclesiastical Preferments, and was indeed, as Arbitrary in the Church as in the State ; but at present he does not seem to have the Disposal of a single Bishoprick, or Superintendency without the Concurrence of the Senate ; and as for his Patronage of private Churches, that also seems to be taken from him, and transferr’d to the Parishioners : It being in the abovesaid Instrument provided, *That the Bishops and Consistories shall not encroach on their Liberties.*

So Jealous are the *Swedes* of their Ecclesiastical Constitution ; that they have enacted, That if any Subject of that Kingdom shall change his Religion (*Lutheranism*) he shall be banish’d, and forfeit his Right of Inheritance both for himself and his Descendants. But the Clergy, as a late Writer observes, are not intrusted with the sole Administration of their Ecclesiastical Laws, or the transacting any matters of Consequence without the Concurrence of the Civil Power : Many Causes which were formerly tried in the Ecclesiastical Courts are now transferr’d to the Temporal : They cannot so much as pronounce the Sentence of Excommunication without the Consent of the King and Senate. And indeed, the remaining under that Sentence is so Pœnal, namely, perpetual Banishment, that a more than ordinary Deliberation ought to be us’d before it is

is pronounc'd. But from hence it appears, that their Bishops and Superintendents have very little of their original Authority left them. I shall defer giving a particular *Rélation* of the *Lutheran Church* till I come to *Germany*, where *Luther* first establish'd it ; only observe here, that they are far from allowing a Toleration to any other Denomination of *Christians* : And like our Sectaries at home, seem to look upon the Members of every Institution but their own, to be in a State of Damnation.

In *Sweden* the Nobility and Gentry seem to apply themselves more to the Study of Arms Their Learning than Arts, and to condemn an Academical Education. It is the meanest of the People generally, who resort to their Universities to qualifie themselves for Holy Orders. The Law also is a contemptible Profession, only taken up by those who know not how otherwise to subsist ; nor does it require any great Talents to be Master of it, their Laws being few and plain, and no Niceties in their Pleadings, as with us, and all the Process in their own Language.

Their Universities, particularly that of *Upsal*, have not been establish'd much above Universities three hundred Years.

The Chancellor is always one of the Prime Ministers of State, and the Archbishop of *Upsal* is perpetual Vice Chancellor. The Rector is chosen out of the Professors, of whom there are about twenty, who have a Salary of an hundred and fifty Pounds *per Ann.* each. The Number of Students in this University is usually about seven or eight hundred, fifty of whom are maintain'd by the Crown, as some others were formerly by Persons of Quality. Many of the rest subsist on the Charity they

colle& in the Diocese they belong to, during their Vacations, which they receive in Corn, dry'd Flesh or Fish, Butter, &c. and husband to the best Advantage ; for Commons they have none, or any Batteries to go to ; and some few there are who are maintain'd by their Relations. They do not live Collegiately, but in private Houses, neither do they wear Gowns, or observe any manner of Discipline. The University of *Abo* in *Finland* is after the same Model, but not so numerous, and there is a third at *Lunden* in *Schonen*.

There is a Free School in every Diocese, where Lads are fitted for the University, and others where they are only taught to read and write, and sing their Prayers, as all the *Lutherans* do. It was no disagreeable Entertainment to the *English* to hear the *Lutheran* Regiments at their Devotions in the Armies in *Flanders* in the late War, every private Soldier singing his part, as if he had been bred a Chorister.

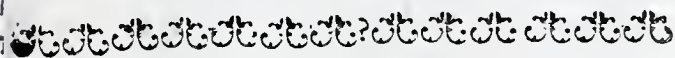
Antiqui-
ties.

There are few Monuments of Antiquity to be found in *Sweden*, Doctor *Robinson* observes, except those Funeral Inscriptions which are every where to be met with, rudely cut on Rocks or rough hewn Stone, in the antient *Gothick* Language, and *Runick* Character, without any Dates to them. The most valuable Piece they have, is a Translation of the Evangelists into the *Gothick* Language, done about twelve or thirteen hundred Years ago, by a Bishop of the *Goths* in *Thrace*, of which they have the sole Manuscript Copy. *Gustavus Adolphus* was the first great Patron of Learning they had in this Country after the Reformation, by whom the Universities, which had suffer'd pretty much by the Alteration of Religion,

Religion.

ligion, were restor'd and endow'd with tolerable Salaries, for Professors in most Sciences; and these were augmented by his Daughter, Queen *Christina*, who by the Fame of her Learning and her kind Reception of learned Men, invited several ingenious Foreigners to settle in *Sweden*, who left there good Proofs of their Abilities, and raised in the *Suedes* an Emulation of imitating them: But their best Performances are observ'd to be in the History, Antiquities and antient Laws of their Country.

The Language of *Sweden* is a Dialect of the antient *Teutonick*, not very different from that of the *Germans* or *Danes*, but harsher than either; but the Quality speak and write chiefly *French* or *High Dutch*.



CH A P. X.

Treats of their Marriages, their Children, and the Share they have in the Estates of their Parents; with some Account of their Funerals.

AS there can be no such thing as clandestine Marriages in *Sweden*, their Laws requiring that the Banns be duely publish'd in the Parish Church, and no License, or Dispensation from their Bishops can supply the Place of it. The Parents have their Children entirely in their Power to dispose of them as they see fit, and consequently Wealth is the principal thing regarded in these Matches. People of Condition of either Sex, are seldom married before thirty, because their Parents perhaps, cannot very well afford to make Settlements

ments suitable to their Quality in this poor Country, where they live notwithstanding, to the very Height of their Income. Or having themselves experienc'd the Cares and Inconveniencies of a married Life, they may possibly in Compassion to their Children defer their entering into that State. Among the common People it seems the Wife hath much the worst of it, being put to all the Drudgery without Doors as well as within, and looks upon herself to be rather in the Condition of a Servant, than a Companion to her Lord, and consequently there is very little wrangling or disputing between them. Nature and Custom, says a late Writer, enclines the Wife to be obedient. Contention only proceeds from an impertinent Attempt to rival our Superiours in Power, and invert the Order of Nature; and there can never be Peace in that Family where the Prerogatives of the Husband, and the Measure of the Wife's Obedience are not in some Measure settled. It were better living in a Family where the Woman is Governour, in the Opinion of some, than where there is a perpetual Strife between the Husband and Wife for Empire; not that the Wife shou'd be reduc'd to a State of Slavery, as among the *Swedish* and *German* Peasants, but let the Woman be all Obedience, and the Man will of Consequence be all Love and Complaisance. There are not possibly many Instances to the contrary; though I confess there are some Brutes whom the wisest Conduct cannot win upon.

Inheritance
divided
among the
Children.

By the Laws of *Sweden* the Father's Estate, whether hereditary or acquir'd, is divided among his Children, every Son having an equal Share in it, and a Daughter half as much as

a Son; nor can the Father give a greater Share to one than to another, unless he obtain the Concurrence of a Court of Law, on representing the Undutifulness of any of his Children; only one tenth of his acquir'd Possessions he may bequeath to which of his Children he sees fit.

There is nothing the World seems more generally agreed in, than the making pompous and expensive Funerals, and therefore no wonder that the *Swedes*, who are extremely vain in furnishing out magnificent Equipages beyond their Fortunes on all Occasions, equal their Neighbours at least in the Preparations for this Solemnity; but their Feasting and Entertainments at these Times, in which they exceed all Bounds, is an additional Expence that few Nations besides are acquainted with. And that they may have the more time to provide every thing they imagine necessary to express their Respect to their Deceas'd Friend, or publish their own Vanity, it is not unusual to convey the Corps to some Vault in or near the Church, where they lie several Months, and sometimes Years, rather than disgrace their Family by an ordinary Funeral. But this was more the Practice of the last Age than the present, the *Swedes* being much reduced by the heavy Taxes laid upon them in the late Reigns, and the Resumption of great part of their Estates by the Crown on one Pretence or other.



C H A P. XI.

Treats of the Arms and Titles of the King of Sweden; of the present Royal Family, and of the Interest of that Kingdom in Relation to the Succession of the Crown, and to the Neighbouring Powers.

Arms of
Sweden.

THE King of Sweden bears quarterly in the first and fourth *Azure* three Crowns *Or*, two in Chief and one in Base, for *Swedeland*. In the second and third *Barry Argent* and *Azure* a Lion *Or* crown'd *Gules*, for *Finland*. Over all quarterly in the first and fourth *Sable*, a Lion *Or* Crown'd, Arm'd and Languid *Gules*, for the *Palatinate of the Rhine*. In the second and third, Lozenges bendwise of twenty one Pieces *Argent* and *Azure*, for *Bavaria*. For the Crest a Crown Royal, adorn'd with eight Flowers, and clos'd by as many Demicircles terminating in a *Mond Or*. The Supporters are two Lions *Or* crown'd of the same; and the Motto *Dominus Protector meus*.

The
King's
Titles.

This Prince is stil'd, King of the *Goths* and *Vandals*; Great Prince of *Finland*; Duke of *Schonen*, *Esthen*, *Liefland*, *Carelia*, *Ingria*, *Bremen*, *Verden*, *Stetin*, *Pomeren*, *Cassuben*, and *Sclavonia*; Prince of *Rugen*; Lord of *Ingermanland* and *Wismar*; Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*; Duke of *Bavaria*, *Cleves* and *Berghen*.

The present
Royal Family.

The present King is *Frederick*, hereditary Prince of *Hesse Cassel*, Son of *Charles* Landgrave of *Hesse Cassel*, and of *Mary Amelia*, Sister to *Casimir*, late Duke of *Courland*. He was born the 28th of *April*, 1676, and married to a
Daughter

Daughter of the Elector of *Brandenburgh*, Anno 1699, who is since dead. He afterwards married the Princess *Ulrica Eleonora*, second Daughter of *Charles* the XI. King of Sweden, Sister to the then King *Charles* XII. Anno 1715. King *Charles* XII. being unmarried, was kill'd at the Siege of *Fredrickshall* in December 1718, whereupon the States of Sweden elected the Princess *Ulrica Eleonora* Queen, on Condition she would transact nothing of Consequence without the Advice and Consent of the Senate and States. And at her Majesty's Instance, and on Condition of her Resignation, they afterwards elected the hereditary Prince of *Hesse*, her Royal Consort, to be their King on the like Conditions, in the Year 1720, who is now reigning. But *Charles* the XI. as hath been intimated already, left two Daughters besides his Son *Charles* 12 the last King, viz. *Hedwig Sophia*, born in 1681, married to *Frederick* late Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, by whom she had Issue *Charles Frederick*, the present Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, born the 29th of April, 1700, and married to the Princess *Mary* (eldest Daughter of the late *Czar* of *Moscovy*, by his second Wife the present Empress of *Russia*) on the first of June 1725. 2. The Princess *Ulrica Eleonora* above mention'd, who was born in 1688, and married to the hereditary Prince of *Hesse* in the Year 1715. The Duke of *Holstein*, as hath been already observ'd, was pass'd by in the two last Elections of the States, notwithstanding his proceeding from the eldest Daughter of *Charles* the XI, and first the Princess of *Hesse*, the youngest Daughter of *Charles* XI. was chosen Queen; and upon her Resignation of the Crown, her Consort, the hereditary Prince of *Hesse*, obtain'd the Crown to

Duke of
Holstein
next in
Blood
to the
Crown.

Difficulties of the Swedes as to the Succession.

be settled upon him and his Children by the Queen, to the Exclusion of the Duke of *Holstein*. But as the King and Queen have been married about twelve Years, and she is now near forty Years of Age, and never likely to have Children, the Duke of *Holstein* is labouring to be declar'd Heir to the Crown of *Sweden* after their Deaths, and hath had the Title of Royal Highness conferr'd on him by the States of that Kingdom. But the *Swedes* seem to lie under very great Difficulties in Relation to the Succession. As they had in the last Reigns complimented the Crown with their Share in the Legislature, and indeed surrender'd up all their Liberties and Properties to the Disposal of their Princes, of which they had sufficiently felt the ill Consequences, they took the Advantage of the sudden Death of *Charles* the XII. without Issue, and treating with his youngest Sister the Princess *Ulrica*, whose Consort the Prince of *Hesse*, was General of the *Swedish* Army, they agreed to confer the Crown upon her, and exclude the Duke of *Holstein*, the Son of her eldest Sister, upon Condition, not only to restore them to their Liberties and their Share in the Legislature, but to invest them with most of the Royal Prerogatives, and submit indeed to enjoy little more than the Name of Queen : And this the Princess appear'd ready to accept of ; as the Prince her Husband hath done since ; esteeming a Crown, how limited soever, preferable to a private Condition : For the Duke of *Holstein* had then a very great Party in *Sweden*, and the Advantage of being of the elder House. And had not the Princess and her Consort readily submitted to all the Demands of the States, they might in all Probability, have cast their Eyes upon the Duke.

And

And however his Royal Highness may at present politickly conceal his Resentment at the *Swedes* preferring a Younger Branch of the Royal Family before him, it is not to be suppos'd he is perfectly satisfied under that *Dilgrace*; and consequently the Authors of it cannot but be under Apprehensions of his frowning upon them if he should happen to succeed to the Crown. Nor can the Kingdom in general expect that he should tamely submit to all the Conditions imposed on his present Majesty, considering the Duke of *Holstein's* Prior Claim, and the powerful Support he may reasonably hope for from *Moskovy*, being married to the eldest Daughter of *Russia*: And should they treat with him and endeavour to procure Conditions from him while they have it in their Power; yet, if we consider how little regard Princes generally have to any Terms which are thus extorted from them when they are in a Condition of procuring better, very little Dependance can be had on any Concessions he shall make, especially since the States themselves have set him an Example: For they, notwithstanding they had often solemnly consented to confer the Legislative and Executive Powers on their former Kings, made no scruple of resuming their antient Authority again when they had an Opportunity, on the Death of *Charles XII.* Which is an Alteration so lately made, that they can make no Pretence to a Prescription in their Favour. On the other Hand, should the *Swedes* reject the Duke of *Holstein*, and elect another King, they may soon expect to see the *Moscovites* renew their Ravages in the *Bothnick Gulph*; nor will it be in the Power of their Allies to prevent it; for here

Interest
of Sweden
as to
Russia.

Sweden may be attack'd by the *Russian* Gallies and great Ships are of no use in that Sea ; or the *Moscovites* may penetrate into their Country by Land, as it lies perfectly open to them on the side of *Finland*. It cannot therefore be the Interest of *Sweden* to provoke the *Russian* now they have taught them the Art of War and their Numbers, as well as Discipline render them so very formidable. We are reduc'd therefore, say the *Swedes*, to this Dilemma, either we must admit the Duke of *Holstein* to the Throne, who will be supported by all the Power of *Russia*, and our Liberties by that means again become precarious : Or we must enter into a War with a powerful implacable Enemy, who hath so very lately brought us to the brink of Destruction ; and who is the more to be dreaded, in that the Duke of *Holstein* will always have a considerable Party in our Bowels ready to close with him.

Poland.

As to *Poland*, *Sweden* hath now nothing to fear from thence : *Livonia*, about which they us'd to contend, being at present in the Possession of the *Moscovites* ; and they remain separated from that Kingdom by the *Baltic Sea*. But it may be the Interest of *Sweden* to entertain a good Correspondence with *Poland* in case of a Rupture with *Russia* : This being the only *Christian* Power that can give them any considerable Assistance against that Empire by Land.

Denmark.

As *Sweden* also is separated from the Dominions of *Denmark*, either by the *Baltick*, or the Mountains of *Norway*, they have no Reason to apprehend any Danger from that side, especially since the *Dane* singly hath no

bee

been a Match for this Kingdom for many Years by Land. In the last War, indeed, *Denmark* and her Confederates, *Russia*, *Poland*, *Prussia*, &c. did after a long expensive War, make themselves Masters of all the *Swedish* Dominions in *Germany*; *Wismar*, *Bremen* and *Verden* falling to the share of his *Danish* Majesty; but he was so conscious of his Unability to maintain that Conquest, that he wisely transferr'd his Interest in *Bremen* and *Verden* to the Sovereign of *Hanover*, for a Consideration I could never learn the Value of; but probably the Purchase may be dear enough by that time 'tis well secur'd. *Sweden*, 'tis true, in her great Distress, when the *Russians* were burning and plundering their Country, even to the Gates of *Stockholm*, of two Evils chose the least; and in Consideration of the Protection of the *British* Fleet against that dreadful Enemy, the late *Czar*, did confirm King *George* in the Possession of *Bremen* and *Verden*; but with what Reluctance may be easily gather'd from that Expression of the Queen of *Sweden's* in her Representation of the Affairs of that Nation to the States a little after that Cession. *The Hanover Plenipotentiary*, Colonel *Bassewits* (says that Princess) insisted on the Duties of *Bremen* and *Verden's* being yielded up to his Master; which I could not then consent to: However, the Negotiations were continued with him, in order, by all possible Means, to obtain better Conditions. But the *Czar* continued to ravage their Country with that Fury, that they were oblig'd at length to accept of King *George's* Proposals, and dismember them from the *Swedish* Dominions; and about the same time yielded *Stetin*, and great

Prussia

part of *Swedish Pomerania* to the King of *Prussia*, and amongst the rest, the two Islands of *Usedom* and *Wollin*, at the Mouth of the *Oder*; which I apprehended had been restor'd to *Sweden*, till I met with the Treaty between *Sweden* and *Prussia*; and this was an Error I must desire the Reader to correct. As to the City of *Wismar* in the Dutchy of *Mecklenburgh*, possess'd many Years by the *Swedes*: This the *Danes* restor'd to the *Swedes* on Condition the Fortifications should be ras'd. So that there remains nothing for the *Danes* and *Swedes* now to contend about in *Germany*. But should the *Swedes* recover their former Strength or be assist'd by any potent Allies, whether they would not attempt to regain their Territories thus yielded to *Prussia* and *Hanover* in *Germany*, as well as *Livonia*, &c. which they transferr'd upon Force to the *Czar*, may be made a Question: For Princes seldom want a Pretence, and their Subjects never seem more ready to assist them, than in the Recovery of such Dominions as have been dismembred from their Country by Force; being in this Case much of the Opinion of private People who think no length of time can ever extinguish their Right to what they have been forcibly depriv'd of; and that no Compact which the Necessity of their Affairs oblig'd them to enter into, ought to be kept any longer than they want an Opportunity to do themselves Justice.

But to proceed, next to the *Russian*, the King of *Prussia* seems to be the most capable of giving Uneasiness to the *Swede*; as he is a powerful Prince, and his Dominions contiguous to their *German Territories*. The Town

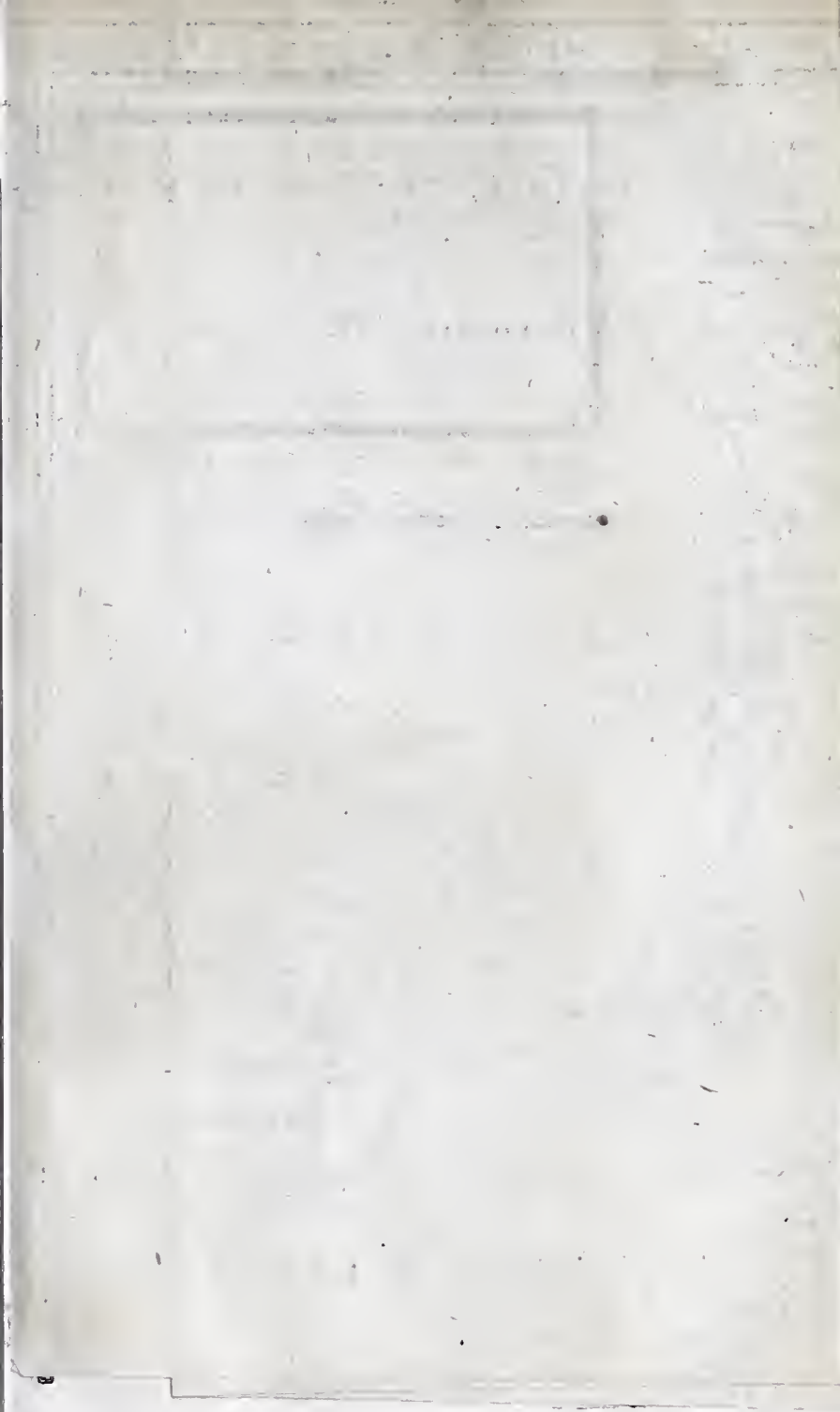
of *Pomerania* have been long the Subject of Contention between these two States; and the King of *Prussia* taking Advantage of the Distress the *Swedes* were in the last War, extorted the important City of *Stetin* from them, with the Islands of *Usedom* and *Wollin*, at the Mouth of the *Oder*, as above related: And if ever there happens to be a War between those two Powers again, the King of *Prussia* will no doubt endeavour to reduce the rest of *Pomerania* under his Obedience, as his Ancestors have formerly done. Nor will the *Swede* be less inclinable to attempt the Recovery of what he had lost on that side, if ever he have an Opportunity: But in the low Condition *Sweden* is at present, it will be their Interest to cultivate a Friendship with *Prussia*, as well as the rest of their Neighbours.

France hath ever courted the Alliance of *Sweden*, and paid large Pensions to that Crown to keep that Kingdom firm to its Interest: *Sweden* being able to make a considerable Diversion in her Favour when ever *France* happens to be engaged with the Empire. Upon Account of Trade, there is not any Nation deserves so well of *Sweden* as the *English*, who return them Money for their Manufactures, and take off a very great Quantity; whereas in their Commerce with *France*, the Balance of Trade is against them. But the *English* are now become Necessary to the *Swede* upon another Account, and that is to protect them against the Fleet of *Russia*, which the *Dutch* will be cautious of doing, for fear of interrupting their Trade to *Russia*. We do not seem altogether so careful in that Point, tho' it be certainly

certainly of equal Consequence to us. But if we should not take the Part of the *Swede*, he may some time or other demand the Restoration of *Bremen* and *Verden*.

The Conclusion of Sweden.





58

57

56

55

54

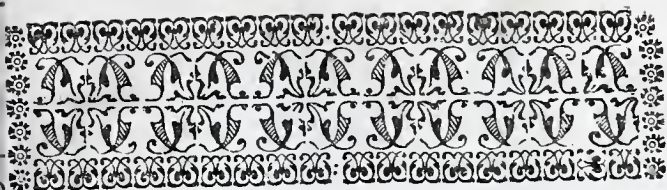
Part of NORWAY
vleker
The Naze

DENMARK
Agreeable to Modern History. By
Herman Moll Geographer.
1727

0 10 20 30 40 50 60
English Miles

THE GERMAN or NORTH SEA





THE
PRESENT STATE
OF
Denmark and Norway.

CHAP. I.

Describes the Situation, Extent and Boundaries of the Kingdoms of Denmark and Norway; and treats also of the Air and Seasons; and of their Seas, Lakes and Rivers.



DENMARK and Norway are at present under the Dominion of one Prince, tho' formerly they were distinct Kingdoms. *Denmark*, including the Dutchy of *Holstein*, in which the King of *Denmark* hath an undivided Moiety, is bounded by the Sea call'd the *Categate*, (or Entrance into the *Baltick*) towards the North, by the *Baltick Sea* towards the East, by the River *Elbe*, which divides it from the Dutchy of *Bremen* towards the South West, and by the Dutchy of *Saxlawenburgh* towards the South East; extending from fifty four Degrees thirty Minutes, to fifty eight Degrees twenty

Denmark,
the Situation and
Boundaries.

Olden-
burgh.

twenty Minutes North Latitude. *Oldenburgh* and *Delmenhorst*, two Counties in *Germany* separated from the rest of *Denmark* by the *Dutchy of Bremen*, belonging also to the King of *Denmark*.

Norway,
the Situation and
Boundaries.

The Kingdom of *Norway* is separated from *Denmark* by the Sea call'd the *Categate*; and extends from fifty nine to seventy one Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude; being bounded by the Ocean towards the North and West, by the Kingdom of *Sweden* and *Swedish Lapland* towards the East; and by the Sea call'd the *Categate* towards the South; and is a long narrow Country, enclosed by the Ocean on one side, and those high barren Mountains, call'd *Dofrine-Hills*, cover'd with Snow, which divide it from *Sweden* on the other; and is about eight hundred Miles in length, and an hundred broad.

The Air
of Den-
mark.

The Air of *Denmark* is not good, especially near *Copenhagen*, which is suppos'd to proceed from its low Situation, and the frequent Fogs which arise there. The Air of *Sleswick* and *Holstein* is better than that in the Northern Parts, and the Country more desirable upon many Accounts, as will appear hereafter. The same Observations are made as to the Seasons in *Denmark* as in *Sweden*, namely, that the Year is divided into Winter and Summer; that they have no time they can call their Spring, and very seldom any that may be denominated their Autumn; but they proceed immediatly from extreme Cold to an extremity of Heat; and in the latter end of the Year, from violent Hot Weather to excessive Cold. During the Months of *June*, *July* and *August* the Heat is more intense than in *England*, and the Nights not near so cool

And Sea-
sons.



as with us, tho' they are so many Degrees to the Northward of *England*: Nor do they enjoy a clear Sun-Shine during these Heats, but thick Vapours all the time interpose between them and the Sun; and indeed it is a general Observation, that the Heaven is much brighter and more serene far within the Continent than it is near the Sea Coasts; nor is the Air less clear and Pleasant at Sea a great distance from Land, than it is in the middle of the Continent: But this Observation holds more generally true within or near the Tropicks, than it does either in the Northern or Southern Latitudes. The Air of *Norway* is excessive Cold, but especially within the Polar Circle; which part of it is inhabited by the *Laplanders*. The more Southerly part of the Country differs but little from *Sweden*, from which it is separated only by the *Dofrine Hills*.

The Seas bordering upon the *Danish Dominions* are 1. The *German Ocean*, which flows between *Great Britain* on the West, and *Denmark* and *Norway* on the East. 2. The *Northern*, or *Frozen Ocean*. 3. The *Baltick*, in which is that famous Strait, or Passage into the *East Sea*, call'd the *Ore Sund*, or generally the *Sound* of the *Baltick*: it hath been already observ'd that there are no Tides in it, and that its Waters are fresher than the Ocean, supposed to be occasion'd by the Rivers which run into it, and the little Communication it hath with the Ocean. The Strait call'd the *Sound*, is about four Miles over, having the Island of *Zealand* on the West, and the Continent of *Schonen* on the East: In the narrowest part of the Strait on *Zeland* or *Denmark* side stands the Town of *Elfenore*, and the

Seas;

The
Sound.

strong Castle of *Cronenburgh*, before which there is a tolerable Road for Shipping. On the side of *Schonen*, in the Possession of the *Swedes*, is the Town of *Helsingburgh*, and a small Battery of Guns, which serves only to salute the Ships which pass by it: Between these two Places sail all the Shipping which are Bound to the *Baltick*. The *Danes*, however, only receive the Toll of all Merchant Men who pass by; tho' the *Swedes* are Masters of the opposite Shore by virtue of the Treaty concluded when they yielded up *Schonen* to them; but the *Swedes* themselves were exempted from paying any Duties till the last Peace, in the Year 1721. when the Affairs of the *Swedes* were in a very desperate Condition, and then they condescended to pay a Toll to *Denmark*, as other Nations did, on their passing the *Sound*. This Duty which the *Danes* claim, a late Writer supposes to have arisen from the mutual Consent of the Merchants trading to the East Country, who willingly, at first, contributed a small Sum towards the maintaining of Light-Houses on the Coast for their own Security, and the Direction of their Pilots; and thereupon this Passage of the *Sound* came to be more us'd than that of either *Belt* to the Westward of the Isle of *Zealand*, which in other respects seem to be as Commodious as this. From some such beginning, the *Danes* proceeded to demand larger Sums; and that as their undoubted Right, being then Masters of both Shoars. The Emperor *Charles V.* in the behalf of his Subjects of the Seventeen Provinces of the Low Countries, came to an Agreement at *Spire* with the *Dane*, That every Ship of two hundred Tuns and under, passing the *Sound* should pay two Rose Nobles going

going and coming from the *Baltick*; and every Ship above that Burthen three Nobles : which Agreement remain'd in Force until the United Provinces rebell'd against the *Spaniard*, and set up for Independent States ; after which the *Danes* oblig'd the *Dutch* to pay extravagant Rates. But the *Hollanders* and *Lubeckers* opposing these Exactions about the Year 1600, oblig'd the *Danes* to accept of more moderate Duties. The first solemn Treaty the *Dutch*, as Independent States, made with the *Danes* concerning this Toll, was in the Year 1647. wherein they agreed to pay about twenty five Pounds for every Ship of two hundred Tuns passing the Straits for forty Years, at the Expiration of which the first Agreement with the Emperor at *Spire* was to be in Force : And the *English* in their Treaties with *Denmark* agreed to pay Toll as the *Dutch* and other Nations in Friendship with them did. As to the Grand Fleets of *England* and *Holland*, they ask no Permission of the *Dane* to pass the *Sound*, he never yet having been in a Condition to dispute it with them ; for the Castles on the Shoars are at too great a Distance to prevent it ; and if they had not a Squadron of Men of War ready to compel the Merchant to pay the Toll, he might pass by unhurt. Besides, the Passage call'd the *Great Belt* between the Islands of *Zeland* and *Funen* is much wider ; and that of the *Lesser Belt*, between *Funen* and the Continent of *Jutland* is not impracticable. It is observable also, that the *Dane* is Master but of one side of the *Sound* at this Day, *Schonen* being under the Dominion of the *Swede* ; so that he seems to have as little Reason to demand a Toll here at present as the *English*

have to demand a Duty of all Ships which pass the Straits of *Dover*, or *Gibraltar*. Nor have the *English* and *Dutch* ever entirely yielded up this Point to the *Dane*; for tho' they consented to pay a small Toll on Merchandize, they never suffer their Ships to be detain'd, or search'd; but the *Danes* are oblig'd to take the Master's Word for the Quality and Quantity of his Lading.

Lakes and Rivers:

There are a great Number of fine Lakes in *Denmark* abounding in Fish, but not one Navigable River either in *Zeland*, or *Jutland*, till we come as far South as *Holstein*, where indeed we find the *Elbe*, the *Eyder*, the *Tron*, and the *Trave*. As to the *Elbe*, this is properly a River of *Germany*, and therefore the Course of it will be shewn in treating of that Country. The *Eyder* rises in the Dutchy of *Holstein*, and running Westward falls into the *German Ocean*, near *Tonninghen*, being first united with the *Tron*, which rises in the Dutchy of *Sleswick*. The River *Trave* rises in the Dutchy of *Holstein*, and running Eastward passes by the City of *Lubeck*, below which it falls into the *Baltick*. The Rivers *Glammon* and *Drammen*, which rise in the Province of *Drontheim* and fall into the *Baltick*, are the most considerable Rivers in *Norway*. There are scarce any Ports in *Norway* towards the *German Ocean*, except *Bergen* and *Drontheim*; frightful Rocks lying all along the Shoars, no Sea is look'd upon to be more dangerous in a Storm. In the *Baltick* indeed the *Danes* have several good Ports, particularly that of *Copenhagen*, esteem'd one of the finest in *Europe*.



C H A P. II.

Treats of the Provinces into which Denmark and Norway are divided; and of their chief Towns and Buildings.

THE first Grand Division I shall make of the Dominions of *Denmark*, are 1. *Denmark*, properly so call'd, consisting of the Islands of *Zeland* and *Funen*, and some other Islands lying about them, and of that part of the Continent call'd *North Jutland*. 2. The Dutchy of *Sleswick*, or *South Jutland*. 3. The Dutchy of *Holstein*. 4. The German Provinces of *Oldenburgh* and *Delmonhurst*. 5. The Kingdom of *Norway*. And 6. *Iceland* and the other Islands lying in the Northern Seas.

Grand Division of *Denmark*.

1. *Denmark*, properly so call'd, of which the Island of *Zeland* may well be reckon'd the principal part, on account of the capital City of *Copenhagen*, situate upon it. *Zeland* is about sixty Leagues in Circumference, extending from North to South, but is not much longer than it is broad. It is divided from *Schonen* by the *Sound*, from the Island of *Funen* by the Strait call'd the *Great Belt*, and by a very narrow Channel from the Islands of *Mona*, *Falster* and *Laland*, which lie to the Southward of it. There are no navigable Rivers in the Island, and very few Brooks big enough to turn a Mill. The Country is in some Places prettily diversified with little Hills, Woods and Lakes. The chief Town of this Island, and of the whole Kingdom, is *Copenhagen*, situate

Zeland.

Copenhagen.

tuate in the Latitude of 56 Degrees odd Minutes, and in 12 Degrees 53 Minutes Longitude, reckoning from the Meridian of *London*. It stands in a Plain on the Western Side of the *Sound*, not above five Leagues distant from *Schonen*, and is computed to be about the Bigness of *Bristol*, but the Walls enclose a great deal more Ground than is built upon. Its Situation at the Entrance of the *Baltick* must have been very advantageous on Account of Trade, if it had not been a fortified Place, and awed continually by a numerous Garrison ; for it is a general Observation, that Soldiers and Merchants never agree together. The Trading Part of the World wisely withdraw from Military Men, who they know cannot want Pretences to insult and oppress them ; especially in Arbitrary Governments, where the Military Power is always superiour to the Civil. The Town is strong, standing in the Middle of a Marshy Ground, and fortified after the modern Way. The Harbour is surrounded by the Fortifications, and the Entrance of it so narrow, that not above one Ship can pass in at a time ; and a Citadel on one Side, and a Block-house on the other, commands the Entrance of it. A Wooden Gallery runs round the whole, close to which every Ship hath its Station, and the Port will contain near five hundred Sail, where they may ride, says a late Author, secure from Storms and Enemies. But I find the *English* and *Dutch* Squadrons threatned them with a Bombardment, when the *Dane* so basely fell upon the young King of *Sweden* in the Beginning of the last War. These Seas in some Winters are so hard frozen, that the *Swedes* have march'd over a great Army, with a Train of Artillery, and actually besieg'd *Copenhagen*.

Copenhagen without the Assistance of a Fleet ; and as the Town stands in a Morass, cut through with Dykes, possibly it may be more easily approach'd in the Winter Season during the Frosts, than in the Summer. The Buildings are generally mean, and even the King's Palace the worst and most inconvenient in *Europe*, 'tis said, several Noblemen and Great Officers of State in *Copenhagen* have better. The King hath however a Pleasure-House and Gardens at the other End of the Town, which are very much admir'd. The Citadel, the Exchange, the Arsenal and the Observatory, are most taken Notice of among their publick Buildings. And here is seen the Celestial Globe, six Foot Diameter, made by the famous *Tycho Brahe*. The Market-Place is spacious, one of the greatest Ornaments of the Town ; and the Streets are broad. There are about ten Churches in it, the chief whereof are the Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Mary*, wherein their Kings are usually crown'd, being adorn'd with a fine lofty Spire, cover'd with Copper. The Churches dedicated to the Holy Ghost and St. *Nicholas* also are magnificent Buildings. Here is an University and an Academy establish'd for all Martial Exercises, Modern Languages and the Matheticks. *Copenhagen* cannot boast much of its Antiquity: A Castle was first built on the Island by Archbishop *Wide*, about the Year 1168, for a Protection against the Pirates which then swarm'd in those Seas ; whereupon many People resorted thither, and it soon grew up into a pretty large Town. It was an Archbishoprick, but the *Danes*, like the *Swedes*, have educ'd their Bishops to Superintendents, and stripp'd them of great part of their Episcopal Power. The little Island of *Finak*, join'd to

Copenhagen.

Copenhagen by a Bridge, is mighty well furnish'd with all Sorts of Fowl, Venison, Corn, Milch Cattle, Garden Stuff, &c. from whence the Markets of *Copenhagen* are supply'd. This Island was some Ages since given to a Colony of North *Hollanders*, who were invited hither to make Butter and Cheefe for the Court; and their Posterity, 'tis said, still retain the Habit, Language, and Customs of their Ancestors; with their Cleanliness and Industry, refusing to intermarry or mix with the *Danes*, and have Privileges conferr'd on them, on account of their being useful to the Court.

Elsinore.

About fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Copenhagen* stands 2. *Elsinore*, or *Helsingor*, on the narrowest part of the Strait call'd the *Sound*, opposite to the Castle of *Helsingburgh*, on the *Schonen* Shoar. About a Quarter of a Mile from

Cronenburg
Castle.

Elsinore, stands the strong Castle of *Cronenburg*, by some stil'd impregnable, but was nevertheless taken by *Charles Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, in the Year 1658, and restor'd to the *Dane* again by Treaty in the Year 1660. 3. *Fredericksburgh*, twelve Miles to the Westward of

Fredericks-
burg.

Elsinore, much admir'd by the *Danes* for a fine Palace and Castle the King of *Denmark* has there situate in the Middle of a Lake; but Foreigners who have seen the Palaces of *France* and *Italy*, have not the same Opinion of it as the Natives. 4. *Roschild*, situate at the Bottom of a Gulph of the Sea, twenty Miles to the Westward of *Copenhagen*, this was antiently the Metropolis of *Denmark*, but declin'd upon the Building of *Copenhagen*, and is now an inconsiderable Town. The Cathedral is a large old Building, in which are many of the Tombs of the antient *Danish* Kings, some of them very magnificent. 5. *Holbeck*, is situate at the Bot-

tom

tom of a Bay, eighteen Miles to the Westward of *Roschild*. 6. *Kallenburg*, situate near the Sea, fifty Miles to the Westward of *Copenhagen*, said to have a pretty good Trade. 7. *Koge*, a small Town, situate on the *Sound*, about twenty Miles to the Southward of *Copenhagen*. 8. *Prestoe*, a Place of some Trade on the South Coast of *Zeland*, over against the Island of *Mona*. 9. *Warienburgh*, ten Miles South West of *Prestoe*, over against the Island of *Falster*. 10. *Skelskor*, situate on the West Side of *Zeland*, on the Shore of the *Great Belt*, thirty Miles North West of *Warienburgh*. 11. *Korsør*, about ten Miles to the Northward of *Skelskor*, on a Promontory over against *Funen*, which forms a good Harbour on the North Side of it. Besides these Towns, which are none of them larger than an *English* Market Town, it is computed there are upwards of three hundred Villages in the Island.

Funen, the next most considerable Island of *Denmark*, hath *Samsøe* on the North. The *Great Belt*, a Strait of twenty Miles over, which separates it from *Zeland*, on the East. The *Baltick Sea* on the South. And the *Lesser Belt*, a Strait which divides it from the Continent of *Jutland*, on the West; being about fifty Miles long, and forty broad: The chief Town whereof is *Odensee*, situate about the Middle of the Island, and fourscore Miles to the Westward of the City of *Copenhagen*. It was formerly a flourishing little City, but now very much upon the Decline. There are besides *Odensee*, 2. The Town of *Nuburgh* or *Nyburgh*, situate on the East side of the Island, over against *Korsør* in *Zeland*. Here is a good Harbour for Ships of the largest Burthen. The Town is fortified, and was once the Residence

of the antient *Danish* Kings. 3. *Schwinburg*, situate on the South East part of the Island, esteem'd a pretty good Harbour. Here the *Swedes* pass'd over the Ice in the Year 1658, when they march'd to besiege *Copenhagen*. 4. *Middlefar*, situate on the West Side of *Funen*, being the common Passage to *Kolding* in *Jutland*. And here the King of *Sweden* march'd his Army over the Ice, when he invaded this Island in the Year 1658. Besides these Towns there are about two hundred and fifty Villages in the Island of *Funen*.

Langland.

The Island of *Langland*, so call'd from its long narrow Form, lies on the South East of *Funen*, and is about thirty Miles long, and eight broad, the chief Town whereof is *Rudkoping*, situate on the West Side of it, over against *Schwinburg* in *Funen*, besides which place there are about sixteen Villages in the Island.

Laland.

The Island of *Laland* hath *Zeland* on the North, *Falster* on the East, the *Baltick* on the South, and *Langland* on the West: And is about thirty Miles long and twenty broad, the chief Town whereof is *Nankow*, situate on the West Side of the Island.

Falster.

The Island of *Falster* hath *Zeland* on the North, from whence it is separated by a narrow Strait, *Mona* on the North-east, and *Laland* on the West, being about twenty Miles long and sixteen broad, the chief Towns whereof are 1. *Nykopping*, situate on the West Side of the Island, and *Sudkoping*, situate towards the North, being the common Passage to *Zeland*.

Mona.

The Island of *Mona* hath *Zeland* on the North West, and *Falster* on the South West, from whence it is separated by a narrow Strait, and is about fifteen Miles long and five broad.

The

The Island of *Arroe* lies to the Southward of *Funen*, the chief place in which is *Koping* on the South part of the Island. *Arroe.*

Bornholm lies the most to the Eastward of any of the *Danish* Islands, and is about twenty Miles to the Southward of the Continent of *Schonen*. It is about twenty Miles long, and twelve broad, and hath been the Subject of much Contention between the *Swedes* and *Danes*. The chief Towns are *Sandwick* on the North Coast, *Rottum* on the South West part of the Island, and *Nexia* a little Distance from *Rottum*. *Bornholm.*

To the Northward of *Funen*, and East of the Continent of *Jutland*, lies the Island of *Samsøe*; and further to the Northward, the Islands of *Anhout* and *Lessow*, besides which, there are a vast Number of lesser Islands in these Seas. To the Island of *Funen* only, 'tis said, there belong no less than ninety other habitable Islands. *Samsøe.*
Anhout.
Lessow.

From *Zeland* and *Funen*, and the rest of the *Danish* Islands in the *Baltick*, I proceed to the Province of *North Jutland*, the Country of the antient *Jutes*, Confederates of the *Angles*, who made a Conquest of *South Britain*, and gave it the Name of their own Country, *Angleland* or *England*. These People were by the *Romans* call'd *Cimbri*, and their Country with *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, or the Peninsula of the *Cimbri*. *North Jutland* is bounded by the *German Ocean* on the West and North, by the *Baltick* on the East, and by the *Dutchy of Sleswick* on the South, and is usually divided into four Governments, or *Stifts Amps*, viz. The Governments of *Alburg*, *Wiburg*, *Arnhu-*
sen and *Ripen*. *North Jut-*
land.

Alburg.

1. *Alburg* or *Aalburg*, sometimes call'd *Burg-law*, is the extreme North part of *Jutland*, having the *German Ocean* on the North and West, the *Baltick* on the East, and the Governments of *Wiburg* and *Ripen* on the South, from which it is separated by the *Sinus*, or Bay called the *Lymford*, which flows from the *Baltick Sea* quite cross the upper part of *Jutland*, almost tot he *German Ocean*. The Length of this Province from the North East to the South West, is about an hundred and thirty Miles, but the Breadth is scarce forty Miles in the broadest part. The chief Towns whereof are 1. *Aalburg*, situate on the *Lymford Gulph*, about fifteen Miles to the Westward of the *Baltick Sea*. 2. *Nikoping*, situate in the Island of *Mors*, which is form'd by the *Lymford*, on the West Side of *Jutland*. 3. *Tysled*, a little to the Northward of *Mors Island*, near the *Lymford Bay*. 5. *Seeby*, a Port Town on the *Baltick*, about twenty Miles to the Northward of *Alburg*. 6. *Schagen*, situate on the most Northern Promontory of *Jutland*, a Place of good Trade, where the Shipping frequently touches in their Voyage to or from the *Baltick*. In this Province are contain'd thirteen Bailiwicks, and upwards of an hundred and sixty Parishes.

Wiburg.

2. The Government of *Wiburg*, an Inland Province, bounded by *Alburg* on the North, by *Arhusen* towards the East, and by *Ripen* towards the West and South, being of a circular Figure, and about forty Miles over. It is water'd by some large Lakes which have a Communication with the *Lymford*, among which there is one named *Otho Sund*, or *Otho's Bay*, suppos'd to have receiv'd it's Name from the Emperor *Otho*, who made an Excursion
this

this Way, and throwing his Javelin into it, according to Tradition, gave it the Name it still retains. The chief Towns of this Province are, 1. *Wiburg*, which stands about the Middle of the Province of *North Jutland*, thirty five Miles to the Southward of *Alburg*. It was a Bishop's See, and is still a Town of some Figure, here being a Court of Justice which receives Appeals from other inferiour Courts. It is suppos'd to have taken its Name from the Pyrates who us'd to resort thither, and were call'd Wigs. 3. *Harkier*, about twenty five Miles to the Northward of *Wiburg*. And 4. *Nybye*, about ten Miles to the North East of *Wiburg*, remarkable for the great Fairs of fine Horses, which are annually held at these Places. In this Province are reckon'd up 16 Bailywicks, and upwards of 200 Parishes.

3. *Arhusen* is bounded by *Wiburg* on the North, by that part of the *Baltick Sea* call'd *Arhusen* the *Little Belt*, towards the East and South, and by *Ripen* towards the West; and is about sixty Miles long and thirty broad, the chief Towns whereof are 1. *Aarhus*, or *Aarhusen*, near the *Baltick Sea*, 30 Miles N. of the Island of *Funen*, it was a Bishop's See, and is still a handsome Town. The Cathedral still remaining is look'd upon as a curious Piece of Architecture, and in it are several fine Tombs of the antient Bishops and Noblemen of the Country. 2. *Randers*, situate about fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Aarhus*, near the *Baltick*, and is a Town of good Trade, besides which there are reckon'd to be upwards of three hundred Villages in this Province.

4. The Government of *Ripen*, having *Wiburg* on the North, *Aarhusen* towards the East, *Ripen* the Dutchy of *Sleswick* on the South, and the German

German Ocean towards the West. The chief Towns whereof are 1. *Ripen*, situate on the River *Nipfick*, which dividing it self into three Branches, runs through the Town, dividing it into as many Parts, and a little below falls into the *German Ocean*, forming a pretty good Harbour. This is a Place of some Trade, and the Buildings tolerably good : It was a Bishop's See, and University ; and the Cathedral is a magnificent Structure, built of Hewn-Stone, and hath a Steeple of an extraordinary height, which serves as a Sea Mark to Mariners. 2. *Kolding*, situate on a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, over against *Funen* ; a Place of good Trade, where all Horses, Cattle, and other Merchandize are embark'd for *Holstein* and other Countries in the *Baltick* : And is defended by a strong Castle, named *Arusburg*. 3. *Fredericksodde*, a small Port, twenty Miles to the Eastward of *Kolding*, situate on the West side of the *Little Belt* ; Memorable for the King of *Sweden*'s passing over the Ice here with his Army in the Year 1658, when he invaded *Funen* and *Zeland*, and laid Siege to *Copenhagen*. 4. *Weil*, situate on a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, about fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Kolding* ; a little Compact trading City, and a very good Harbour. 5. *Warde*, situate about twenty Miles to the Northward of *Ripen*, near the Mouth of a River, which falls into the *German Ocean*. 6. *Ringkoping*, situate about thirty Miles to the Northward of *Warde*, on a Bay of the *German Sea*, esteem'd a pretty good Harbour.

Dutchy
of Sles-
wick.

I come next to the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, or *South Jutland*, bounded by *North Jutland* towards the North, by the *Baltick Sea* towards the East, by *Holstein* on the South, and the

German

German Ocean towards the West ; being about sixty Miles long, and five and forty broad, over which the King of *Denmark* and Duke of *Holstein* are joint Sovereigns : Only there are some Towns and Bailiages in which they have a separate and distinct Jurisdiction, particularly the Bailiages of *Hader*, *Sleben*, *Ripen*, *Flens-bury*, the Territory of *Christianpris*, the Isles of *Roem* and *Mandoo*, and the West side of the Island of *Foer* are subject to the King of *Denmark* solely. And the Bailiages of *Gottorp*, *Tonderen*, *Appeurade*, *Husem*, *Eyderstede* and *Lbon Closter*, the Isles of *Femerren*, *North Strand-sylt*, and the East side of *Foer* are subject to the Duke of *Holstein* solely. The chief Towns *Sleswick* are 1. *Sleswick*, or *Sleyswick*, situate on the *City*. River *Sley*, which a little lower falls into the *Baltick* ; and stands about twenty Miles North West of *Kiel*, a Town much resorted to formerly by Foreign Merchants, and was also a Bishop's See. A little to the Southward of this Town are the Ruins of the Wall which ran quite cross the Country from the *Baltick Sea* to the *German Ocean*, built by the *Danish Kings*, to prevent the Excursions of the *Saxons*. 2. *Gottorp*, where stands the Palace of the Dukes of *Holstein*, situate in the middle of a Lake, about fifteen Miles to the Westward of the City of *Sleswick* : This is esteem'd one of the finest Palaces of the North, and hath the Advantage also of good Gardens, adorn'd with Fountains, Cascades, and every thing that can render it a delightful Abode. Here is also a noble Library, and a fine Collection of Rarities, particularly a Copper Globe ten Feet and half Diameter, with a Sphere, wherein the Sun moves on the *Ecliptick*, and all the Heavenly Bodies are carried about by

by Wheels, turn'd by a Stream which falls from a neighbouring Mountain. But this Palace hath suffer'd much by the *Danes*, who in the Year 1688, without any Right, or even Pretence, seiz'd upon it, together with the Duke's Person and all the rest of his Dominions; which they were compell'd to restore again by the *English* and some other Powers, who interest'd themselves in the Duke's Quarrel in the Year 1689. 3. *Eckrenford*, or *Ekel-ford*, situate at the bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, in the Midway between *Sleswick* and *Kiel*, a good Harbour, and a Place of some Trade. 4. *Fredrickstat*, a little Town, situate on the River *Eyder*; about thirty Miles to the Westward of *Eckrenford*: Here it was that *Fredrick* Duke of *Holstein* endeavour'd to settle a Trade for *Persian* and *Indian* Silks; and to that purpose sent a famous Embassage to *Persia* in the last Century, which hath been frequently mention'd in this Work.

Tonninghen 5. *Tonninghen*, situate on the same River *Eyder*, about five Miles below *Fredrickstat*, and four or five Leagues from the *German Ocean*: This is one of the strongest Fortresses belonging to the Duke of *Holstein*. 6. *Husum*, situate on a Bay of the *German Ocean*, about ten Miles North of *Fredrickstat*. 7. *Flensburgh*, situate on a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, twenty Miles North East of *Husum*; a fine City, consisting of one large Street two Miles in length: The Harbour so convenient, that the Merchants lade and unlade their Ships at their own Doors. The Country between this Town and *Sleswick* is extremely Pleasant, and said to be the Seat of the antient *Angles* who invaded *Britain*, and communicated their Name to the South part of the Island. 8.

Luxburg,

Luxburg, or *Glucksburg*, a little Town with a Castle adjoining, from whence the Dukes of *Holstein Glucksburg* take their Title. 9. *Hadersleben*, a Sea Port Town, situate on a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*; thirty Miles to the Northward of *Flensburg*; a well built Town, the Streets large and uniform. 10. *Tunderen*, a Port Town, situate on the *German Ocean*; twenty five Miles to the Northward of *Husum*. 11. *Lohem Closter*, ten Miles to the Northward of *Tunderen*. 12. *Sunderburg*, situate on the South part of the Island of *Alsen* in the *Baltick Sea*, the usual Residence of the Dukes of *Holstein*; *Sunderburg* esteem'd a very strong Town. 13. *Nordburg*, situate on the North part of the Island, from whence the Duke of *Holstein Nordburg* takes his Title. There are several Islands also belonging to *Sleswick* in the *German Ocean*, particularly *Norstrand*, situate over against *Husum*, *Fora* and *Amron*, a little to the Northward of it; *Sylt*, over against *Tonderen*, with *Rom* and *Mindo* further Northward, and several other lesser Islands which lie about these already mention'd.

The Dutchy of *Holstein*, like that of *Sles-Dutchy* *Sleswick*, hath the King of *Denmark* as well as the Duke of *Holstein Gottorp* for its Sovereign, as will be shewn more at large when I come to treat of the Government of these Countries; I shall only observe here, that *Holstein* is a Fief of the Empire; and the King of *Denmark* on that Account deem'd a Prince of the Empire as well as the Duke of *Holstein*; whereas *Sleswick* is a Fief of the Crown of *Denmark*. The Dutchy of *Holstein* is bounded by the Dutchy of *Sleswick* on the North, by the Dutchy of *Saxlawenburg* and the *Baltick* towards the East, by the *Elbe* towards the South, and by the

German Ocean towards the West ; extending about an hundred Miles in length from East to West, and fifty Miles in breadth from North to South, within which Limits I include *Ditmarsh*, *Wagerland* and *Stormar*.

Holstein
Proper.

Kiel City.

1. *Holstein*, properly so call'd, consists chiefly of the Inland Parts of this Country, lying between *Stormar* and *Jutland*: The chief Towns whereof are 1. *Kiel Chilonum*, situate on a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, in the Latitude of fifty four Degrees odd Minutes, fifty Miles to the Northward of *Hamburg*, and forty North West of *Lubeck*: It hath a good Harbour defended by a Castle, and is a populous trading Town: Here also is held the annual Assembly of the States of *Holstein*, and they have a University founded in the Year 1669. 2. *Rensburg*, or *Reinolsburg*, situate on the River *Eyder*, by which it is almost surrounded, twenty Miles to the Westward of *Kiel*, esteem'd one of the strongest Fortresses in *Holstein*. 3. *Wylster*, a pretty well built Town, situate on a River which falls into the *Stoor*; about thirty Miles South West of *Rensburg*. 4. *Itzehoa*, a little to the Eastward of *Wylster*, situate on the River *Stoor*. And 5. *Newmunster*, which lies near the Mouth of the River *Stoor*.

Ditmarsh
Province.

2. The Province of *Ditmarsh*, is situate between *Holstein Proper* and the *German Ocean*; being bounded by the River *Elbe* towards the South, and the River *Eyder* towards the North: The chief Towns whereof are 1. *Meldorp*, a Town of good Trade, situate on the *German Ocean*, about thirty Miles South West of *Rensburg*. 2. *Lunden*, situate near the Mouth of the *Eyder*; fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Meldorp*.

3. The

3. The Province of *Stormar*, or *Stormarsh*, a low Stormar
Province. marshy Country, bounded by the River *Stoor*, which divides it from *Holstein* towards the N. and by the River *Elbe* and *Lunenburg* towards the S. a Country which very much resembles *Holland* in its Dykes and Banks made to keep out the Sea, but the Flats are nevertheless frequently overflow'd. They have great Advantages in Trade on Account of the Neighbourhood of the River *Elbe* and the City of *Hamburg*, which stands close to the Boundaries of this Province; but is one of the *Hans* Towns, and govern'd by its own Magistrates. The chief Altena. Towns whereof are 1. *Altena*, formerly a very pretty Town, within less than a Mile of *Hamburg*, belonging to the King of *Denmark*; which hath been mightily encouraged by the *Dane* in hopes that it might in time participate of the Trade and Wealth of *Hamburg*; but it was burnt to the Ground in the last War by the *Swedes*, and as some suggest, at the Instigation of the *Hamburgers*, who apprehended this Town might in time become their Rival in Commerce: However, *Altena* is now re-built, and more beautiful than ever.

2. *Gluckstat*, or *Gelucstat*, a small City, situate Gluckstat. on the *Elbe*, about thirty Miles North-West of *Hamburg*: It is esteem'd a Place of Strength, and here the *Dane* had form'd a Project, of compelling all Vessels to pay a Toll in their Passage to and from *Hamburg*; but the Subjects of so many considerable Powers were concern'd in this Imposition, that he hath not yet carried his Point: He hath however, often forc'd the *Hamburgers* to raise him considerable Sums, under Pretence that he hath a Right to the Dominion of that City; which was formerly, 'tis true, reckon'd to be within

the Dutchy of *Holstein*, but is now a free Imperial City 3. *Krempe*, or *Crempen*, about six Miles to the Northward of *Gluckstat*; and esteem'd a Place of some Strength. 4. *Pennyburgh*, situate about ten Miles to the Northward of *Hamburg*; and only remarkable for giving Name to the District about it.

Wageren
Province.

4. The Province of *Wageren*, or *Wagerland*, enclos'd on three sides by the *Baltick Sea* and the River *Trave*, and bounded by *Holstein Proper* towards the West; is about fifty Miles in length from North to South, and thirty in breadth from East to West. This Country had its Name from the *Wagrii*, a People of *Sclavonia*, who conquer'd this Country: The chief Towns whereof are 1. *Segeburgh*, situate on the River *Trave*, twelve Miles to the Westward of *Lubeck*. 2. *Odelsloe*, or *Oldelsloh*, a good Town, situate on the same River *Trave*, almost in the Midway between *Lubeck* and *Segeburg*. 3. *Ploen*, situate on a Lake, which almost surrounds it; and stands about twenty Miles to the Northward of *Segeburgh*: This Town gives a Title to one of the Branches of the House of *Holstein*, who are still'd Dukes of *Holstein Ploen*. 4. *Oldenburgh*, situate near the *Baltick* at the North East Part of this Country, and gives Name to a small District about it: It was formerly a Town of good Trade, but the Harbour being landed up, it is upon the decline at present.

Counties
of *Olden-*
burgh and
Delmon-
hurst in
Westphalia

The Counties of *Oldenburgh* and *Delmonhurst*, part of the *Danish Territories*, lie on the South side of the *Elbe*, and are separated from the rest, as hath been observ'd already, by the whole Dutchy of *Bremen*: They are bounded by a Bay of the *German Sea* towards the

North,

North, by the River *Weser* towards the East, by the Bishoprick of *Munster* towards the South, and by the County of *Embsen* on the West, and are together about sixty Miles in length, and thirty in breadth: The chief Town of *Delmonhurst* is of the same Name; and stands on the River *Delm*, about ten Miles to the Westward of *Bremen*. And the only considerable Town in *Oldenburgh* is also of the same Name as the County: It is situate on the River *Hund*, not far from the Place where it falls into the *Weser*, the River being Navigable as far as the Town, which makes it a Place of some Trade.

The Kingdom of *Norway* is separated from *Denmark* by the Sea call'd the *Cattigate*; and is usually divided into four Governments, or Diocefes, viz. 1. The Government of *Wardhuys*, or *Finmark*. 2. The Government of *Drontheim*. 3. The Government *Aggerhuys*. And 4. The Government of *Berghen*: After the Description of which, I shall enquire into the Islands dependent on *Norway*.

Norway
divided
into four
Govern-
ments.

1. The Government of *Wardhuys*, or *Finmark*, *Wardhuys*: or as it is frequently call'd the *Norwegian Lapland*, is bounded by the Ocean on the North and West, by *Moscovite Lapland* towards the East, and by *Swedish Lapland* towards the South. The only Place which can pretend to the Name of a Town in this Country, is *Wardhuys*, situate on an Island at the North East Part of it; about fifteen Miles in Circumference: Here is an old Castle, the Seat of the Governor, and a Street of Cottages; as to the rest of the *Norwegian Lapland*, there are only Cottages dispers'd here and there, seldom more than two or three together, as in *Swedish* and *Moscovite Lapland* already describ'd:

scrib'd: Only in the Island of *Maggero* (the Land whereof makes the *North Cape* well known to our Mariners who use the *Russian Trade*) and upon two or three other Islands near it, there are Churches built by the *Danes*, and the People make some Pretensions to Christianity; but the Natives, who live on the Continent, are generally Pagans still.

Drontheim.

2. The Government of *Drontheim*, bounded by *Wardhuys* on the North, by some Provinces of *Sweden*, and the *Swedish Lapland* towards the East, by the Province of *Berghen* on the South, and the Ocean towards the West; being about five hundred Miles in length, and one hundred in breadth. This Country was yielded to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Roschild* in the Year 1651. but restor'd to the *Danes* by the Treaty of *Copenhagen* in the Year 1660. The chief Towns are 1. *Drontheim*, or *Truntheim*, situate at the Mouth of the River *Nyder*, which falls into a Bay of the *Northern Ocean*, in sixty four Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, and ten Degrees of Longitude, reckoning from the Meridian of *London*; and was antiently named *Nidrosia*, from the River on which it stands. It was antiently an Archbishop's See, and the Seat of the Kings of *Norway*, but is at present a very mean Town: There is however a Castle still remaining, where the Governor resides. 2. *Opdale*, situate at the bottom of a narrow Bay, about ten Leagues West of the Ocean, and an hundred Miles South of *Drontheim*. 3. *Romsdale*, situate on another Bay, about thirty Miles to the Southward of *Opdale*. 4. *Solensdale*, standing on another Bay of the Ocean, thirty Miles South West of *Romsdale*.

3. The

3. The Government of *Aggerhuys*, bounded by *Drontheim* on the North, by *Sweden* towards the East, by the *Baltick* towards the South, and by the Province of *Berghen* towards the West; extending about two hundred Miles in length from North to South, and forty or fifty in breadth from East to West: The chief Towns whereof are 1. *Oslo*, or *Anslo*, generally call'd *Christiana* at present, situate at the bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, in the Latitude of sixty Degrees odd Minutes. Here are held the chief Courts of Justice for the Kingdom of *Norway*, and it was antiently a Bishop's See: In this City King *James VI.* of *Scotland* (afterwards *James I.* of *England*) solemniz'd his Nuptials with *Ann* the Daughter of *Frederick* King of *Denmark*, on the 23d of *February* 1589. This Princess, it seems, was driven back by contrary Winds on her attempting to come to *Scotland*: Whereupon King *James* went over to *Christiana* and married her there. 2. *Aggerhuys*, from whence the Province takes its Name, situate on the opposite side of the Bay on which *Christiana* stands, and but a few Leagues to the Westward of it; esteem'd a strong Fortrefs, having held out a long Siege against the *Swedes* in the Year 1567. 3. *Frederickstat*, situate at the Mouth of the River *Glammen*, which falls into another Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, about sixty Miles South East of *Christiana*. 4. *Frederickshall*, a strong Fortrefs on the Borders of *Sweden*, a little to the Eastward of *Frederickstat*; in the Siege whereof the late King of *Sweden* *Charles XII.* the greatest Heroe of the Age, was kill'd in the Year 1718. 5. *Salzburg*, situate on the River *Drammen*, about twenty Miles North West

West of *Christiana* ; which the neighbouring Copper and Iron Mines render a Town of pretty good Trade. 6. *Tonsburg*, situate on the Bay of *Obflo* to the Westward of *Christiana*.

7. *Hollen*, situate on the Lake *Nordsee*, fifteen Miles North West of *Tonsburg* ; remarkable for a Church hewn out of a Rock, and suppos'd to have been antiently a Heathen Temple. 8. *Hammer*, formerly a Bishop's See, eighty Miles to the Northward of *Christiana*.

Berghen.

4. The Province or Government of *Berghen*, containing the South-West Part of *Norway*, is bounded by *Drontheim* on the North, by *Aggerhuys* on the East, by the Entrance of the *Baltick* on the South, and by the Ocean on the West ; extending from the *Naze Point* in the South to the Latitude of sixty three North. The chief Towns whereof are 1. *Berghen*, an antient Sea Port on the *German Ocean* with a commodious Harbour, in the Latitude of 61 Degrees, being an hundred and forty Miles to the Northward of *Naze Point*. It is almost surrounded with Mountains, and is esteem'd one of the largest, as well as the most populous and trading Town in *Norway*, and is the Residence of the *Viceroy*. 2. *Eyde*, fifteen Miles to the Eastward of *Berghen*. 3. *Staffanger*, situate in a Peninsula on a Bay of the Ocean, ninety Miles to the Southward of *Berghen* ; a small City, once a Bishop's See, and hath an indifferent Harbour defended by a Castle.

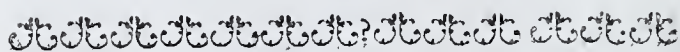
The
Islands

Iceland.

There are a great Number of Islands on the Coast of *Norway*, and others belonging to that Kingdom at a distance from it ; the most remarkable of which are, 1. *Iceland*, about an hundred and fifty Leagues to the Westward of the Coast of *Norway* : The Arctic Circle
passes

passes over the North Part of it; and the West end lies about ten Degrees to the Westward of *London*: It extends in length from West to East about three hundred Miles, and in breadth from North to South about an hundred and fifty: It is usually divided into four Provinces, viz. the East, West, North and South Provinces, so call'd from their respective Situations. Their Mountains are always cover'd with Snow, and three of them Vulcano's, which continually throw out Fire; the most remarkable of which is Mount *Hekla*, situate about the middle of the Southern Coast. The chief Towns of the Island are 1. *Skalholt*, situate in sixty six Degrees to the North-East of *Mount Hekla*. 2. *Hola*, situate on the North Coast. 3. *Beredit*, to the South-East. And 4. *Hammer*, to the South-West. The *Viceroy* resides at the Castle of *Bested*, which stands towards the South-West Part of the Island. Their Houses are built of Wood, and cover'd with the Bark of Trees, the Skins of Beasts, or Turf; and many of the Natives have no settled Habitation, but wander from place to place, like the *Laplanders*.

The Islands of *Fero* and *Schetland*, which lie between the North of *Scotland* and *Iceland*, *Fero and Schetland* are also subject to the King of *Denmark*, of which I shall give a further Account hereafter.



C H A P. III.

*Treats of the Persons and Habits of the Danes ;
of their Genius and Temper, Learning, Diet
and Diversions.*

Persons
of the
Danes.

THE Danes are generally tall and strong limb'd, their Features and Complexion good ; their Hair Fair, and for the most part Yellow, or Red ; and as few of the Men wear Wigs, they take a great deal of Pains in curling their Yellow Locks ; neither Men or Women are ashamed of Red Hair, or endeavour to conceal or change the Colour. They have gross *Dutch* Shapes, and their Mien is not to be admir'd : When we see the *Danish* Women sitting in a Coach, or Chair, some of them appear exquisitely Beautiful ; but if they rise and attempt to walk, they spoil all ; so sluggish is their Motion, and so gross their Shape, at a little distance one is troubled to know whether they move at all. Both Ladies and Gentlemen in Summer affect to imitate the *French* Dress ; but in Winter wrap themselves up in Furs, or Wool, like the rest of the Northern People. They are neat in their Linnen, changing it often, and affect to make a grand Appearance.

Habits.

Genius.

It is observ'd that *Denmark* seldom produces a bright Genius, they are neither good at Invention, or Imitation ; neither deeply learned, or exquisite Mechanics. The *Belle Lettres*, or Gentile Learning, they are perfect Strangers to, and few Books are found amongst them, except those of Con-

troversial

troverſial Religion. Mr. *Moleſworth*, in ſumming up their Character, ſays, he never knew a Country where the Minds of the People were more upon the Level, as we find none of extraordinary Parts, or Qualifications, or excellent in particular Studies, or Arts; ſo we ſee no Enthuſiaſts, Madmen, natural Fools, or whimſical People; but a certain equality of Underſtanding reigns among them; every one plods on in the ordinary beaten track of common Senſe, without deviating to the Right or Left. The common People, however, in general Write and Read, and their Clergy uſually talk *Latin*, but not in the greateſt Purity.

The Vices the Gentry are moſt addicted to, are Gluttony and Drunkenneſs: When they ſit down to eat and Drink they never know when to riſe; but the Debauch ſometimes continues whole Days and Nights. The firſt thing a Friend is preſented with at his coming into the Houſe is a Dram of Brandy; and they are no ſooner ſet down to Dinner, but every Man and every Woman hath a Glaſs ſet by their Plate, and on the propoſing a Health (which is not ſeldom while the Dinner laſts) all take off their Glaſſes together, and by that means make quick diſpatch: The Women indeed retire ſoon after Dinner; but the Men ſit it out till they have loſt that little Senſe which, Mr. *Moleſworth* obſerves, falls to their Share. And as the extreme Cold is aſſign'd as one Reaſon why the Northern People ſeldom excel in Arts, or Sciences, poſſibly hard Drinking may be aſſign'd for another. The Natives drown their Intellects and loſe their Memories; and what wonder is it, if in that Condition, one

Liquors. Race of drunken Loggerheads beget another ? The Liquors drunk by People of Condition, are Rhenish Wine, Cherry-Brandy, and all sorts of *French* Wine. The Men, says a late Writer, are fond of them, and the Fair Sex do not refuse them. The poor People indulge in bad Beer, and Spirits extracted from Malt or Barley. Nor do the *Norwegians*, who can afford it, come behind the *Danes*, as one who travell'd amongst them observes ; before we sat down, says he, Beer and Brandy were brought us ; after Supper all of us fell to smoaking and drinking till Morning : 'Tis the Custom of the Country, and both among the Gentry and common People, Lewdness and Intemperance pass for Wit and Ingenious Conversation.

Eating. As to their Eating, the Tables of People of Condition are cover'd with a variety of Dishes ; but I cannot however, says a late Traveller, commend their Entertainment ; for the Flesh, except Beef, and Veal, is generally Lean, and ill tasted ; as are their Tame Fowls, and Wild Ducks are scarce eatable. There are no Fallow Deer, Woodcocks, Pheasants, or Rabbits ; and Red Deer are the King's Game, and not to be purchas'd. Their Hares and their Bacon are excellent, as are their fresh Water Fish, particularly Carp, Perch and Craw Fish ; but Sea Fish is scarce, and ill tasted ; and in general, says the Gentleman already cited, their Cookery is not agreeable to an *English* Palate. The common People, whether in Town or Country, live upon coarse Rye Bread, Lean Salt Flesh, Stockfish or Roots, and very bad Cheese ; seldom tasting fresh

Character. Fish, and hardly ever Flesh. As to the Character of the common People, Mr. *Molesworth* adds,

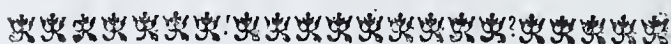
adds, they are poor mean spirited Wretches, far from the Warlike Temper of their Ancestors, inclin'd to gross Cheating, and intolerably jealous and suspicious that others have a Design upon them, which may be observ'd to be the case of most Men of moderate Understandings. In our Age, says *Puffendorf*, the *Danes* have lost much of their antient Glory, because the present Nobility and Gentry (which are all one here) are rather for enjoying their Revenues in Ease and Luxury, than for undergoing the Fatigues of War; and the Commonalty have follow'd their Example. The *Norwegians*, says the same Writer, undergo all Kinds of Hardship with more Courage and Vigour, to which they are inur'd by the Climate they live in; but the *Danes* ever since they have been Masters of *Norway*, have endeavour'd to depress, and keep that People under, by taking from them all Opportunities of exerting their Vigour, and there are now very few of the antient Nobility left in *Norway*.

The *Danes* travel either in Waggon, on Travel-
Horse-back, or in Sledges, and there is an ling.
Officer who regulates the Prices of Carriage, and punishes those who extort more than their due. If any Gentleman can procure a Warrant from the Court, when he is about to undertake a Journey, the Peasants or Farmers are oblig'd to furnish him with Horses and Carriages in every Country through which he passes, without being allow'd any thing for them, as they do for the King and the whole Court whenever they travel. The *Danes* have their Play-house, as well as the *English*, for their Diversion. They take their Pleasure also in their Sleds upon the Ice in Winter, but down right Drinking is their Favourite Recreation,

Diver-
sions.

Lodging.

ation, the most serious Affairs submit to this, *the great Business of the Day and Night*. Nor do the *Danes* indulge more in eating and drinking, than in their Lodging, for as there is no Place where there is greater Plenty of good Feather Beds, they lay one under and another over them all the Winter Season. But Lodgings for Strangers are procur'd with Difficulty in private Houses, and in publick Houses they are oblig'd to eat and sleep in common, no Man being allow'd a Room to himself, except his Quality be very great.



C H A P. IV.

Treats of the Nature of the Soil, and Produce of the several Countries under the Dominion of the King of Denmark; and of their Plants, Animals and Minerals: As also of their Trade and Manufactures.

Product
of Zeland.

THE Nature of the Soil in Dominions so far extended and disjoin'd by Seas as those of *Denmark* are, must be various. The Island of *Zeland*, wherein the capital City of *Copenhagen* stands, produces no Bread Corn; but Rye, of which most of their Bread is made. Of this they have enough for the Subsistence of the Inhabitants, but not any to export. There is not much Meadow or Pasture Ground in the Island, but what they have is a short sweet Feed. One fourth part of the Country is Forest, and reserv'd for the King's Game, such as Stags, Wild Boars, &c. which no Subject may meddle with, tho' he finds whole Herds of them devouring his Corn, and the Farmers

Farmers are generally great Sufferers by them. In a wet Season they have the greatest Plenty of Grain in *Zeland*. Their Cattle are small and lean in the Winter, kept within Doors seven or eight Months of the Year, and fed with Grains, Roots, Weeds, or such other Stuff as their Owners can provide; but in Summer when there is Grass to be had, their Beef is pretty good. Near *Copenhagen* the Sea is not well stor'd with Fish, which is supposed to proceed from the Water not being so salt as that in other Seas.

The Island of *Funen* produces Corn and Wood sufficient for the Natives, and they have Cattle for their Use, but affords nothing for Exportation, except some few Horses. *La-*
land is a plentiful Island, and produces all Sorts of Corn in abundance, particularly Wheat, with which it supplies *Copenhagen*, and all other Parts of *Denmark* in small Quantities, for Wheat is a very great Rarity among them. The Islands of *Falstria*, *Langland* and *Mona*, are reckon'd tolerably fruitful. *Arroe* and *Al-*
sen produce Annis Seeds, which they mix with their Bread, and use in the seasoning their Meat.

Produce of
Funen and
 the other
Baltick
 Islands.

Jutland hath Corn enough for the Natives, and abounds in Cattle. The Horses and Hogs of this Country are reckon'd very good; and Black Cattle are transported lean from hence to *Holland*, where they grow fat in a short time, of which the *Dutch* make a considerable Profit.

Produce
 of *Jutland*.

The Country of *Sleswick* hath a sufficient Quantity of Corn, Cattle and Horses, with which they furnish their Neighbours.

Of *Sleswick*

Holstein is a pleasant fruitful Country, said to resemble *England* in its Variety of Hills,
 Woods,

Of *Holstein*.

Woods, Rivers, Meadows and Corn Fields. *Stormar* and *Ditmarsh* lie low, near the *Elbe*, being a rich Soil, compar'd to *Holland* for its Fertility, and the Improvement of its Lands, which are sometimes over-flow'd however by the Neighbouring Ocean. *Oldenburg* also is a flat Country, much expos'd to Inundations, but abounds in Cattle, and hath a Breed of Horses much esteem'd for their being of a Cream Colour, tho' they have generally tender Feet, and last but a little while. *Delmenburst* is a more Hilly Country than *Oldenburgh*, and pretty well wooded.

Norway is a very barren Country, having neither Corn or Cattle sufficient for the Subsistence of the Inhabitants. A Ridge of Mountains run along it from South to North, dividing it from *Sweden*, besides which the Country is full of Hills and Rocks, which produce scarce any Food for Man or Beast, and are almost continually cover'd with Snow. As to *Lapland*, the most Northerly part of it, there seems to be no Difference between that and the *Swedish* and *Moscovite Laplands* already describ'd. Two things however *Norway* is valuable for, and that is their Fir Timber and their Mines. The *English* and *Dutch* are better supply'd with Masts, Planks, and Timber for Shipping here, than in any other Northern Country, and they export a good Quantity of Pitch and Tar. Their Mines are chiefly Iron, they have one of Silver and another of Copper, but not so valuable as those of *Sweden*. The Seas abound with all manner of Fish, and they export great Quantities of Stockfish, which are dry'd without Salt upon the Rocks, and are of great Service in victualling our Fleets for that Reason, the eating of Salt Meat for any time.

time, being constantly attended with the Scurvy.

The Islands of *Iceland*, *Fero* and *Shetland* are almost as barren as *Norway*, Corn will scarce grow in any of them, but they seem to abound more in Cattle. The Natives of *Iceland* feed on the Flesh of Bears, Wolves and Foxes, and Bread made of dry'd Fish ground to Powder. They barter their dry'd Fish, Tallow and Sulphur, for such other Commodities as they want. There are not either in the Islands of *Iceland* or *Fero* any Trees except Juniper Shrubs, Birch and Willows, but they have Roots and other Garden Stuff, which with their Fish, seems to be their greatest Support. There is one Writer however, namely, *Jacob Debes*, Provost of the Churches in the Islands of *Fero*; who says they have Barley in those Islands, and that it yields twenty or thirty fold Increase; but no other Corn will grow there he acknowledges. They have good Pastures also the same Writer assures us, and a tolerable Breed of Black Cattle, small siz'd Horses, and some Flocks of Sheep, and almost all manner of Roots and Herbs which grow in our Kitchen Gardens, and are pretty well stock'd with Fish and Fowl: but the cold is very severe in all these Islands, and their Winters dark, as may easily be gather'd from their Situation. Whatever some Writers may have said to their Advantage who have seen them in Summer, one who hath been bred in these Latitudes, possibly would choose to leave the World rather than enjoy a long Life in those wretched Islands; though Use indeed may have render'd those things in some measure easy to the Natives, which wou'd be intolerable to us.

The Produce of *Iceland*, *Fero*, &c.

Manu-
factures and
Trade.

As to the Manufactures of *Denmark* and *Norway*, there are none, except that of Iron, which is not very considerable. *Holstein* and *Sleswick* seem to be extremely well situated for a foreign Trade, lying both upon the *Baltick* and the Ocean, but I don't find they reap any Advantage from their Situation at present. *Hamburgh* on one Side, and *Lubeck* on the other, which border upon *Holstein*, are indeed Towns of great Trade, and the *Dane* sometimes pretends to the Sovereignty of *Hamburgh*, but by the Countenance of the Neighbouring Powers, that City hath hitherto preserv'd her Liberties. *Jutland* and *Holstein*, as hath been observ'd already, export nothing but Horses and Cattle. From *Norway* indeed there are great Quantities of Fir Timber for Masts, Yards and Planks exported, with Pitch, Tar, Stockfish, Oil and Iron, for which they receive ready Money chiefly of the *English*; but of the *French*, Wine, Brandy, Alamodes, and other Trifles to gratify their Vanity in return. The *Danes* have some inconsiderable Factories in the *West Indies*, and on the Coast of *Guinea*; and in the *East Indies* they are Masters of the City and Fort of *Tranquebar*, one of the most considerable Towns on the East Side of that Continent, and from hence are sent home some Years, two or three Ships richly laden. The *Dutch* have for many Years been endeavouring to undermine the *Danes* in the *East Indies*, and make themselves Masters of the Town of *Tranquebar*, inciting the Natives to lay Siege to it; and the *Danes* were in great Danger of losing it about five and twenty Years ago, but were generously supported by Mr. *Pitt*, the Governor of *Fort St. George*, with a Detachment of *English* Troops, whereby the treacherous *Hol-*

lander

lander was disappointed in his Designs, as was observ'd in the Description of *India*.

The *Dane* hath generally been reckon'd to abound more in Shipping than the *Swede*, the Reason whereof may be, that *Norway* furnishes *Denmark* with a considerable Number of hardy Seamen, who are us'd to fishing in those boisterous Seas; and the *Dutch* also maintain great Numbers of the *Norwegians* in their Fleets, where they live better than on their own barren Coasts, which makes this People apply themselves more to the Sea Service than any other Subjects of *Denmark*. And there is always a considerable Number of them ready to Man the Royal Navy, which brings me to enquire into the Strength and Forces of the *Danes* by Sea and Land.



C H A P. V.

Treats of the Forces of the King of Denmark by Sea and Land, and of his Revenues.

I Cannot enter upon this Head, without making the same Reflections an old Whig Writer does. It is certain, says he, that the levying Taxes on the Subject here, is not more grievous to them, than the Reason for which they are levy'd, namely, *The Maintenance of a great standing Army*. The People are made Contributors to their own Misery, and their Purfes drain'd in order to their Slavery. The *French King* hath taught the Princes and States of *Europe*, that pernicious Secret of making one Part of the People both the Bridle and Scourge of the other, which in time must

Forces:

needs end in a general Desolation. The King of *Denmark* hath been but too apt a Pupil to such a Master, and hath even endeavour'd to exceed his Original, raising more Men than his Country can maintain; and at present the Northern and *German* Princes, estimate their Wealth, not by the Fertility or Extent of their Territories, by the Trade or Industry of their People, but by the Numbers of Horse and Foot in their Service, for the Subsistence of which, after they have eaten up their own Subjects, they make use of an hundred cruel and unjust Pretences to ruin and encroach upon their Neighbours, and when they cannot accomplish such destructive Projects, foment Quarrels among other Princes, that they may have an Opportunity of letting out their Troops to cut Throats for Hire, which they are not able otherwise to maintain, and have found the Art of receiving Pay without interesting themselves in the Quarrel, which hath been the constant Practice of the *Danes*, and some Neighbouring Princes for many Years past. These Practices however, the same Writer well observes, have been very pernicious to *Denmark*; nor at the time those Reflections were made had the *Dane* succeeded in any of his Attempts, either against the City of *Hamburgh*, the Duke of *Holfstein*, or the *Swedes*; but in the last War indeed taking Advantage of the Distress the *Swedes* were reduc'd to by a potent Confederacy, the *Dane* made himself Master of *Bremen* and *Verden*, which he afterwards convey'd to the Sovereign of *Hanover*, and seiz'd also on the Duke of *Holfstein's* Territories in his Minority, which he still detains; but I'm mistaken if he does not one Day pay dearly for his ill gotten Acquisitions. But to proceed

proceed to the Account of the *Danish* Forces. It is computed that *Denmark*, *Holstein*, and *Oldenburg*, maintain 5450 Horse, 1500 Dragoons, and 17000 Foot. *Norway* maintains 1256 Horse and Dragoons, and 14300 Foot; making in all a Body of near forty thousand Men.

The Pay of a Captain of Foot is twenty Rix Dollars *per* Month; of a Lieutenant eleven Rix Dollars; and an Ensign ten. A Sergeant's Pay is six Rix Dollars *per* Month; and a Corporal's about four. A Drummer hath three Rix Dollars and eight Stivers (or Pence); and a common Soldier two Rix Dollars thirty two Stivers *per* Month. A Colonel, besides his Captains Pay, hath thirty Rix Dollars *per* Month; a Lieutenant Colonel twenty; and a Major ten. A common Soldier receives but seventeen Stivers, or Pence, Weekly, the rest is apply'd for Bread, Cloaths, &c. The Foot Soldiers, both Officers and private Men, are generally Foreigners of all Countries, *Poles*, *Germans*, *Swedes*, *Scotch*, &c. There are more Reasons than one for not employing too many of the Natives, but the principal Reason I take to be is, least they should shew too much Affection to their own Country, and not so readily obey the arbitrary Commands of their Officers. Officers of Horse receive no more Pay in time of Peace than those of the Foot. The Horse are usually Natives, and maintain'd every one by his Peasant or Farmer, who is oblig'd to provide him Man's Meat, and Horse Meat, and six Shillings *per* Month in Money, half of which the Colonel takes towards his Mounting; and in *Holstein* they have something better Pay than in *Denmark*. In *Norway* little Money is expended in paying the Forces, the private Soldiers being quarter'd on the Boors, and subsisted by them.

For the Sea Service three thousand Mariners are constantly maintain'd at *Copenhagen*, as well in Peace as War, having a Weekly Allowance of Salt Flesh, Stockfish, Meal, Grout, &c. for themselves and their Families, and about eight Rix Dollars a Year in Money; and there are several

A Rix
Dollar
about
4 s. 6 d.

Streets

Streets of little Houses or Barracks near the Walls where they live, and where their Wives and Children remain while they are at Sea. Their Business in time of Peace is to work in the King's Yards and Docks, which are over against the Palace in *Copenhagen*, where they take it by turns to serve in all laborious Works relating to the Shipping, and once a Year it is usual to equip a small Squadron of Men of War, and sail out of Harbour with them two or three Months, for exercising the Sailors. All the Officers of the Fleet are in constant Pay, as well in Peace as War, and the *Danes* compute that they can rig out thirty Sail of Men of War and upwards at a very short Warning.

Revenue. The Kings Revenue arises either 1. From the Duties paid by his own Subjects. 2. By the Customs paid by Foreigners. Or 3. By the Crown Lands, Fines and Confiscations.

The Taxes paid by his own Subjects are either fix'd or variable ; that is, the Prince in some Cases chooses to follow a certain Rule, establish'd by himself, which he may however alter if he sees fit ; and in others he frequently varies. Of the first Sort are the Duties of Import and Export, and the Excise, commonly call'd the Consumption, laid upon every thing that is eat or drank in the Kingdom. There are also Duties paid for Marriage Licenses, Duties of Stamp'd Paper, on which all Bargains, Contracts, Grants, Proceedings at Law, &c. are written, some of these Duties amounting to several Rix Dollars *per* Sheet. Duties are also laid upon Brewing, and all Malt and Corn that is ground in Mills. These Duties are certain, or seldom alter'd. The uncertain Duties are, 1. The Taxes on Land, which are not assessed by the Acre, but according to the annual Value of the Farm. 2. Poll Money, impos'd upon every one according to the Personal Estate he is suppos'd to have, which is sometimes levy'd twice a Year. 3. Money levy'd for erecting or repairing the Fortifications. 4. An occasional Tax rais'd only when a Daughter of *Denmark* is to be married, whose Portion is usually an hundred thousand
Crowns,

Crowns. 5. A Tax laid upon every Tradesman for the Liberty of exercising his Calling, and the Gain he is suppos'd to make by it, who is oblig'd also to quarter Soldiers. 6. The Ground Rents in all Cities and Towns, which the King taxes according to the Value of the House, or the Ability of the Possessor. In *Holstein* the Lands are tax'd according to the Number of the Ploughs, each Plough paying a certain Sum every Month. Not many Years since, a Valuation was made of all the Houses in the Cities and Towns in the King's Dominions, and all the Lands in the Country were admeasur'd, that the Crown might the better understand their Value, and the Ground Tax in the Cities and Towns was assess'd at four *per Cent.* of the whole Value the Ground was rated at if it was to be purchas'd. For Example, a Vintner, the Ground of whose House was valued at 900 Dollars, was oblig'd to pay thirty six Yearly for the Ground Tax, and the like Proportion was observ'd towards others in regard to their Houses and Professions. The most moderate Assessment of their Poll Tax is according to the following Proportion, *viz.* A Citizen worth eight or ten thousand Rix Dollars, pays four Rix Dollars for himself, four for his Wife two for every Child, and one for each Servant, and for every Horse one Rix Dollar. An Alehouse-Keeper pays one Rix Dollar for himself, another for his Wife, twenty four Stivers for every Child, and sixteen for every Servant. The Fortification Tax is usually laid high. A Merchant worth six or eight thousand Rix Dollars hath sometimes paid sixty eight Dollars, an ordinary Citizen eight or ten, and others in Proportion.

In *Norway* the Revenue arises from the Tenths or Tyths of Timber, Tar, Fish, and Oil, and the Customs arising thereby. And there is something arises from their Mines. The Excise and other Taxes laid on the Inhabitants are the same as in *Denmark*. The last and most inconsiderable Branch of the Revenue, arises from the Crown Lands and Confiscations, for notwithstanding the King's Demesns are daily encreas'd by confiscated Estates,

Estates; the King is sometimes the poorer for them, for he no sooner becomes possess'd of them, but the Labour ceasing which was formerly apply'd to cultivate and improve them, the Lands are frequently converted to Forest, and serve for little but his Majesty's Diversion; and if they do happen to yield any thing, they are usually conferr'd on some Courtiers, who have the Government of the King's Houses, or Care of his Demesns, Boors, and Tenants. Upon the whole, a late Writer hath computed the Revenues of the Crown of *Denmark* as follows, The Toll of the *Sound* at 65000 Rix Dollars *per Ann.* The rest of the Toll of *Denmark* farm'd at 165000 Rix Dollars. The Consumption, or Excise of *Copenhagen* farm'd at 140000 Rix Dollars. The Consumption of the rest of *Denmark* at 140000 Rix Dollars. The smaller Taxes of *Denmark* at 100000 Rix Dollars. Poll Tax, Fortification Tax, Ground Rents, and Land Tax at 100000 Rix Dollars. The whole Revenue of *Norway* at 700000 Rix Dollars. The Crown Lands, Confiscations, &c. at 200000. The Revenue of *Iceland* farm'd at 27000 Rix Dollars. *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorst* 8000. And the Toll upon the *Wefer* 5000 Rix Dollars. So that the whole Revenue of *Denmark* amounts to 2622000 Rix Dollars *per Ann.* But as the Gentleman who makes this Calculation observes, that the Poll Tax and Fortification Tax are never rais'd the same Year, upon which Account if we deduct 400000 Rix Dollars out of the Sum total, the whole Revenue will then amount to two millions two hundred twenty two thousand Rix Dollars, or about five hundred thousand Pounds of our Money, which in that part of the World will go near as far as three times that Sum with us, considering the Cheapness of Provision and Labour in *Denmark* and *Norway*.

It is computed also that there is not an hundredth Part of the ready Cash in *Denmark* as there is in *England*. Except a very few, none have any Cash by them, and the trading People through whose

Hands

Hands it runs, being Men of small Substance, and deeply in Debt to their Creditors in *Holland* and *Hamburgh*, no sooner receive any Cash but they pay it away again. The Nation also is perpetually drain'd of its Specie by the Officers of the Army, who are generally Foreigners, and if they lay up any thing, place it out in the Banks of other Countries, as many of their own Ministers of State do what ever they can scrape together. The Over-Balance of Trade also carries off a great deal, for they consume more Foreign Commodities, than their Product can countervail; all which would incline one to believe, that they have but little running Cash, and great part of this is Copper Money, as it is in *Sweden*, where if a Man has an ordinary Sum to receive, he must take a Wheelbarrow or two along with him to bring it home; and our Merchants who trade to *Sweden* and other Northern Countries inform me, that in their Accounts there is constantly a certain Sum set down for Wheelbarrows, which are us'd in transporting their Cash from Place to Place.

In the Conclusion of this Chapter it may not be Coins, improper to give some Account of their Coins, Weights Weights, and Measures, which are as follow. A and Mea- Rose Noble is eighteen Shillings Sterling. A fures. Ducat nine Shillings. A Rix Dollar four Shillings and six Pence. A Slet Dollar three Shillings. A Rix Mark about eleven Pence. And a Slet Mark nine Pence. And a Stiver a Penny. Besides which there are a great Variety of Copper Coins of a small Value. Another Gentleman informs us that a Rix Dollar is more than 4 s. 6 d. and but little short of a Crown. That a Stiver is more than an *English* Penny, and that forty eight Stivers make a Rix Dollar.

Their Weights are the Great and Small Hundred, the first 120 lb. and the other 112 lb. They have also their Lifpound, which is as much as our Stone, and their Shippound, which is twenty Lifpounds. An hundred Pound *English* does not make above ninety two *Danish* Pounds. A *Danish* Ell is about one Third less than the *English*.

C H A P. VI.

Treats of their Laws, and the Administration of Justice.

Courts of
Justice.

JUSTICE, according to a late Writer, is nowhere obtain'd with more Expedition and less Charge than in *Denmark*. The whole Body of their Laws is contain'd in one moderate Quarto Volume, written in their own Language, so plainly and intelligibly, that it scarce needs a Comment. They have three several Courts, the lowest, or most inferior Court, is stil'd the *Heredsfogds-Court*, and seems to resemble our Court *Leet*, or Hundred Court ; from these there lies an Appeal to the *Landstog* Court, or General Court of the Province ; and from thence to the Court call'd the *Highbright* in *Copenhagen*, compos'd of the Prime Nobility, where the King sometimes sits in Person. In Cities and Towns they have the *Bisoghts* Court, of which the Burgeesses are Judges ; from whence they may appeal immediately to the Court at *Copenhagen*, consisting of the Burghomaster and Common-Council of that City, without passing through the Provincial Court ; and from thence may by Appeal remove the Matter to the highest Court, above mention'd, which in any case where the Law is silent, or doubtful, hath a Power of determining the Matter Arbitrarily ; and through all these Courts the Suit is carried in the Space of thirteen Months : The whole Charges not amounting to more than ten or twelve Pounds Sterling. They have no publick Societies of Laywers, or Inns of Court, as with us ; but every one who hath a Mind to it takes up the Profession, which is scarce worth any Man's while, the Fees are so mean, and consequently Advocates are not very numerous, and there is the less Occasion for them ; because every Man is at Liberty to plead for himself, and manage his own Suit. The greatest Expence is in the stamp'd Paper the Proceedings

No Soci-
eties of
Lawyers.

Proceedings are written upon; and to prevent this being excessive, the Clerks, or Registers, are oblig'd to bring the whole Matter into a certain Number of Sheets, as well the Allegations and Proofs as the Sentence it self, which are all reduc'd to Writing. In the inferior Courts the Reasons on which every Sentence is grounded are express'd; but in the *Highbright* Court no Reason is given for the Determination. The Judges of the inferior Courts are not only punish'd for Misdemeanors committed in the Execution of their Office, but are oblig'd to make Satisfaction to the Party injur'd by an unjust Sentence. The Salaries of the Judges are paid out of the *Exchequer*: A Judge of the *Bysgod* Court hath not above five and twenty Pounds *per Ann.* and others proportionably, which would be a strong Temptation to them to accept a Bribe, if they were not kept in awe by the supreme Court, which can punish them arbitrarily. Our Merchants who have had Occasion to prosecute Suits in this Country, admire much the Equitableness of their Laws, and the readiness with which Justice is obtain'd. Causes which concern the publick Revenue are brought before the *Rent-Chamber*, which answers to our Court of *Exchequer*; and there are Colleges, or Courts for every Branch of Business almost as in *Sweden*.

The Severity exercised in Criminal Cases is suppos'd to be the Reason there are but few Offenders of that kind: The Crimes of High-Treason, House-breaking, or Robbery, are seldom heard of; and seditious Discourses and Practices are still more uncommon. These are what arbitrary Governments will never suffer; nor do they wait for manifest Proofs, the least Intimation, or Suggestion, is sufficient to convict a Man of Disaffection. The Punishment for capital Crimes is Beheading, which is usually done by one Stroke of a Sword.

There is an Officer, call'd the Polity-Master, in the City of *Copenhagen*, who takes care that good Orders are kept, composes Differences among Merchants, sees their Merchandize be good and saleable,

saleable, and that they do not interfere in one anothers Business : He causes the Streets, Bridges and Canals to be cleans'd and kept in good Repair, and free from Nuisances, or Obstructions ; he takes care that the City be supply'd with Bread, Corn, and at a moderate Price : Seizes prohibited Goods, and assists at the extinguishing Fires, for they do not suffer the Mob to rush in on these Occasions, but have certain Companies of Men, whose proper Business it is, and who are provided with Instruments for the Purpose, and no other Persons may approach within a certain distance of the Place : And because great Quantities of Fire are us'd in their Buildings, which is apt to take Fire, they suffer no Flambeaux or Torches to be carried in the Streets ; but make use of Lanthorns instead of them, which are fix'd on the top of a Staff. The Polity Master also is the general Game-Keeper, and Seizes Guns, Nets and Venison unlawfully taken : He also apprehends Night-Walkers, no Person being allow'd to be abroad after the beating of the Taptoo, and suppresses Riots and Tumults in the Streets.

There is nothing the *Danes* seem to be more apprehensive of than the Abuses of Apothecaries, in vending and applying their Drugs : They admit no Person therefore to exercise that Profession who is not appointed by the College of Physicians, and confirm'd by the King himself. In that great City of *Copenhagen* very lately they allow'd of but two, and one in every other great Town, which must certainly be too few if some of their Physicians did not prepare their own Medicines. The Apothecaries Shops are visited by the Magistrate and Physicians two or three times a Year, and the bad or decay'd Drugs taken and thrown away. The Prices of all Drugs are fix'd, from which they durst not vary : They keep exact Books of whatever they sell and to whom, that where an Accident happens they may know whom to charge it upon ; and for the same Reason they are oblig'd to file all the Prescriptions which are brought them.



CHAP. VII.

*Treats of their Religion, Universities, Marriages
and Funerals.*

THE antient Religion of *Denmark* was the same with that of *Sweden*; *Woden, Thor* and *Friga*, were their common Deities in the Pagan times, for a more particular Account of whom I refer the Reader to the Description of that Kingdom in the former Part of this Volume. The *Christian* Religion was planted in this Country, or at least in *Holstein*, the Southern Part of it, by *St. Augarius*, Bishop of *Bremen*, the general Apostle of that part of the World, about the Year 826. But the Conversion of the *Norwegians* did not happen till the eleventh or twelfth Century. The *Lutheran* Doctrine was first propagated here about the Year 1537, by *Bugenhage*, a *Pomeranian* Divine, who was encourag'd therein by King *Frederick I.* *Lutheranism* being the establish'd Religion, no other Denomination of *Christians* are tolerated here any more than in *Sweden*: This would be esteem'd as meer a persecuting Church by our Sectaries as ever the *Romish* was, and perhaps requires a stricter Conformity than any Catholick State in *Europe* at this Day; People not being allow'd to talk, or express themselves with any Freedom on the Points in Dispute, or to absent themselves from their Churches upon any Pretence.

Religion.

The Clergy here are countenanc'd and protected by the Government for that Vile Reason, as one of our own Whig Writers relates, because they are so mean spirited as to preach up Obedience to Superiors, as a Duty Incumbent on Mankind: but however that be, it is no wonder that the common People shew them all imaginable Respect, when they see them favour'd by the Magistrate, and not made the Jest of the Court and Gentry,

as they are in some other Protestant Countries, where their Doctrines accordingly have a suitable Weight with the Audience. But to proceed, The Clergy of *Denmark* do not intermeddle in any Civil Affairs, nor is it customary to retain Chaplains in the King's Court, or the Houses of the great Men, but some Page says Grace before his Majesty. In the Pulpit the Clergy are allow'd to take great Liberties, and will reprove a Sinner of Quality for his Vices publicly; nor is it taken amiss, as long as they do not intermeddle with Politicks. They are much admir'd by the common People for these Freedoms, who love to see their Superiours reprehended, and encourages them to be the more generous in their Benevolences to the Clergy, which is the best part of their Subsistence in Towns. Another thing which keeps up the Authority of the Clergy amongst them is, their retaining Confession, without which no Person is permitted to come to the Sacrament.

Instead of Bishops and Archbishops, the *Danes* and other *Lutheran* Churches have constituted Superintendents in their room, who retain almost as little of the Authority of Bishops as they do of the Name. One of these Gentlemen is extremely oblig'd if any one gives him the Title of Bishop, or his Lordship. There are ten of them in the Dominions of *Denmark*, viz. one in *Zeland*; one in *Funen*; four in *Jutland*, and four in *Norway*; but they have no Temporalties, hold no Ecclesiastical Courts, have no Cathedrals with Deans and Chapters, but are chiefly busied in animadverting on the Doctrines and Manners of the Clergy. The Superintendant, or Bishop of *Copenhagen* has a Stipend of two thousand Rix Dollars *per Ann.* every other Bishop, or Superintendant of *Denmark* fifteen hundred Rix Dollars; and those of *Norway* a thousand each. Their Habit is like other Clergymen's, viz. a plaited black Gown, with short Sleeves, a large stiff Ruff, and a round Trencher Cap. Their Clergy preach constantly without Book, and use abundance of Action. They observe their Holy Days as strictly

as Sundays ; and in time of Divine Service the Gates of *Copenhagen* are shut, and the Common People very constant at their Devotions : but the Service is no sooner over than they fall to all manner of Sports and Diversions. It is not uncommon to see a Clergyman sit down to Cards a little while after he is out of his Pulpit, when he has preach'd in that moving manner as to draw Tears from most of his Congregation, and perhaps bore them company himself. Penances imposed by the Confessor the People readily perform : Nor do they refrain coming to the Publick Worship, though they are sometimes enjoyn'd by the Priest for some Offence to stand at the Door like Criminals for Months together in time of Divine Service. One Lady particularly I knew, who for a little Levity in her Conduct was sentenc'd to come no farther than the Door, and yet constantly took her Place there every *Sunday* : which occasion'd my Enquiry into the Reason of her Humility, and brought to my Remembrance an Anabaptist Conventicle held above Stairs, where they us'd much the same Discipline. In that Congregation there happen'd to be a certain Wet Brother, who was frequently found disorder'd by Liquor, to the great scandal of the Godly, who was thereupon condemn'd to sit on the lowest Step going up to the Meeting-house, and every *Sunday* after he was to advance a Step higher, if he kept himself Sober the Week before : But this poor Sinner cou'd never reach the top, for usually when he'd got about half way up, he was kick'd down to the bottom again for a fresh Offence. Still the Man persist'd to visit his Conventicle every Lord's Day ; from whence we may naturally infer, that the Fellow imagin'd there was no other Way to Heaven, or he would not have continued of this Congregation after so many Mortifications : especially since there was no Civil Authority to compel him to frequent it.

There is at present but one University in *Denmark*, and that is at *Copenhagen* ; the Professors reside in the College, which is inferior to the worst in *Cambridge*, or *Oxford* ; and the Students Lodge in private Houses all over the Town, not eating together in common, as with us ; but are distinguish'd, however, from other People by their Black Cloaks : Many of their Divines, 'tis said, have had their Education in the *English* Universities, for which they are much valued in *Denmark*. The *Danes* are great Lovers of Organs in their Churches, and have some fine Hands, who entertain them half an Hour before or after Service. Whereas our Sectaries are all *Calvinists*, and confound-

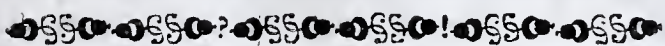
ed at the very Sound of a Musical Instrument, tho' they can entertain themselves Hours together with their own Inharmonious Voices and very bad Metre. There was not long since another University at *Sora*, about forty Miles from *Copenhagen*, where the Buildings much exceeded those of *Copenhagen*, but the Crown seizing on the Revenues, it is now deserted, and a Grammar School erected in the room of it. The Revenues, even of their Hospitals, as well as the Tyths and Church Lands were seiz'd on by the Government at the Reformation. Nor is there a Protestant Church in *Europe* which hath so much of their Revenues left them as *England*; tho' here indeed the Spoil was very great, and can never be absolutely justified, tho' in Mitigation of those Alienations, it is generally said, the Reformation could never have been effected out of a Principle of Conscience alone, if the Nobility and Gentry had not been permitted to share part of the Lands and Revenues of the Clergy: and this is look'd upon to be the strongest Barrier against the Return of *Pope-ry* in *Lutheran* Countries, as well as in our own.

Marriages.

The Marriage Ceremonies in *Lutheran* Countries do not differ much from those of our own; what is most taken Notice of by our People who visit them is, that the Parties are often contracted several Months and Years before the Marriage is solemniz'd in a Church, and are as free with one another as Man and Wife use to be. If they perform the Ceremony before the Woman is brought to Bed, all is well. This is no Offence, nor is it animadverted upon by their Ecclesiasticks: And in this the *Calvinists* agree with them. In *Holland* it is an ordinary thing to see six or seven Couple come to be married together, who have been long contracted, and liv'd in the most intimate Familiarity. But then their Espousals or Contracts are very solemn before Friends, and the Parties are not at Liberty to marry elsewhere. So that I look upon that first Contract to be in Reality the Marriage, and the other a Ceremony only to render it more publick before any Children are born, that there may be no dispute about their Legitimacy.

Funerals.

In their Funerals they are exceeding magnificent, as in *Sweden*; and like them, it is not uncommon to let a Corps lie uninterr'd some Years, in order to make Preparation to solemnize the Burial with the greater Pomp. The poor People are buried with less Ceremony, but even they are attended to their Graves by a Set of Mourners, hired by every Parish for that Purpose.



C H A P. VIII.

Treats of the antient and present Constitution of the Kingdom of Denmark.

FROM Sacred and Prophane History we learn that the Patriarchal Form of Government first prevail'd in every Nation under Heaven, and Children and Subjects were originally Names of the same import. When People multiplied, and there was a Necessity of sending out Colonies in order to subsist, the Senior of the Family sent abroad, was constituted Captain and Governour of them. Some of these Bodies thus detach'd, fix'd themselves in fruitful Countries, while others chose a wandring Life, and rambled from place to place with their Flocks and Herds for many Ages; and some even to this Day continue that Course of Life, particularly the *Tartars* and *Arabs*. These enjoy an undivided Property in all the Lands they graze their Cattle upon, and consequently never can have any Contests concerning the Boundaries of their particular Estates. The Western *Scythians*, who long continu'd this roving Life, were the Ancestors of the present Inhabitants of *Scandinavia*, viz. of the *Swedes*, *Goths*, *Norwegians* and *Danes*. When they first fix'd their Habitations does not appear; but 'tis evident in a Succession of Ages, when they had multiplied to such a Degree as to be straitned for Room, and their own barren Soil could no longer subsist them, they encroach'd upon their Southern Neighbours, whom they had

The first Governments Patriarchal.

The antient Inhabitants of Scandinavia, Scythians.

The Ori-
ginal of
King-
doms.

observ'd to live in greater Ease and Plenty, in settled Habitations, and succeeded them in their Seats, parting with their Tents for more substantial Dwellings. Every Tribe or Family had their certain Bounds, and their Chief or Leader govern'd them as Prince and Father of his People. These little Principalities afterwards grew up into Kingdoms by various means; by Inter-Marriages, or Compacts for mutual Defence; or perhaps by pure Force. Some powerful Chief, invaded his weaker Neighbours, and reduc'd many of these little Monarchies into one. Where these Governments were founded on Compact, it is very natural to suppose the several Families should stipulate to enjoy their antient Liberties, and either take it by turns to give a Sovereign to the whole Kingdom, or refer it to the Election of a Majority. But where a State arose by Conquest, it is no less rational to believe that the conquer'd Royalties suffer'd in their Liberties and Properties; that the Lands were divided among the Creatures of the new Sovereign, and their former Lords reduc'd to the Condition of private Men, or perhaps made a Sacrifice to Reasons of State, if not upon the first Defeat or Submission, yet as soon after as the Conqueror cou'd meet with a favourable Pretence to deprive them of their Territories, and introduce his own Dependants. For Sovereigns never think themselves secure while they have left an injur'd Prince any Possibility of resuming his antient Rights.

The
Northern
Crown
some-
times He-
reditary,
and at
others
Elective.

But whatever was the antient Government of the Kingdoms of *Scandinavia*, we find that at some times these Monarchies were Hereditary, and at others Elective; sometimes the three Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden* were

were under one Sovereign; but oftner under three distinct Princes, who sometimes acted arbitrarily, and at other times were so restrain'd by the Nobility and Clergy, that they enjoy'd little more than the Name of Kings. Every Bishop and every Nobleman had his Castles and strong Towns, and set up for an Independancy, and the Commonalty were their Vassals, only summon'd to inform their Lords of the Condition of their Farms, and the Value of their Effects, in order to be tax'd, and bear the Burthens of the State, to which the Nobility and Gentry refus'd to contribute any thing. The Executive Power was lodg'd in the Senate or Privy Council of the Kingdom, of whom the King seem'd to be no more than President in time of Peace, and in War was General of the Army, but disabled to raise either Men or Money, to make Peace or War, without the Consent of his Subjects.

This was the State of *Denmark* in the Year 1660, when the Commonalty, wearied out with Taxes, and other Oppressions of the Nobility and Gentry, which they had suffer'd during a long War, chose to throw themselves into the Arms of their Prince, and assist him in suppressing the exorbitant Power of their Superiours, concluding that their Condition cou'd not be worse under the Government of a single Person than under such a Variety of Tyrants; and with them the Clergy, who constituted another of the Estates, but had as little Share in the Administration as the Commonalty, readily join'd. Of which Revolution Mr. *Molesworth* hath given a very particular Account, and not an ill one perhaps, making some Allowances for his Principles

The Present State of *Denmark*.

T t 2

(which

(which appear in every Paragraph) the Substance whereof follows.

When Money was to be rais'd for disbanding the Army and other Exigencies of the Government, and the States of the Kingdom were assembled for that Purpose in the Year 1660, the Commons propos'd, that since the Nobility and Gentry enjoy'd the greatest Profit from the Lands of which themselves were but the Occupiers or Farmers, they might bear a Share of the publick Taxes. To which the Nobility answer'd, that the Commons neither understood or consider'd the Privileges of the Nobility, who had at all Times been exempted from Taxes, nor their own Condition, who were no better than *Slaves*. That they had best keep within their own Bounds, and acquiesce in such Measures as antient Practice warranted, for the Lords would maintain their Authority. To which the President of *Copenhagen*, Speaker of the Commons, reply'd, they were no *Slaves*, nor wou'd for the future be treated as such by the Nobility; and thereupon withdrew from the Assembly, being follow'd by the Clergy and Commons. They afterwards march'd in a kind of Procession with the Bishop or Superintendent of *Copenhagen* and the Speaker of the Commons at their Head, to a certain Hall in the City proper to entertain so large a Company, and sat apart from the Nobility. Here they resolv'd immediately to attend the King and offer their Assistance to make him an Absolute Monarch, and the Succession of the Crown Hereditary; by which they imagin'd they should lay such an Obligation on his Majesty, that he would free them from that *Slavish Dependance* on their Superiors they had long

long groand under. Nor did they at this time much fear the Resentment of their Lords, the Army being compos'd of their own Body, and very much devoted them ; nor could they run any hazard by the change of Masters, so grievous were their Chains already. Besides, if they must be Slaves, it was urg'd, they had better be so to a great Prince than be tyranniz'd over by every assuming Neighbour stil'd a Gentleman, *procul a Jove procul a fulmine*, was an antient Maxim. They had now also an Opportunity of revenging themselves upon those who had long insulted them, and so lucky an Occasion of gratifying their Spleen was not to be resisted. They had seen the King also with great Courage and Conduct defend their Capital City more than once against a formidable Enemy; and could not but observe his Firmness in all the Calamities he suffer'd when the *Swedes* had made themselves almost entirely Masters of his Dominions : They could never sufficiently express their Gratitude therefore to him, their great Deliverer, or think their Liberties (if they had yet any left) in Danger in his Hands. Thus those who at one time seem extremely Jealous of their Liberties, upon conceiving some uncommon Excellencies to be lodg'd in their Prince, which perhaps are but imaginary ; have been as forward to Compliment him with their Rights, as ever they were in other Reigns to prevent the loss of them. But to proceed, the Clergy, says my Author, had a further view in the propos'd Change, for having been hitherto kept in great Subjection by the Nobility and Gentry, they hoped now to have no other Superior but the King ; and as they engag'd to influence the People in his

Favour,

Favour, and preach up unlimited Obedience to the Royal Authority, they did not doubt of his Majesty's Protection, and hop'd for some encrease of Power.

The Court were so far from being ignorant of these Proceedings, that, according to our Author, they were the first Movers, and at the bottom of the Design; the Bishop of *Copenhagen* and the Speaker of the Commons were the Prime Minister's Creatures, and directed by him; but the Nobility, it seems, had yet no Suspicion of any form'd Design: They had been so long us'd to flight and tyrannize over the Commons, that they apprehended no Danger from them, and contemn'd their Threats. But the Nobility being assembled the next Day, were inform'd that the Commons design'd them a sudden Visit; and they soon after appear'd with the Bishop of *Copenhagen* and the Speaker at their Head, who gave the Lords to understand, that having consider'd the Disorders with which the Kingdom was distracted, they apprehended the only Remedy for them, would be to enlarge the King's Prerogative, and make the Crown Hereditary, and had come to a Resolution accordingly, in which if the Nobility thought fit to concur they were ready to accompany them to his Majesty; if not they should attend the King themselves, and the Matter would be done without them. The Nobility, who the Day before despised the Resentment of the Commons, being now convinc'd that they were countenanc'd and supported by the Ministry, were very much confounded. They reflected that they were assembled in a fortified Town, and in the Power of those who cou'd compel them to submit to what was
required

required of them. That there was now no possibility of retiring to their respective Countries where their Interests lay, (and where they had long govern'd like so many petty Sovereigns) the Gates of the Town being kept shut by his Majesty's particular Order. In this Condition therefore they thought it was their wisest Course to seem to submit to what they could not prevent ; and accordingly answer'd the Commons, that they were not at all averse to the Proposal made them ; but some previous Deliberation was necessary in an Affair of so great Moment : That such an important Transaction ought not to have the Appearance of Force, or to be the Effect of a sudden Tumult, but of their free Choice after mature Deliberation. They desir'd therefore that the Commons would a little defer the putting their Design in Execution, and consult with them how it might be best effected to their mutual Advantage. To this the Speaker of the Commons reply'd, That these were only Evasions to gain time, that the Nobility might find means to frustrate their Intentions ; that they came not thither to Consider but to Act, and if the Lords would not join in it, they would attend his Majesty without them ; and left their Lordships to reflecte upon the Consequences. During these Debates the Nobility had privately sent a Deputation to the King, offering to settle the Crown upon his Majesty and his Heirs Males ; but the King told them he should not accept of it, unless the Gift were more general, and the Females were included. But before this Answer was brought to the Lords, the Commons being impatient of delay, had proceeded by themselves towards
the

the Court, where they were met by the Prime Minister, and conducted into the Hall of Audience. His Majesty soon after appear'd, and the Bishop in the Name of the Clergy and Commons address'd himself to his Majesty, offering their Assistance to make the Crown Hereditary : for which the King return'd them Thanks ; but as the Concurrence of the Nobility, he said, was necessary, of which he had no Reason to doubt, he advis'd them to continue their Session, that this great Affair might be accomplish'd with a Solemnity suitable to the Importance of it.

The Nobility in the mean time were in the utmost Distraction, their Deputies having inform'd them that their proposal of settling the Crown upon his Majesty's Heirs Male was not pleasing to the Court ; and that even this offer was look'd upon to proceed from Persons who would not have granted any thing if they could have avoided it. And being inform'd the same Day that the City Gates were shut, they began to be apprehensive of some Design against their Persons. Whereupon they dispatch'd other Deputies to Court, and to the Commons, to signify they were ready to comply with all that the Commons had proposed. Whereupon, says my Author, the King resolv'd to keep the City Gates shut till they had Sworn Fealty to him in the Face of the People and the Army ; and divested themselves of all Right, as well as Power to cause any Disturbance, or Alteration for the Future. Three Days were taken up in the Preparations for this great Solemnity, when they were to make a formal Surrender of their Liberties. The King, Queen and Royal Family appear'd on a kind of Theatre erected for

for that Purpose ; and being plac'd in Chairs of State under Velvet Canopies, receiv'd the Homage of all the Senators, Nobility, Clergy, and Commons, which was perform'd kneeling, in the sight of the Army and Burghers, who were drawn up under Arms. And here they took an Oath to be True and Faithful to his Majesty and his Heirs. *Gerfsdorf*, a popular Senator, was the only Man who opened his Mouth in behalf of their expiring Liberties, saying, he was confident his Majesty design'd only the good of his People, and not to govern them after the *Turkish* Manner ; but wish'd his Successors might follow the Example he would set them ; and make use of that unlimited Power for the good of their Subjects. Thus, says my Author, the Kingdom of *Denmark* was chang'd in four Days time from an Aristocracy to as absolute a Monarchy as could be found in the World : And the Commons instead of enjoying the Liberties promis'd them, had only the comfort of seeing their former Oppressors in as miserable a Condition as themselves. And the Citizens of *Copenhagen* obtain'd little by the Change, but the trifling Privilege of wearing Swords.

The CLERGY only, says Mr. *Molesworth*, (against whom he seems to have a particular Spleen) were Gainers by it, and are still much encourag'd by the Court, as the Instruments that first promoted, and now keep the People in a due Temper of Slavery : The Passive Obedience Principle riding Triumphant in this unhappy Kingdom. So that Mr. *Molesworth* would have the World believe that the loss of their Liberties proceeded purely from the Clergy's preaching up Passive Obedience,

tho' he hath before spent many Pages in shewing that the Arrogance and Oppressions of the Nobility were the real Occasion of this Revolution: Besides, I cannot discover from the whole Relation what the Clergy gain'd, unless the being freed from the insolent Treatment they met with from the Gentry. No Church Lands or Tyths were restor'd, or their Revenues any ways encreased; but they still depend in a great measure, according to his own Account, upon the Benevolencies of the People: But so violent are the Prejudices of some Gentlemen against the whole Order, that nothing less than a total Extirpation probably will ever satisfy them. The CLERGY are at the bottom of every thing they don't like, and pointed out to the Mob as the proper Objects of their Fury. And whoever reads the Account of this Revolution, cannot but observe further, that the People, the lower Class of Mankind by far the most numerous, were but little concern'd in the Alteration of the Government; for Mr. *Molesworth* himself assures us, that they were under an Aristocracy before, and *Slaves* rather than Subjects to the Nobility. Now it may be difficult to shew that Aristocracy is *Jure Divino* any more than Monarchy: Or, that a People are happier under the Government of *Many* than of *One*: Had the Nobility and Gentry of *Denmark* been the Representatives of the Peasants and lower Rank of People, the Commons might have suffer'd some loss by the Change; but the Peasants were Vassals to the Quality, compell'd to bear the whole Charges of the Government both Civil and Military, and to perform such other Drudgeries as their Lords were pleas'd to lay upon them; and what People in such

Circum-

Circumstances would not have thrown themselves into the Arms of their Monarch, and relie upon his Honour, rather than be insulted and oppress'd by their Fellow Subjects in every Village. They neither lost or acquir'd any Liberties, or Properties: They only suffer'd a change of Masters. But the *People*, 'tis observ'd, are ever brought into these Disputes as the injur'd Persons, for the sake of that darling Whig Maxim: That *there can be no Legal Government which is not founded in the Choice of the People: The Voice of the People is the Voice of God.* But alas, in this Revolution in *Denmark*, the Interest of the People was no more concern'd, than in the Disputes between the Kings of *England* and their Barons anti-ently: Which Party soever succeeded a Majority of the People still remain'd in a State of Vassalage. No doubt, whoever expects a share in the Government by dethroning a Monarch and setting up an Aristocracy, is in the Right to Wheedle the People into a belief, That it is their dear Interests only he is concern'd to promote, that he hath nothing at Heart but the *Good of his Country, My Country!* *O My Country*, must be ever in his Mouth; by which he means no more than his own particular Interests: He would gladly change the Condition of a Subject for that of a Legislator; he may too, in his own wise Conceit, possibly imagine that the People would really be happier under his Conduct, than under the Government of any Prince upon Earth: But however that may be, he is sure of bettering his own Condition by the Change; and when that is done he will probably have done with the People, and leave them in at least as wretched a Condition as he found them. And 'tis observable, there is not a Commonwealth

in *Europe*, how happy soever we may imagin their Subjects to be, that will suffer the People so much as to Petition for the Redress of a Grievance, or take the least Notice of Male Administration. On the Contrary, they have their Inquisitions, or Committees of Secresy, where Persons, but *Suspected* of Disaffection, are frequently punish'd Arbitrarily, without knowing either their Accusers, or their Crime; and what Monarch can be guilty of a greater Act of Tyranny?



C H A P. IX.

Contains an Abstract of the Succession of the Danish Princes; with the Modern History of Denmark, or the principal Occurrences of the two last Reigns.

WHEN the Kingdom of *Denmark* was first establish'd, *Puffendorf* observes, is very uncertain; but among their antient Kings, *Frotho* was most famous he relates; who according to their Traditions reign'd a little before the Birth of our Saviour, and was Sovereign of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *England*, *Ireland*, and other Neighbouring States. He made a Conquest of the *Vandals*, who then inhabited *Pomerania* and *Mecklenburgh*, and first stil'd himself King of the *Vandals*. Having nothing certain to relate of the immediate Successors of *Frotho*, he passes on to *Erick*, the first *Christian* King of *Denmark*, who reign'd about the Year 246. The next Prince he mentions is *Gormo II.* who endeavour'd to extirpate *Christianity*, but was compell'd by the Emperor *Henry*, surnam'd the *Birdcatcher*, to permit

Frotho:

Book I.
246.

Gormo:

permit the free Exercise of it in his Dominions again. *Gormo* was succeeded by his Son *Harold*, who left the Crown to his Son *Suen*, or *Swain*, in the Year 980. This Prince conquer'd part of *England*, and died in the Year 1012. *Canute* surnam'd the *Great*, the Son of *Suen*, or *Swain*, succeeded him, and was Sovereign of *England*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*: In which Kingdoms he was succeeded by his Son *Harold*, who dying without Issue, *Hardecnute* the third Son of *Canute* ascended the *Danish* Throne, being at the same time King of *England* and *Norway*; but was the last of the *Danish* Race who had the Sovereignty of *England*. *Magnus* King of *Norway* also made himself Master of *Denmark* upon the Decease of *Hardecnute*: But *Sueno* of the Royal Family of *Denmark* recover'd the Kingdom of *Denmark* again, and died in the Year 1074. to whom succeeded his Son *Harold* VII. And after him his Brother *Canute* IV. This King granted the Tenths of all the Revenues of his Kingdom to the Clergy, and invested the Bishops and Ecclesiasticks with great Authority; by which 'tis said the *Jutes* were so exasperated, that they assassinated him. But the Clergy out of a Sense of their Obligations to *Canute*, plac'd him in the Number of their Saints, and his Memory was afterwards celebrated in full Bowls at their Feasts. His Brother *Olavs* IV. succeeded him, who died Anno 1095. After whom his Brother *Erick* II. ascended the Throne, upon whose Death the Kingdom was in great Confusion, there being three Competitors for it (*viz.*) *Sueno* III. *Canute* VI. and *Waldemar* I. Who after a long Struggle for the whole, agreed to divide the Kingdom between them. But *Canute* being

Canute.

Harold.
Harde-
canute.

Canute 4.
1087.

assassinated,

- assassinated, and *Sueno* kill'd in Battle, *Waldemar* reign'd sole Monarch of *Denmark*. He was Successful against the *Rugians* and *Vandals*; and 'tis said first laid the Foundation of the City of *Dantzick*. In his Reign also the City of *Copenhagen* began to be built by *Abfalom* Bishop of *Roschild*. *Canute VI.* his Son succeeded him, and was engaged in a bloody War with the *Vandals*; and having subdued them, stil'd himself King of the *Vandals*, or *Slaves*. He took also from *Adolph* Earl of *Holstein* the City of *Hamburgh*, and several other Places. He conquer'd *Esthonia* and *Livonia*, and caused the *Christian* Faith to be establish'd in those Countries: To whom succeeded his Brother *Waldemar II.* Anno 1202. who had under his Dominion the Kingdom of *Denmark*, *Esthonia*, *Livonia*, *Courland*, *Prussia*, *Pomerania*, *Rugen*, *Mecklenburgh*, *Holstein*, *Stormar*, *Ditmarsh*, and *Wageren*; with the Cities of *Lubeck* and *Lawenburgh*. But in the latter end of his Reign the Provinces of *Mecklenburgh* and *Pomerania*, with the Cities of *Lubeck* and *Dantzick* revolted from him. *Adolph* Earl of *Lawenburgh* dispossest him of *Holstein*, and *Stormar* and the *Knights of the Cross* took from him *Esthonia* and *Livonia*. He was succeeded by his Son *Erick V.* but his Father had divided part of the Kingdom among his other three Sons. To *Abel* he had given *Sleswick*, to *Canute* *Blecking*, and to *Christopher* the Islands of *Laland* and *Falster*: Each of whom set up for Independant Sovereigns in their several Appanages: and *Erick* endeavouring to reduce them was murder'd by his Brother *Abel*, who succeeded him in the Kingdom: But within two Years after was himself kill'd by the *Frieſlanders* and *Ditmarſians*. To him succeeded
- Waldemar*
I. 1157.
- Canute* 6.
1164.
- Waldemar*
II. 1202.
- Erick* V.
1241.
- Abel*.
1250.

ceeded his Brother *Christopher* I. who happen-
 ing to engage in some Contests with the
 Clergy, 'tis said they poyson'd him with the
 consecrated Host. But *Erick* VI. his Son
 however succeeded him, who being engag'd
 in Wars with *Sweden*, *Norway*, and *Holstein*,
 was taken Prisoner by the Duke of *Holstein*,
 and afterwards murder'd by the Great Men
 of his Kingdom. He left the Crown to his
 Son *Erick* VII. who enter'd into a War with the
 King of *Norway* for protecting his Father's Mur-
 derers: And had some other differences with
 the neighbouring States. To him succeeded
 his Brother *Christopher* II. who caused his Son
 to be crown'd King in his Life time. This
 King was expell'd the Kingdom by his Sub-
 jects, on Pretence of their being oppress'd by
 Taxes; and *Waldemar* Duke of *Sleswick* elected
 in his Room: Of whom the *Danes* being soon
 weary, recall'd their King *Christopher* again.
 Under this Reign *Schonen* was conquer'd by
 the *Holsteiners*, and surrender'd to *Magnus* King
 of *Sweden* by them. The rest of *Denmark* also
 was torn in Pieces in this Reign, and the King
 remain'd Sovereign but of a small part of it:
 After whose Death there happen'd an *Inter-*
regnum of seven Years; when *Denmark* was
 for the most part in Subjection to the *Hol-*
steiners. But the *Danes* at length call'd in
Waldemar the Son of *Christopher* II. who serv'd
 at this time in the Emperor's Court, by
 whose Assistance they shook off the Yoke, and
Waldemar in some measure restor'd the declin-
 ing State of the Kingdom; but sold *Esthonia*
 and *Revel* to the *Knights of the Cross* for 28000
 Marks, most of which he spent in a Voyage
 to the *Holy Land*. He procur'd *Schonen* to be
 restor'd

Christopher
I. 1252.

Erick VI.
1286.

Erick VII.
1286.

Christopher
II. 1319.

Waldemar
III.

restor'd to *Sweden* again, and had *Gothland* surrendred to him by *Albert* King of *Sweden*.

Olaus VI.
1375.

Olaus VI. Grand-Son to *Waldemar*, succeeded to the Crown. He was the Son of *Margaret* the Daughter of *Waldemar*, and of *Hacquin* King of *Norway*; and after the Death of *Hacquin* succeeded to the Crown of *Norway*.

Denmark
and *Nor-*
way Uni-
ted.

Margaret.

The 3
Northern
Crowns
United.

Erick VIII
1396.

He laid Claim also to *Sweden*, his Father being the Son of *Magnus Smech*, Sovereign of that Kingdom: But he died Young, and both the *Danes* and *Norwegians* receiv'd *Margaret* his Mother for their Queen; who entring into War with *Albert* King of *Sweden*, he was deserted by his Subjects, and *Margaret* became Sovereign of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*.

She afterwards caused *Erick* of *Pomerania* to be associated with her. And the next Year the Estates of all the three Kingdoms being assembled at *Calmar*, *Erick* was declar'd their King; and it was agreed amongst them, that *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway* should for the future be govern'd by the same Sovereign.

Margaret died in the Year 1412. After whose Death *Erick* was sole Monarch of the three Kingdoms: But the *Danes* deposed him, and elected *Christopher* Duke of *Bavaria*, his Sister's Son, for their Sovereign: After whose Death the *Danes* made an offer of their Crown to

Christopher
1439.

Adolph Duke of *Sleswick* and Earl of *Holstein*; but he refus'd it on account of his advanc'd Age, and recommended to them *Christian* Earl of *Oldenburgh*, who reign'd over both the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, and drove *Charles* Cnutson King of *Sweden* out of that Kingdom: But *Charles* some time after recover'd his Crown again.

Christian
of *Olden-*
burgh.
1448.

From
whom the
present
Royal
Family
descend-
ed,

In the Year 1471. the Emperor *Frederick* gave him *Ditmarsen* and the Country of *Hol-*

stein,

stein, and he married his Daughter *Margaret* to *James III.* King of *Scotland*, giving her the Islands of *Orkney* and *Schetland* for her Dowry, which were before dependent on *Norway*. After whom succeeded his Son *John*, who divided the Dukedom of *Holstein* with his Brother *Frederick*. He enter'd into a War with *Steen Sture*, Governor of *Sweden*, and was so successful as to procure himself to be crown'd King of that People: But was afterwards driven out of *Sweden* again by *Steen Sture*, assisted by the *Lubeckers*. He was succeeded by his Son *Christian II.* who being pitch'd upon by the Pope to put a Decree in Execution against the Kingdom of *Sweden*, he defeated *Steen Sture* the younger, who was then Governor, or Administrator of *Sweden*, and kill'd in the same Battle, and afterwards procur'd himself to be crown'd King of *Sweden*. But having treacherously massacred many of the Nobility of *Sweden*, and exasperated that People, he was driven out of the Kingdom by *Gustavus Erickson*. Ever since which time the *Swedes* have maintain'd their Independency, and never been govern'd by a *Danish* Sovereign: He had drawn upon himself also the Hatred and Contempt of the *Danes* on Account of his being govern'd by his Concubine, and an old *Dutch* Woman her Mother. He was at length depos'd and forc'd to retire to the *Neitherlands*; and afterwards attempting to regain the Crown of *Denmark* was taken Prisoner, and continued so the Remainder of his Life: And his Uncle *Frederick* Duke of *Holstein* obtain'd the Crown. *Frederick* died in the Year 1533. and was succeeded by his Son *Christian III.* who met with great Opposition from his own Bishops, which gave that King some Pretence

John.
1483.
Holstein
divided
between
two Brothers.

Christian
II. 1513.

The
Swedes
throw off
the *Danish*
Yoke.

Frederick I.
1532.

Christian
III. 1533.

The Reformation established here.

Frederick II. 1560.

Christian IV. 1588.

Frederick III. 1648.

Christian V. 1670.

Seizes on the Duke of Holstein's Territory.

for seizing the Revenues of the Church, and encouraging the Reformation of Religion, which he established in *Denmark* about this time. To *Christian III.* succeeded his Son *Frederick II.* Anno 1560. who was engaged in a long War with *Sweden*, but died in Peace in the Year 1588. being succeeded by his Son *Christian IV.* who was also engaged in War with *Sweden*, and afterwards with the Emperor, being General of the Circle of *Lower Saxony*, but was defeated; and the Imperialists possessed themselves of *Holstein* and *Jutland*, which were however restored by a Peace. The *Swedes* also took from him *Gothland*, *Osel*, *Femperlund*, and *Halland*. This Prince died in the Year 1648. and was succeeded by his Son *Frederick III.* who attacking the *Swedes* at the Instigation of the *Hollanders*, had ill Success: His whole Country was over run by the *Swedes*, and himself besieged in his Capital City of *Copenhagen*, and by a Peace was compelled to yield to the *Swedes*, besides *Bahus*, the fine Provinces of *Bleeking*, *Schonen* and *Halland*. It was in this Reign that the King of *Denmark* was declared an absolute Sovereign, and the Nobility were deprived of their Privileges in the manner related in the last Chapter. He died in the Year 1670. and was succeeded by his Son *Christian V.* who finding the King of *Sweden* engaged in a War with the Emperor, resolved to take this Opportunity of recovering those Provinces which *Denmark* had lost in the last Reign: But as the Duke of *Holstein* was an Allie to *Sweden*, he thought it proper to secure himself from being attacked by that Prince in the first Place, to effect which, he acted a very mean and treacherous Part. There were, it seems, some differences between

tween

tween the King of *Denmark* and Duke of *Holstein* concerning the Succession to the Counties of *Oldenburgh* and *Delmenhorst*, and in Relation to the Revenues of the Dukedoms of *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, of which the King of *Denmark* claim'd the greatest Share, in Consideration that the greater Part of the Forces maintain'd for the Defence of the Country were paid by him. On the other Hand, the Duke insisted that the Taxes ought to be equally divided ; and that if the King introduc'd more Troops than were necessary for the Defence of the Country, that ought not to prejudice his Right to an equal Share of the Revenue, especially when the King kept up that Force without the Duke's Consent, or that of the States of the Dutchy, both which by antient Compact he ought to have had. These Disputes seem'd to be in a fair way of Accommodation; the King professing all imaginable Friendship for the Duke, and offering to yield whatever he could reasonably insist upon. And being about to take a review of his Troops in *Holstein*, in order to lull the Duke into a deeper Security, says my Author, wrote him very obliging Letters, and desir'd he would not take any Umbrage at his Journey into *Holstein*, since he had no other end in it than usual ; namely, to visit the Places which belong'd to him, and take a view of the Condition of his Troops ; and if possible to put a final end to the Differences which had so long subsisted between them. The Duke had so little Suspicion of any hostile Design against him, that he went to meet his Majesty upon the Road accompanied by his Brother the Bishop of *Lubeck*, and several others of the Nobility ; and afterwards made him a splend-

ed Entertainment at a Seat of his upon the Road, not far from his Palace of *Gottorp*, where the King careſs'd him extremely, and deſir'd to ſee him at *Rensburg*, a fortified Town of the King's, near which he had appointed the Rendezvous of his Forces. The Duke ſtill relying on the fair Profeſſions made by his *Daniſh* Majeſty ; and hoping to put an end to all Diſputes between them by a Perſonal Treaty, went attended by his Prime Miniſter and many of his Nobility to *Rensburgh*, to the Entertainment he had been invited to on the 25th of *June*, 1675. where he was welcom'd by the Diſcharge of the Cannon on the Ramparts, and all other Demonſtrations of Reſpect : But the next Day the Treacherous *Dane* cauſed the Duke of *Holſtein's* Guards to be diſarm'd, and himſelf made Priſoner ; and ſent out Detachments of his Troops to ſeize on all the Places in *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick* which belong'd to him. The Duke exclaim'd loudly againſt this Uſage : He alledged that he was a Sovereign Prince of the Empire, Independant of any other Power, that he was Brother-in-Law to the King of *Denmark*, and an invited Guest : That all the Laws of Juſtice, of Blood, of Friendſhip, and Hoſpitality were violated, &c. but all in vain, the King had now thrown off the Mask, and was determin'd to follow his Blow. He upbraided the Duke that he was always in the Intereſt of *Sweden*, and never to be truſted ; and gave him to underſtand that unleſs he would renounce his Right to the Lands in Diſpute, he would put Garriſons in all his Towns, and take Poſſeſſion of his whole Country ; and that he ſhould be detain'd Priſoner till he ſign'd an Order to the
Commander

Commander of the Fortrefs of *Tonninghen* to furrender it; which laft Article the Duke at length confented to, being under fome Apprehenfions there was a Design againft his Life, and accordingly *Tonninghen*, with all the Cannon and Stores, was deliver'd up to the *Danes*.

The Duke was afterwards permitted to refide at his own Palace of *Gottorp*, but was ftill in reality a Prifoner, Guards being plac'd at all the Avenues to prevent his Retreat, and fome hard Propofals and Articles were fent him every Day to fign, one of which was The Renunciation of his Supreme and Independent Right over the Dutchy of *Slefwick*. His Dutcheff, who was the King of *Denmark*'s Sifter, was all this while at *Copenhagen*, and fuppos'd to confent to the Injuries offer'd to her Husband. But the Duke wearied out by the Indignities he fuffer'd, and the Conditions put upon him, contriv'd his Escape, and arriv'd fafely at *Hamburgh*, where he protefted againft the Validity of all the Acts he had been forc'd to fign. The King being extremely vex'd to find the Duke out of his Power, immediately gave Orders for demolifhing the Fortrefs of *Tonninghen*, and fequeftred the Dutchy of *Slefwick*, caufing both Magiftrates and People to fwear Allegiance to him, declaring them abfolv'd from their Allegiance to the Duke. He alfo caus'd all the Duke's Revenues to be brought into his own Treafury, continu'd Garrifons in his Towns, and even in his Palace of *Gottorp*. And not knowing how foon he might be oblig'd by the Duke's Allies to deliver up what he had fo unjuftly feiz'd, he exacted Contributions from the poor Subjects to the Value of many Millions, to the Ruin of as flourishing a Province

as any in *Germany*, whereby he fill'd his own Treasury, and disabled the Duke's Subjects from giving him any Assistance. The Duke remain'd still at *Hamburg*, from whence he sent his Son to the *German* Princes, to implore their Assistance. He apply'd also to the Court of *England*, which was Guarrantee of the Peace of the North, but to very little Purpose, till the King of *Sweden*, *Charles XI.* undertook his Cause in the Year 1689, and was about to have transported an Army into *Germany* for the Restoration of the Duke. The *German* Princes and the *English* and *Dutch*, who were now enter'd into a Confederacy against *France*, being apprehensive that this might disturb the Peace of the Empire, and divert their Troops from the *French* War, held several Conferences on this Subject at *Altena*, and at length oblig'd the King of *Denmark* to restore the Duke of *Holstein* his Dominions after he had been in Possession of them thirteen Years, but took no Care that the *Dane* should make him any Satisfaction for the Devastation of his Territories; one Reason whereof might be, that the *Dane* promis'd to assist the Confederates with a good Body of his Troops in that War, and had it not been more upon account of their own Interest than any concern to see Justice done the Duke, he might have remain'd dispossest'd of his Territories thirteen Years longer.

From the Conclusion of the Differences between the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holstein* at *Altena*, by the Mediation of the Confederates in 1689 to the Year 1696 things remain'd in tolerable Peace; but the late Duke of *Holstein*, *Christian Albert*, dying about that Time, and the King of *Denmark* having
sent

sent a Deputation to his Son and Successor Duke *Frederick*, to renew the Union between them, and to let him have a Sight of the late Duke's Will, that he might see if there was any thing in it in Favour of the eldest Prince, in relation to the Ducal part of the Dutchy of *Sleswick*, the Duke refus'd both the one and the other, alledging that the Treaty of *Altena* in 1689 had not been observ'd, or Justice done to the Ducal House, particularly in restoring the Signiory of *Gottes Gabre* in the Island of *Arca*.

The Guarrantes of the Treaty of *Altena* seeing both Sides inclin'd to a Rupture, interpos'd their good Offices, and engag'd them to settle Conferences for composing their Differences, which were held at *Penenburgh*: But the Duke continuing to introduce *Swedish* Forces into *Holstein*, and build and enlarge his Fortifications during the time of the Treaty, the King of *Denmark* march'd an Army into the Country, and caus'd the new Fortifications to be demolish'd in the Year 1697, which the Duke at that time not finding himself in a Condition to oppose, thought fit to acquiesce in till the Death of the then King, which happen'd the fourth of *September* 1699, when he was succeeded by his second Son, *Frederick* the 4th. This the Duke look'd upon as a favourable Opportunity to rebuild the Fortifications which had been destroy'd, especially having married the King of *Sweden*'s Sister, and assur'd of being supported by that Crown. He began therefore to repair the Fortifications of his demolish'd Forts, as he insist'd he had a Right to do by the Treaty of *Altena*; and introduc'd into the Country a considerable Number of *Swedish* Troops, to prevent their

Frederick
the 4th.

their being demolish'd again. The Mediators and Guarrantees of the Treaty of *Altena* employ'd their good Offices to prevent a Rupture, and propos'd that both the *Swedes* and the *Danes* should withdraw their Troops out of *Holstein*, and that the Fortifications should not be proceeded in till the matter was settled by a Treaty. But the *Dane* being determin'd on a War, both with *Sweden* and *Holstein*, and having enter'd into a Confederacy both with *Russia* and *Poland* for that End, would not hearken to any pacifick Measures, but on the contrary, order'd his General the Duke of *Wirtemburgh*, to demolish *Husum*, *Frederickstat*, and other Places belonging to the Duke of *Holstein*, which he soon after effected : And not content with rasing such new Fortifications as had been erected, invested *Tonninghen*, in which General *Bannier* commanded with a Garrison of five thousand Men. Whereupon the Princes Guarrantees gave the King of *Denmark* to understand, that since he had rejected all their Friendly Proposals, they shou'd no longer see the Treaty of *Altena* broken, or suffer the Duke of *Holstein* to be dispossest'd of his Country again, under the Pretence of opposing the building of Forts, which were already demolish'd. The Duke of *Holstein* also publish'd a *Manifesto*, shewing the Right he had by the Treaty of *Altena*, to build Fortifications in his own Dominions, and the Injustice of the *Danish* Invasion. And not only the *German* Princes, but the *Dutch* join'd their Forces with the *Swedes* in Order to bring the *Dane* to Reason : And marching towards *Tonninghen*, the *Danish* General thought fit to raise the Siege, without coming to a Battle. The *English* and *Dutch* also sent each of them a

Squa-

Squadron into the *Baltick*, and join'd the *Swedish* Fleet, compelling the *Danes* to retire into the Harbour of *Copenhagen*. In the mean time the young King of *Sweden* landed with fifteen thousand Horse and Foot upon the Island of *Zeland*, about three Miles to the Southward of *Elfinore*, and was preparing to invest *Copenhagen*, when the *Dane* finding himself upon the Brink of Ruin, was glad to accept of such Terms as the Princes Guarantees, who at this Time held their Conferences at *Travendale*, were pleas'd to prescribe ; and a Treaty was accordingly concluded at *Travendale*, on the 18th of *August*, 1700, wherein it was agreed, in relation to *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, that in such places as the King and Duke had an equal Right, nothing shou'd be done on either Side without the Consent of the other, but that in their particular Territories, each Party should be at Liberty to act as he saw fit. And by the 4th Article, that in the Dutchies of *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, neither Parties should pretend to greater Prerogatives than the other. By the 5th, that both Parties should contribute equally to the Defence of the Lands enjoy'd by both. That the Duke should enjoy the full Power of raising Soldiers, making Alliances, and building Forts in his own Dominions, without asking the Consent of the King of *Denmark*, but that neither Party should build any Fort within two *German* Miles of the Fortifications of the other, or within one *German* Mile of the Territories of the other, and neither Party shou'd keep in the said Dutchies upwards of six thousand Men, unless upon account of some Foreign Invasion, or the like ; and when the King of *Denmark* should be oblig'd to send Forces to the Assistance of

his Allies in the Empire, the Duke should allow them Passage thro' his Country, but the *Danes* should not take Quarters or encamp in his Highness's Territories, but pay for such Provisions as his Subjects furnish'd them with. By the ninth Article, the King was oblig'd to pay the Duke two hundred and sixty thousand Dollars, in consideration of the Damages done to his Territories. By the 12th, the Fort of *Grovenhoff* in an Island of the *Elbe* near *Hamburg* was to be ras'd, and the Navigation of the *Elbe* remain undisturb'd by either Party. And by a separate Article, the King of *Denmark* was oblig'd to abandon the King of *Poland* his Confederate, and no longer assist him against *Sweden*.

*Charles
Frederick
the pre-
sent Duke
of Holstein.*

The Duke of *Holstein* being made General of the *Swedish* Forces, was kill'd in the Year 1702, at the Battle of *Lissaw* in *Poland*, in the Beginning of the Action, but the *Swedes* afterwards obtain'd the Victory. He was succeeded by his Son *Charles Frederick*, the present Duke, then an Infant of two Years of Age, his Uncle, the Bishop of *Lubeck*, being made Regent or Administrator of *Holstein* during his Minority.

The King of *Sweden* afterwards happening to lose the Battle of *Pultoway*, and retire into *Turkey* for Refuge, the King of *Denmark*, who was not the strictest Observer of Treaties, oppos'd to let slip an Opportunity of falling upon a Neighbour in Distress, united his Forces with the *Moscovites* and *Poles*, in order to drive the *Swedes* out of their *German* Dominions, which they did not only effect, but the King of *Denmark* under Pretence of the Infant Duke of *Holstein*'s favouring the *Swedes*, seiz'd upon the Duke's Territories again, and still continues

nues in the Possession of them. But it is to be presum'd that those illustrious Princes Guarantees of the Treaties of *Altena* and *Travendale*, will one time or other see Justice done to the Duke of *Holstein*, and reinstate him in his hereditary Dominions, as they have his Ancestors formerly, when they were in like manner forcibly driven from their Country by the *Dane*. At least we may be confident they will never oppose the *Russian* Court, to whom the Duke is so nearly allied, if they should attempt his Restoration: Unless it should appear that those Princes have some private Views in preventing the Duke of *Holstein's* Return to his Dominions. But I proceed now to give a further Account of the War the *Dane* and his Allies commenc'd against the *Swede* after the Misfortune of *Pultoway*, in which they depriv'd the *Swede* of all his *German* Territories, whereof only an inconsiderable part were restor'd by the last Peace. This is a Piece of Modern History that cannot be omitted or unacceptable to those who are desirous to be acquainted with the Present State of *Europe*.

The King of *Denmark* no sooner heard of the King of *Sweden's* Defeat by the *Moscovites* at *Pultoway*, which happen'd on the 30th of *June*, 1709, but he began to consider of some Pretence to renew the War with him, and join his old Confederates the *Czar* and King *Augustus* again. He immediately recall'd the *Danish* Regiments which were in the Emperor's Service in *Hungary*, and quarter'd them in *Holstein*. He transported ten thousand Men from *Norway* to *Denmark*, levy'd new Troops at *Hamburgh*, and fitted out a strong Squadron of Men of War, and having assembled an Ar-

The last War between Denmark and Sweden.

my of eighteen or twenty thousand Men, proclaim'd a Fast to implore a Blessing upon his Designs; or rather, say the *Swedes*, to beg of God to prosper his Breach of Faith, and the unjust Invasion of a Prince's Dominions, who had given him no Offence, and with whom he was then engag'd in a solemn League of Friendship, and with whom he had no other Reason to break, than because the King of *Sweden* was not in a Condition to help himself or defend his Subjects. However the King of *Denmark* on the 28th of *November* 1709, publish'd a *Manifesto* to justify his intended Enterprize, setting forth that the ambitious Designs of the King of *Sweden* had for several Years past occasion'd great Devastations in the Kingdoms of the North, and that he had receiv'd repeated Instances of the Animosity that Prince entertain'd against him and his Subjects, as well by the Opposition made to his Interest by the *Swedish* Ministers in foreign Courts, as by several Expressions in his own Letters, and therefore thought himself oblig'd to prevent the impending Danger, and not imprudently wait till the Designs of the *Swedes* were ripe for Execution. He complains also of the Dedication of a Book, wherein the King of *Sweden* is stil'd Emperor of *Scandinavia*, of which *Denmark* and *Norway* are part. And of the *Swedes* granting Passes to foreign Vessels which pass the Sound, whereby the Revenue of *Denmark* was impair'd. For these Reasons he declares War against all the Territories of *Sweden*, except those in *Germany*; and imbar-king six thousand Horse and Dragoons, and twelve thousand Foot, he made a Descent upon *Schonen*, landing at *Helsingburgh* the 12th of *November*, 1709; but it being Winter time,

The *Danes*
make a
Descent
upon
Schonen.

he only took up his Quarters in the Country Towns at first, and invited the People of *Sweden* to join him, waiting for a proper Season to enter upon Action, which gave the *Swedes* time to put themselves in a Posture to defend their Country. About the Middle of *January* by the Favour of a hard Frost the *Danes* advanced towards *Christianstat*, where a Battalion of *Saxons* being in Garrison, laid down their Arms and went over to the *Danes*, whereby that Town fell into their Hands. They afterwards made themselves Masters of *Karels haven* in the Province of *Bleking*, and threatened *Carels croon*, where the *Swedish* Fleet and Magazines were laid up. At the same time a strong Detachment extended themselves towards *Halland*, on the Western Side of *Schonen*, and their Forces receiving frequent Supplies, their Army was considerably encreased, and became very formidable. But the *Swedish* General, Count *Steinbock*, having assembled eighteen or twenty thousand Men, and marching towards *Helsingburgh*, as if he intended to cut off the Communication of the *Danes* with that place, they immediately abandon'd all their Conquests, quitting *Carels haven* and *Christianstat*, and retreated to *Helsingburgh*, near which place the Armies came to an Engagement, and the *Danes* were entirely defeated, a Day or two after they quitted *Helsingburgh*, transporting the Remainder of their Troops to *Denmark* in the Night, which after their ill Success did not amount to above six or seven thousand Men; And thus ingloriously ended the King of *Denmark's* Expedition against *Schonen*, which say the *Swedes* was a just Punishment for his perfidious Breach of Treaties,

The

The *Danes* having been disappointed in their Enterprize upon *Schonen*, the next Year join'd King *Augustus* and the *Czar's* Troops, and fell upon the *Swedish Pomerania*, destroying the whole Country in a most barbarous manner, and the *Swedish* Forces not being strong enough to oppose these united Powers, retir'd into *Stralsund*, the Isle of *Rugen*, and other places of Security. The King of *Denmark*, while the *Moscovites* and the *Saxons* block'd up *Stralsund*, pass'd the *Elbe*, and enter'd the Dutchy of *Bremen*, where the *Swedish* General not having a sufficient Body of Troops to oppose him, the *Dane* took the Town of *Staden*, and made himself Master of the whole Country. In their Return the *Danes* insulted the City of *Hamburgh*, threatening them with a Bombardment, to avoid which the Burghers were compell'd to raise them two hundred and thirty thousand Rix Dollars. Count *Steinbock*, the *Swedish* General, found means afterwards on the 22d of *December*, 1712, to engage the *Danes* singly, when they were separated from their Allies near *Wismar*, and having given them a great Defeat, pursu'd them into *Holstein*, seiz'd the Magazines the *Danes* had laid up there, and put the *Danish Holstein* under Contribution. From hence he march'd to *Pinenburgh*, near *Hamburgh*, where he determin'd to burn the *Danish* City of *Altena*, not so much by way of Retaliation or Revenge for the many *Swedish* Cities destroy'd by the *Danes*, and their Allies the *Moscovites* and *Saxons*, as he declar'd in a Memorial publish'd on this Occasion, as to deter them from committing the like Barbarities for the future.

The *Danes*, *Saxons* and *Moscovites* being now join'd to the Number of fifty thousand Men, and marching towards Count *Steinbock*, whose Army did not consist of above fourteen or fifteen thousand, he found himself under a Necessity of retiring into the Ducal *Holstein*, whither the Allies follow'd him, and pressing him with all imaginable Eagerness, he threw himself into *Tonninghen*, and by that means avoided them for that time, which the *Dane* afterwards made a Pretence for seizing the Duke of *Holstein's* Dominions, alledging that the Governour of *Tonninghen* admitted General *Steinbock* into the place by the Direction of his Master, the Duke of *Holstein*, (who was not at that time above twelve Years of Age), this Occurrence happening in *February*, 1712-13. But however that be, the Confederates blocking up the City of *Tonninghen* till *May* following, and the *Swedes* not being in a Condition to send General *Steinbock* any Reinforcements or Supplies, he was oblig'd to surrender himself and his little Army, consisting of nine thousand Men, Prisoners of War, on Condition of keeping their Cloaths and Baggage, and being exchange'd or ransom'd the first Opportunity. And thus for a little time the War seem'd to be at an End in *Pomerania*: But the *Moscovite* the next Year investing *Stetin*, the King of *Prussia* so manag'd the matter, that by the Agreement of the *Czar* and the *Swedish* Governour, the Town was sequestred into the Hands of his *Prussian* Majesty, and agreed to be garrison'd by an equal Number of *Prussians* and *Holsteiners*, but was to be restor'd to the King of *Sweden* at the End of the War.

The *Dane*
and all
the Prin-
ces of the
North
confede-
rate
against
Sweden.

In the latter End of *November*, 1714, the King of *Sweden* returning out of *Turkey*, arriv'd at the City of *Stralsund*, when he found a League was form'd against him, the Parties to which were the Kings of *Denmark*, *Prussia*, and *Poland*, and the King of *England*, as Elector of *Hanover*; the avow'd Design whereof was to preserve the Peace of *Germany*, which was propos'd to be done by securing the Sequestration of *Stetin* to the King of *Prussia*, and the Possession of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and whatever else the *Dane* had seiz'd of the Dominions of *Sweden* in *Germany*, to the *Dane*, and those he shou'd or had assign'd his Interest in those Conquests to. This the King of *Sweden* thought highly unreasonable, namely, that he shou'd not be permitted to recover those Territories again, which had been surpriz'd in his Absence. And the Kings of *Prussia* and *England* insisting that this would embroil the North of *Germany* in a War, they came into a Confederacy against the distress'd King of *Sweden*, who had before the *Moscovite*, the King of *Poland*, and the King of *Denmark* to contend with.

The King of *Prussia*, on the 28th. of *April*, 1715, formally proclaim'd War against *Sweden*, disarm'd the Regiment of *Holstein*, which was in *Stetin*, entring upon that City as a Conquest from *Sweden*, and holding it no longer in Sequestration. And the *Danes* and *Prussians* soon after assembled their Forces to the Number of sixty thousand Men, and appear'd before *Stralsund*, under the Walls of which City the King of *Sweden* found himself oblig'd to retire, his Army not consisting of more than a fourth part of the Enemies Number. In this same Month of *July*, a Treaty was set on Foot be-

tween

tween the King of *Denmark* and the Court of *Bremen* and *Verden* convey'd to *Hanover*, by which the King of *Denmark* stipulated to convey and deliver up *Bremen* and *Verden*, which he had taken from the King of *Sweden*, to the Elector of *Hanover*, in Consideration that the Elector would enter into the War against *Sweden*, and advance a Sum of Money to his *Danish* Majesty.

The Confederates before *Stralsund* being join'd by twenty four thousand *Russians* and a Body of *Saxons*, carried on the Siege of that Town with great Vigour: But finding the Place continually receiv'd fresh Supplies and Reinforcements from the Island of *Rugen*, which lies over against it, they landed a great Body of Troops on the Island, and after a sharp Dispute, in which the King of *Sweden* was in Person, made themselves Masters of it on the seventeenth of *November*. Still the King of *Sweden* determin'd to defend the Town to the last Extremity, and it was a terrible Winter's Siege, the Centinels being frequently frozen to Death at their Posts, and the Attacks were desperate, in one of which the Confederates lost near a thousand Men; however they prevail'd by their Numbers at Length, and the King of *Sweden* finding the Town not tenable, retir'd in a light Frigate, and arriv'd safely in *Sweden*, giving the Governour Orders to capitulate, which he did the latter End of *December* upon very honourable Terms, and both the Town and the Island of *Rugen* were put into the Possession of the King of *Denmark*, and all the Inhabitants of the *Swedish Pomerania* were oblig'd to take an Oath of Allegiance to him, except those of the City and District of *Stetin*, the Islands of *Usedom* and *Wollin*, and the Lands between the *Oder* and the Ri-

Stralsund taken by the *Danes* and their Allies.

ver Pene, which were left in the Hands of his *Prussian* Majesty. The City of *Wismar* in the *Dutchy* of *Mecklenburgh*, the only Town which the *Swedes* had left in *Germany*, was invested by the *Danes*, *Prussians*, *Hanoverians* and *Moscovites* the next Spring, and oblig'd to surrender ; after which the King of *Denmark* was left in Possession of it, and thus ended the War in *Germany*.

Prepara-
tions of
the *Danes*
and *Mosco-*
wites to
invade
Schonen.

The Year 1716 was taken up by the *Danes* and *Moscovites* in making mighty Preparations for invading the King of *Sweden's* Dominions in *Schonen*. The *Czar* of *Moscow* went in Person to *Copenhagen* to that purpose, whither his Generals led an Army of thirty thousand Horse and Foot. The *Danes* also assembled between twenty and thirty thousand of their Troops for this Expedition, and had prepar'd seven or eight hundred Vessels to transport them : But great part of the *Danish* Fleet being employ'd in *Norway* during the Summer, to oppose an Enterprize of the *Swedes*, on that Side, the Year was spent, and all these Preparations came to nothing. The *Czar* of *Moscow* upbraided the King of *Denmark* that his Fleet was not ready in time ; and the *Dane* pretended to be very angry with the *Russian* Monarch, that he would not make the Descent in the latter End of the Year, which the *Czar* observ'd was impracticable, there being no Forage to be found, and the King of *Sweden* being ready to receive them at the Head of forty thousand Veteran Troops ; and upon this the *Danes* and *Moscovites*, who had been so long in a Confederacy against *Sweden*, began to look very cool upon one another. The *Dane* drew up his Forces under the Cannon of *Copenhagen*, as if he had some Jealousy of his old

Old Allie, and the Czar soon after return'd with his Troops to Germany. And, it seems, not only the *Dane*, but other *German* Princes began to be apprehensive that if this Enterprize had succeeded, the Czar would have made himself Master of *Sweden*, and have been a very formidable Neighbour to many of them, which the *Dane* did not sufficiently consider when the Scheme was first laid for the Descent on *Schonen*; but being now pretty well convinc'd of his Error, he chose rather to sit down with the vast Expence he had been at in Order to the Invasion of *Sweden*, and let the Affair entirely drop, than contribute any further to the Aggrandizing the *Russian* Emperor, who was become too powerful already. The *Dane* being now left almost alone to defend himself against the *Swede*; was threatned in return with an Invasion of *Zeeland* by his *Swedish* Majesty, which had certainly been put in Execution, if it had not been that King *George* was under some Apprehensions that those Preparations of the *Swedes* were intended against his Dominions, and thereupon sent a Squadron of Men of War to the Assistance of his *Danish* Majesty, which put an end to the King of *Sweden*'s intended Enterprize against *Zeeland*.

The following Year, 1718. the *Swedes* King of
march'd two Armies into *Norway*, one to the *Sweden*
Northward as high as *Drontheim*, and the o- *Invades*
ther led by the King in Person towards *Norway*.
Christiana, laying the whole Country under
Contribution, there being no Army in *Nor-*
way strong enough to oppose them; but the
King of *Sweden* laying Siege to *Frederickshall*, *Is kill'd*
was unfortunately Shot in the Trenches, and *before Fre-*
the *Danes* thereby deliver'd from their Fears: *derickshall*.

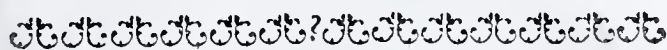
For had the *Swedes* made themselves Masters of *Fredericksball*, as it was computed they might have done in a Fortnight more, all *Norway* had been irrecoverably lost, and the *Danish* Dominions reduc'd to a very narrow Compass. By the Death of the King of *Sweden*, the War between *Denmark* and that Crown was in a manner brought to a Conclusion, tho' the Peace was not formally sign'd till the Year 1720. When the *Swedes* being invaded and distress'd by the *Russians*, were oblig'd to accept of such Conditions as the Mediators and Guarrantees of it, the Kings of *Great Britain* and *France*, were pleas'd to prescribe.

Treaty
between
Denmark
and *Sweden*
Ann^o 1720

By the 5th Article of this Treaty, the King of *Denmark* oblig'd himself not to assist his *Czarish* Majesty against *Sweden*, or permit the *Russian* Men of War to enter his Ports. And by the 6th Article, the *Swedes* oblig'd themselves not to oppose such Measures as should be taken by the said Mediators in behalf of the King of *Denmark*, in Relation to the Dominions of the Duke of *Holstein*. By the 7th Article, the King of *Denmark* promises to deliver up to *Sweden* the City of *Stralsund*, and part of *Pomerania* as far as the River *Pene*, to evacuate the Fortrefs of *Marstrand*, the Isle of *Rugen*, and all other Islands which were taken by the *Danes* in the late War ; as also the Town of *Wismar* in *Mecklenburgh* : In Consideration whereof, the *Swedes* by the 9th Article renounce the Privilege of passing the *Sound* without paying Toll, and agreed to pay the same Toll as the *English* and *Dutch*. And by the 10th Article, the Crown of *Sweden* engages to pay to the King of *Denmark* six hundred thousand Crowns before the

abovesaid

abovesaid Places be deliver'd to the *Swedes*. And by a separate Article, it was agreed that *Wismar*, the Fortifications whereof were demolish'd, should never be fortified again. As to *Bremen* and *Verden*, these Provinces were confirm'd to King *George* by the *Swedes* by another Treaty, which hath been mention'd already ; and are now a fine Addition to his *German* Territories, lying contiguous to them, and having a Communication with the Ocean.



C H A P. X.

Treats of the Arms, Stile and Titles of the Kings of Denmark, of the present Royal Family, and Prerogatives of the Crown ; of their Nobility and Orders of Knighthood ; and of the Interest of Denmark in Relation to other Powers.

THE King of *Denmark* bears Party of three, and Coupé of two, which makes twelve Quarters. In the first Or, Seme of Hearts Gules, three Lions Passant Gardant Azure, crown'd languid and arm'd of the first, for *Denmark*. 2. Gules, a Lion Rampant Or, crown'd and arm'd of the first in his Paws a Battle Ax Argent, hilted of the second for *Norway*. 3. Gules, a Lion Passant Gardant Or, on nine Hearts of the same in Fesse, for *Gothland*. 4. Gules, a Dragon crown'd Or, for *Schonen*. 5. Azure, three Crowns Or, for *Sweden*. 6. Gules, a Paschal Lamb Argent, supporting a Flag of the same mark'd with a Cross Gules, for *Jutland*. 7. Or, two Lions Passant Gardant Azure, for *Sleswick*. 8. Gules, a Fish crown'd Argent, for *Iceland*: Over these

Arms of
the K. of
Denmark.

these eight Quarters a great Cross *Argent* (which is the antient Device of the Kingdom) On the Centre of which are plac'd the Arms of *Ditmarsh* (*viz.*) *Gules*, a Cavalier arm'd *Argent*. 9. *Gules*, a Nettle Leaf open and charg'd in the middle with a little Escutcheon, the whole *Argent* for *Holstein*. 10. *Gules*, a Cygnet *Argent* gorg'd with a Crown *Or*, for *Stormarsh*. 11. *Gules*, two Fesses *Or*, for *Delmenhorst*. 12. *Gules*, a Cross Pattree Fitchtree *Argent*, for *Oldenburgh*. The Shield surrounded with the Collar of the Order of the Elephant. The Crest is a Crown *Or*, flower'd rais'd with eight Diadems, terminating in a Mond of the same. The Motto, *Pietas & Justitia Coronant*.

Stile of
the King.

The Stile of this Prince, is King of *Denmark* and *Norway*; of the *Goths* and *Vandals*, Duke of *Sleswick*, *Holstein*, *Stormar* and *Ditmarsh*, and Earl of *Oldenburgh* and *Delmenhorst*. The present King is *Frederick IV*. Son of *Christian V*. And *Charlotta Amelia*, Daughter to *William Landgrave* of *Hesse*. He was born the 11th of *October*, 1671. and succeeded his Father the fourth Day of *September*, 1699. He married the Princess *Louisa*, the Daughter of *Gustavus Adolphus*, Duke of *Mecklenburgh* *Gustraw*, by whom he had Issue, 1. Prince *Christian*, born *November* the 30th, 1699. 2. *Charlotte Amelia*, born *October* the 6th 1706. and some other Children since dead. Queen *Louisa* dying lately, he married the Daughter of Count *Raventlaw*, Chancellor of *Denmark*, within four Days after her Decease.

His
Family.

Prerogative.

The King of *Denmark* is an absolute Prince, as hath been already observ'd, and consequently his Prerogative unbounded. He is pleas'd, however, to act by Laws and Rules of

of his own, or his Ancestors framing, which he takes the Liberty of repealing and altering when he sees fit. He is the Guardian of all Noble Orphans, and hath the Marriage of all Heirs and Heiresses, as the Kings of *England* had formerly : And none can sell, or Alien their Lands without the leave of the Crown, the King being entitled to a third part of the Purchase Money upon every Sale. There was little or no Distinction between the Nobility and Gentry of these Kingdoms formerly : They compos'd but one Estate, as in *Sweden*, and had no particular Titles ; but of late they have introduc'd the Titles of Baron and Count , of which Number there may be thirty or forty, who are generally Creatures of the Court. These are the only Subjects who have the Liberty of disposing their Estates by Will ; all other Estates are distributed among the Children as the Law directs upon the Death of the Ancestor. Foreigners, or Men of mean Extract, 'tis observ'd, are generally more consider'd in the Court of *Denmark* than the antient Nobility, and more frequently preferr'd to Posts in the Government and Army. These, says Mr. *Molesworth*, are the best Executors of the Will and Pleasure of Arbitrary Princes, and are caress'd accordingly ; and there is this further Advantage, as he observes, in preferring this kind of Men, that after they are grown Rich by Extortion, and have suck'd the Blood of the Poor : When Clamours grow loud against them, the Court can squeeze these Leaches, laying all the Odium of their own Oppressions at their Door ; and this without any Danger of discontenting the Nobility, who are rather pleased

pleased than offended with the precipitate Fall of these Mushroom Ministers.

Knights.

There are two Orders of Knighthood in *Denmark*, namely, that of the Elephant, and that of *Danbrage*. The first is the most honourable, and conferr'd only on Persons of the highest Quality, or extraordinary Merit. It was instituted almost three hundred Years ago by *Christian I.* at his Son's Wedding. Their Badge is an Elephant with a Castle on its Back, set with Diamonds, and hung on a water'd Sky colour'd Ribbon, worn as the Knights of the Garter wear their *George* in *England*. The other Order of Knighthood, is the Reward of Inferior Noblemen, or Gentlemen: Their Badge is a White Ribbon with Red Edges, worn over the contrary Shoulder, with a small Cross of Diamonds hung to it; and an Embroidery on the Breast of their Coats like a Star, in which is the Motto *Pietate & Justitia*.

Court of
Denmark.

In the Court of *Denmark*, Mr. *Molesworth* observes, no Ensigns of Majesty appear, except such as are Military, and belong to the Horse and Foot Guards, or Trabants, whom he compares to the Yeomen of the Guard in the *English* Court; accordingly Trumpets, Kettle Drums, and Military Musick are here in Perfection, and us'd every Day as much as in the Camp. But here are seen no Sword of State, Heralds, Maces, Chancellors, Purse, &c. on the most solemn Occasions. At Dinner the Queen, the King's Children, Relations, Ministers, and General Officers sit down with his Majesty. The Court Martial inviting every Day one or other, till they have all had the Honour of Dining with the King in their Turns. A Page says Grace,
and

and tho' the King, as well as every one of his Subjects, hath a Confessor: There are no Chaplains in waiting, as in the Court of *England*, one or two Gentlemen only wait at Table, the rest of the Attendants are Servants in Liveries; nor is the Ceremony of the Knee us'd to the King. The Officers of the Household are, the Marshal, who regulates the Affairs of the Family, and gives Notice when Dinner, or Supper are ready. The Comptroller of the Kitchen, who Places the Dishes of Meat on the Table. The Master of the Horse, who looks after the King's Stables, and Studs of Mares, of which the King has a great many good ones, especially a Breed peculiar to him, of light Iron-Greys, with Black Heads, Tails and Mains. But, says Mr. *Molesworth*, these Officers may rather be compar'd to those in the Houses of an *English* Nobleman, than to the Officers of the King of *England's* Household.

Denmark at this Day seems to be much the weakest of the three Northern Powers: *Moscow*, which thirty Years ago was look'd upon with contempt, by the constant War it hath had with the *Swedes*, hath so improv'd in Military Discipline, as to become a Terror to all its Northern Neighbours; and that large Extent of Country, with the Ports they have made themselves Masters of in the *Baltick*, hath let them into a considerable Share of Trade with most of the Nations of *Europe*, and given them such an Opportunity of improving their Shipping, that the *English* find themselves under a necessity every Year almost of sending a strong Squadron into the *Baltick*, to protect either the *Swede*, or *Dane*, or their own Trade, against their Insults; tho'

The Condition of *Denmark* in Relation to other Powers

one would think the united Fleets of *Sweden* and *Denmark* were yet sufficient to curb the *Moscovite* without Foreign Assistance. These two Nations, indeed, have formerly shewn the greatest Antipathy to each other, and been almost in a continued State of War; nor could any thing have united them but their mutual Danger from *Moscow*. *Sweden* seems apprehensive that *Russia* will some time or other impose a King upon them, viz. (the Duke of *Holstein*) which may bring them in Subjection to that Empire; and *Denmark* cannot but be sensible if *Russia* and *Sweden* were govern'd by the same Councils it would be difficult for them to maintain their Independency long. *Denmark* also is under continual Apprehensions that the Court of *Russia* will attempt the restoring the Duke of *Holstein* to his Dominions, which the *Dane* hath seiz'd, and perhaps retaliate the Injury, and carry the War into *Denmark* it self. This makes the *Dane* call loudly on the Court of *Hanover* and other *German* Powers for their Assistance, insinuating that their Dominions also will be expos'd if a *Russian* Army should enter *Holstein*. And notwithstanding *Denmark* is in it self become a very inconsiderable Kingdom, yet as there are so many Powers whose Interests are bound up with that of *Denmark*, who can never with any good Policy see the *Holstein*, and consequently the *Moscovite* Arms make any Progress in *Germany*, the *Dane* seems to be as well supported as he can wish at present; especially since he hath nothing to fear from *Sweden*, who is exceeding poor, having lost great part of its best Territories in the late War, and in continual Danger of being attack'd it self by the *Russians*. No Peace
can

can be expected to continue long between *Sweden* and *Russia* if they refuse to declare the Duke of *Holstein* Successor to the Crown of that Kingdom; and if they should comply with the Court of *Russia*, and declare the Duke Heir to the Crown, the Consequences may be no less fatal. And however these Powers may be seemingly reconcil'd by the Mediation of other Princes for the present, they will probably one Day set all *Europe* in a Flame. The Trade of the *Baltick* will be again interrupted, and want a Fleet of Men of War to protect it, which may be an Expence equivalent to what we can propose to get by that Commerce. How happy therefore would it be for this Nation, if Naval Stores might be had from our own Plantations in *America*, and we had no Reason to concern our selves in the Quarrels of the Northern Crowns? Honour may be procur'd by the fitting out Royal Fleets, and visiting annually every distant Coast; but that the Wealth or Trade of the Nation will be encreased by such Expeditions is not equally certain.

THE
PRESENT STATE
OF
GREENLAND.

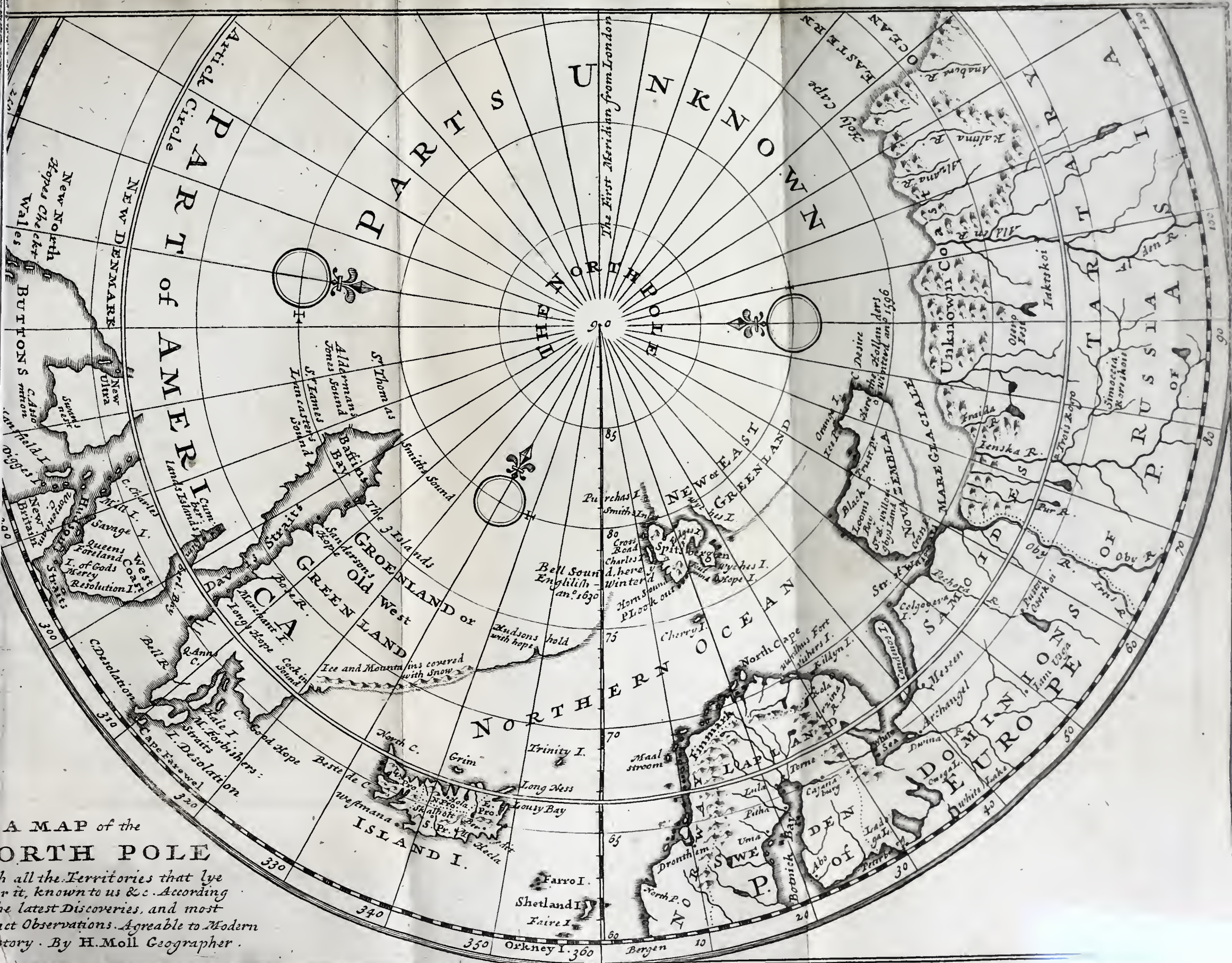
C H A P. I.

*Treats of the Situation, Inhabitants, Animals,
and Produce of West Greenland.*

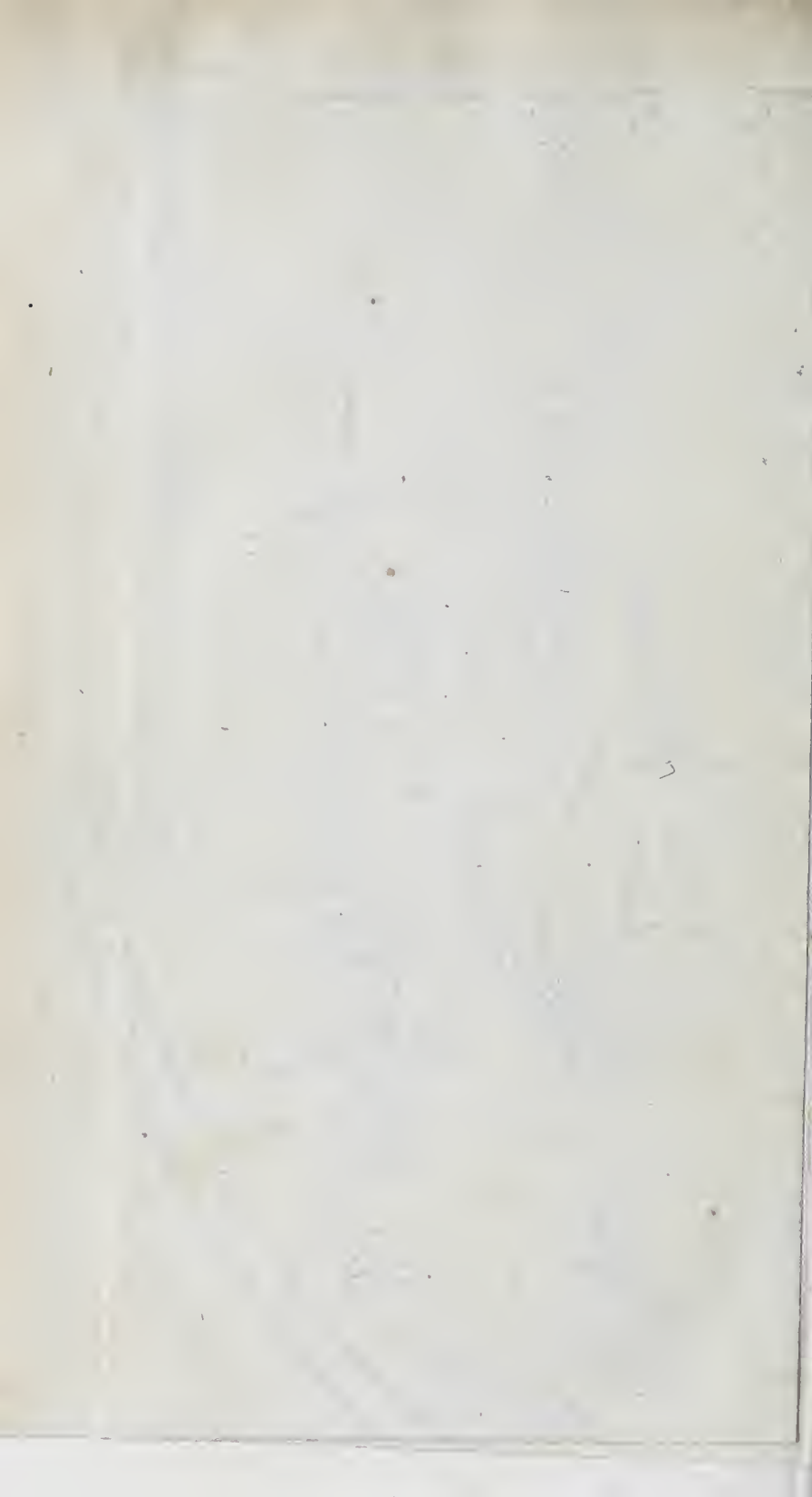
*West
Greenland
and East
Greenland
on the
same Con-
tinent.*



EAST and *West Greenland* may possibly be upon the same Continent, and I'm inclin'd to think they are; but as the Extent from *Cape Farewel*, the South-West part of it, in the Latitude of sixty Degrees thirty Minutes, to the North-East Part, in the Latitude of eighty and higher, is a prodigious Tract of Land, if contiguous, they may very well be look'd upon as distinct Countries, and describ'd a-part. Our Maps and most of our Geographers call the Western Side *Groenland*, and the East Side *Greenland*; but 'tis certain the West, which was first discover'd, went by the Name of *Greenland* long before the other was known, and probably the latter was so call'd by the first *English Discoverer*



A MAP of the
NORTH POLE
with all the Territories that lye
round it, known to us &c. According
to the latest Discoveries, and most
correct Observations. Agreeable to Modern
Astronomy. By H. Moll Geographer.



coverers, as imagining it to be the same Continent with *West Greenland*. The *Dutch* indeed call'd the East Part of it *Spitsbergen*, from the Craggy Rocks and Mountains which appear'd upon the Coast; *Spitz* in that Language signifying cragged, or pointed; and *Berg* a Hill. The King of *Denmark*, it seems, look'd upon this North-East Country, on the first Discovery to be part of *Old Greenland*; of which he pretends to the Sovereignty, and accordingly claim'd the Dominion of those Seas, endeavouring to exclude the *English* from the Whale Fishery there; and had he been strong enough to make good his Title, would no doubt have insisted on it to this Day: But as there were no Inhabitants here who could be his Subjects; and the *Danes* had never cast an Eye on this Part of *Greenland* till the *English* began the Whale Fishing in those Seas, they did not think fit to discontinue their Fishing, till their good Friends the *Dutch* spoil'd that Trade (of which hereafter). I proceed now to the Description of *West Greenland*, or *Old Greenland*, of which the King of *Denmark* calls himself Sovereign.

West Greenland, which the King of *Denmark* Situation. Claims the Dominion of, is a Tract of Land lying four or five Days Sail to the Northward and Westward of *Iceland*. This Country, 'tis pretended, the *Norwegians* discover'd about the Year 982. That they built several Towns here, converted the Natives to *Christianity*, erected Bishopricks; and annually levy'd a Tribute, or Duty, on the Inhabitants, which serv'd to maintain the King of *Norway's* Table. But however that Matter be, certain it is, that when the *English* Captain *Forbisher*, in the Year 1577, came upon this Coast as he was

was endeavouring to find out a North-West Passage to *India*, the People were perfectly Barbarous, not so much as the Ruins of any Towns were to be met with; and there was no Reason to think the People had ever been civiliz'd, much less instructed in the *Christian* Religion. And this *Hudson*, *Davis*, *Baffin*, *James*, and all our Discoverors to the North-West unanimously agree in. Nay, the *Danes* themselves, who pretend the Natives are their Subjects, making a Voyage thither in the Year 1605. could not so much as bring the Inhabitants to converse, or Traffick with them; but found them ever upon their Guard, and ready to surprize and fall upon the *Danes* as Enemies and Invaders of their Country. And notwithstanding they took several of the Natives by Force, and brought them to *Denmark*, they could never bring them to be sociable, or learn any thing from them of their Country: So that what the Kings of *Denmark* mean by having the Dominion of these People, whom they never conquer'd, a Nation so far from acknowledging the *Danes* their Sovereigns, that they always stood upon their Defence when their Ships approach'd their Shoars, may be difficult to imagine.

Face of
the Coun-
try.

The Country is generally Rocky and Mountainous, and their Hills cover'd with Snow; their Shoars are frozen up great part of the Year, as those of *Iceland* are; so that there is no coming near them. There have been several Bays and Inlets discover'd to the North-West, particularly *Baffins Bay*, where the Adventurers sail'd as high as eighty Degrees, but no Passage could ever be discover'd from hence to the South, or rather Western Ocean. On the contrary, there seems all the Reason

n the World to believe that the Continent of *Greenland* is contiguous to that of *America*; for first 'tis observ'd, that to the Westward the Ice is unmovable, and seems to adhere to the Land, whereas in the Ocean, tho' there be large Fields, or prodigious Mountains of Ice, they are frequently in motion: And was there a Communication between our Northern Ocean and the *Western American Ocean*, or *South Sea*, as it is call'd; the Ice would sometimes be separated, and they might have made their way through the Icy Mountains, as they do in other Seas in the same Latitude. Another Reason alledg'd against a Passage to the *Western*, or *American Ocean*, or *South Sea*, this way is, that the Tides constantly flow from the East to the West, where they are unrestrain'd, and not compell'd to alter their Course by the winding of the Shoars, and Ebb back again, which they would not do if they did not meet with Land on that Side to resist their Course.

There are abundance of small Islands upon the Coast of *Greenland*, which Form several good Bays and Harbours. The Rivers also which fall into these Seas are large and Navigable; into some of which our Discoverers relate they sail'd up ten or twelve Leagues, and found them plentifully stor'd with Fish; and between the Mountains were many fertile Plains and Valleys. The Air, as may well be expected in these Latitudes, is very Cold three parts of the Year; and the Fogs are almost as troublesome to the Mariners as the Ice. But what Travellers take most Notice of, is the Northern Light, or *Aurora Borealis*, which in the Spring of the Year about the New Moon darts Streams of Light from

Con-
tiguous
to *America*

Harbours
and
Rivers.

*Aurora
Borealis*

from the *Horizon* almost to the *Zenith*, as quick as Lightning, without ceasing, till near Break of Day, being seen frequently in *Iceland*, *Norway*, and other Northern Countries ; and is of the same kind with that which was visible in *England* in the Year 1716. to our great Astonishment, and hath been seen here several times since in a less Degree. As to the Various Figures and Battles which a fruitful Imagination might Discover in the Air at that time ; let every Man form such Images as are most suitable to his Fancy, and leave his Neighbours at Liberty to enjoy their several happy Conceits. But it is observable, that these Lights never arise to the Southward of the East or West.

Persons
of the Na-
tives.

Their
Temper.

As to the Persons of the Natives, they are rather short than tall, and strong built ; their Hair and Eyes Black, their Complexions a very dark Tawny ; their Faces flat and broad, like the *Tartars*, and their Lips thick, as the *Negroes*. They appear to have been extremely Shy, and upon their Guard whenever they converse with Foreigners ; and where they have enter'd into any Familiarity with our People, it seems to have been only to get an Opportunity of stealing something from them, or to do them Mischief. But as our Ships have forcibly carried off several of the Natives, and kill'd and wounded others, perhaps this hath given them such a Prejudice to Strangers as is not easy to be remov'd, and occasion'd their looking upon us to be as Barbarous as we esteem them. It is not for any one Adventurer to say, I treated the Natives civilly, and endeavour'd by all the good Usage imaginable to bring them to traffick with me, and be sociable : If their Country-
Men

men have ever receiv'd ill Usage from a Foreigner before, they are all alarm'd no doubt, and expect to be dealt with in the same manner again. Their treating us as Enemies therefore may be no Effect of a savage Temper, nor ought they to be denominated barbarous on this Account; but it may be imputed rather to their Fears, or their Resentment, on Account of Injuries receiv'd.

They do not seem to want Courage, having engag'd our Men with Slings, and Bows and Arrows, when we have fir'd both great and small Shot; and in this only they differ from the *Samoieds* and *Laplanders*, who are a timorous Generation. Their Habits and way of living is also much like theirs. They cloath themselves with the Skins of Rein Deer, of Fishes or Fowls, and are drawn on Sledges by Dogs or other Animals. They live in Tents, wandring from Place to Place in Summer, and in Caves or Huts under the Hills in Winter, having subterraneous Passages from one Dwelling to another, and their ordinary Employments are Fishing and Hunting. Their Women make long Blue Strokes on their Foreheads, Lips and Chins, with very coarse Paint. They braid their Hair, and have Pendants in their Ears. The *Greenlanders* speak very thick, and in the Throat, pronouncing the Letter G roughly like the *Tartars*. They want the Letter R, using L instead of it, and 'tis said, have some *Danish* Words in their Language: But those who were brought over to *Denmark* however wou'd never learn the *Danish* Tongue. They have no Value for Gold or Silver, but Iron and Iron Ware, such as Knives, Scissors, Needles, &c. they are very fond of, and have attempted to steal even Anchors from the

Habits
and Way
of Life.

Ship's Crew; but what Use they would be of to them is not easy to imagine, for they don't seem to have the Art of Forging Iron, the Heads of their Darts and Arrows being arm'd with a Fishes Bone instead of Iron. They do not eat their Meat raw, as some of our first Discoverers suggested, but boil'd or roasted; and their common Food is the Flesh of Rein Deer, of Foxes, Dogs, or dry'd Fish; as for Bread-Corn I don't find they have any in the Country.

Government.

Their Government, I'm satisfy'd, none of our Travellers are so well acquainted with as to give us any tolerable Account of it, though none of them but say something on this Head, according to their several Humours or Prepossessions; some will have them to live in a State of Nature, and that the Weakest only submit to the Strongest, because they can't help it. Others have found out abundance of petty Monarchs; and a third tells us of a mighty Emperor beyond the Mountains, which seems to be the pure Effect of Imagination. Their Religion we are not much better acquainted with. Travellers relate they have found abundance of deformed and monstrous Images on the Shoar, which they suppose to be their Gods, and that when the People would have you put any Confidence in them, they point to the Sun, whom they seem to adore, and lay their Hands upon their Breasts. This Planet therefore is generally supposed to be the supreme Object of their Worship.

Religion of the Greenlanders.

The Beasts that are found in *Greenland* are Bears, Foxes, Rein Deer, Dogs, and Sea Horses or Morfes, which are deem'd an amphibious Animal; but I shall have occasion to say more of these when I come to the Eastern

Greenland,

Greenland, or *Spitzbergen* ; the Whale and Sword Fish also I shall defer describing till I come to treat of that Country, where they seem to abound more than in any other, only it may be proper to observe here, that the Sword Fish is frequently stil'd the Sea Unicorn, and that the Teeth of some large Fish have been frequently brought from old *Greenland* to *Denmark*, and call'd Unicorns Horns. Their Rivers are full of Salmon and other good Fish; and besides their Red Geese and other Water Fowl, they have White Partridges as in *Lapland*.

There is scarce any Timber to be found near the Coasts of *West Greenland*, and but little Underwood. Some of their Valleys, 'tis said, are in Appearance fruitful, and might bear Corn if they were manur'd, but I don't find the Experiment hath been ever made. Their Mountains are perpetually cover'd with Snow, and yield scarce any Plants or Herbage, according to the Accounts we have receiv'd ; but as our People have never had an Opportunity of travelling up into the Country, a particular Account of the Produce of the Soil can't yet be expected. The Structure of their Boats is much admir'd by our Seamen, of which they have two kinds, the one a small Vessel, just large enough for one Man ; and the other, thirty or forty Foot long, with ten or more Seats for the Rowers. The Ribs of their Boats are made of Whalebone tack'd together with the Sinews of Animals, and cover'd with Seal Skins. The lesser Boats are manag'd with one Oar, broad at both Ends, with which they paddle sometimes on one Side the Boat, and sometimes on

Produce
of the
Soil.

the other, rowing with an incredible Swiftneſs, inſomuch that one of our ſix or eight oar'd Boats, 'tis ſaid, cannot paſs them.



C H A P. II.

Treats of the Situation of New Greenland ; of the firſt Diſcovery of it ; and of the Probability there is of its being contiguous to Aſia, as well as America ; and of the Attempts which have been made to diſcover a Paſſage to China this Way.

The Situation and Extent of New Greenland.

NEW GREENLAND lies directly to the Northward of the North Cape of Norway, the moſt Southerly part of it in the Latitude of 76, and extending Northwards, for ought appears, as far as the Pole ; but our Adventurers have actually diſcover'd to 80 Degrees and beyond. How far it extends to the Eaſt and Weſt is uncertain ; but the moſt probable Opinion is, that it is contiguous to *Aſia* on the Eaſt, and to *Old Greenland* on the Weſt.

The firſt Northern Discoveries.

The firſt Northern Discoveries were made at the Charge of a Company of *Engliſh* Merchants, incorporated in the Reign of King *Edward VI.* and ſtil'd *The Merchants Adventurers, for diſcovering of Lands unknown, &c.* Their principal Deſign was to diſcover a Paſſage to *India* and *China* by the North Eaſt, and to come in for a Share of that Rich Trade with the *Portugueſe*, by a ſhorter way than by the *Cape of Good Hope* ; or at leaſt they hop'd to diſcover ſome Countries where they might eſtabliſh a Trade of equal Advantage to them.

Another

Another Reason of their endeavouring to make these Discoveries, seems to be, that it was then look'd upon as base and unfair to encroach upon, or supplant any other Nation in their Trade, and take the Advantage of their Discoveries; and the World seem to be of much the same Opinion at this Day, or it is not to be conceiv'd what Pretence there can be to exclude the Emperor's Subjects from a Share of the *India* Trade, which so many other Nations enjoy at this time. Nay, we seem to think now, that the meer being possess'd of any Branch of Trade, however we came into it, entitles us to the Monopoly of it, and that we may by Force exclude any other People who would endeavour to put in for a Share. But had the *English* govern'd themselves by this Maxim the last hundred and fifty Years, their *High Mightinesses* must still have been *The Poor Distressed States*: For the *English* were first in the *Indies*, in *Russia*, in the Herring and Whale Fishery, &c. and have suffer'd the *Dutch* not only to share these Trades, but to intrude themselves into the whole Business almost, and exclude their Benefactors, the first Discoverers, from the most profitable Branches of Commerce, which they effected chiefly by bribing our Ministry in some of the late Reigns. It is justly said of the *Dutch* Grandeur, that it was produc'd and maintain'd by the Corruption of our Ministers. But to return from this Digression, if it be one. The *English* Company for Discovery of unknown Lands, in May 1553, fitted out three Ships, of which Sir *Hugh Willoughby* was Admiral, who being separated from one of them, doubled the North Cape of *Norway* with the other two; and according to a Note found

found in his Cabbin, and steering North and North East from thence for some Weeks, discover'd Land, which the *English* say could be no other than *Greenland*, but the *Dutch* will have it to be *Nova Zembla*, or *Newland*, by which Name, 'tis observable, both *Greenland* and *Nova Zembla* went on the first Discovery, and 'tis highly probable they are the same Continent; the boldest and most inquisitive Adventurers not having been able to discover any Passage between them. But which ever it was Sir *Hugh Willoughby* discover'd, he afterwards steer'd South, or South West again, and came upon the Coast of *Moscovite Lapland* in *September* following, and being imbay'd with the Ice, he and all his Company dy'd, as it was at first suppos'd, by Extremity of Cold; but from other Accidents of the like Nature, it is most probable the Scurvy was their greatest Enemy, having no other Food but Salt Meat in the Ship. They were most of them alive in *January*, as appears from their Journals; and one would think as they were able to bear the Cold in that rigorous Month, they would have subsisted afterwards if they had had no other Misfortune to contend with. But the Instances I shall give hereafter prove it to a Demonstration, that with moderate Care and suitable Provision, there is no part of the World yet discover'd, but is habitable, even in the Winter Season, and that by People bred in more Southern Latitudes. And as the Cold of *Lapland* does not seem to be less vigorous than that of *Greenland*, there is no reason to believe but if a Colony was settled in the latter, their Posterity might live in *Greenland*, when they were enur'd to it, with as much Satisfaction as the *Laplanders* do in their

Country.

Country. But notwithstanding the Admiral, Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, perish'd in this first Attempt to discover the Countries of the North, one of his Ships, call'd the *Edward Bonaventure*, Captain *Chancellor* Commander, which had been separated from him, doubled the North Cape, and discover'd the Bay of *Archangel*, whereby he settled a Trade directly with *Russia*, which the *English* enjoy'd alone for many Years, till the *Dutch* supplanted them, as hath been shewn in treating of *Russia*.

The *English* Company still persisted in their Endeavours to discover a North East Passage, and accordingly in the Year 1556, fitted out a Ship under the Command of Captain *Stephen Borough*, Comptroler of the Navy in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, who sail'd beyond the Bay of *Archangel* to the North East part of *Russia* and *Samoieda*, discovering the River *Pechora*, *Nova Zembla* and the Straits of *Wai-gats*, which divide *Nova Zembla* from the Continent of *Russia*, after which he return'd home; and our Adventurers, wearied with endeavouring to find a Passage this Way, which might lead them to the *Chinese* Seas, next attempted to find a Way to the *Indies* by the North West, in which they employ'd Sir *Martin Forbisher* in the Years 1576, 77, and 78. and a bolder or more skilful Discoverer they could not have sent out. But after three Years fruitless Labour to make his Way into the Western or South Sea, as 'tis call'd, he was oblig'd to desist from that Enterprize, either by the intervening Land, or Ice which adher'd to the Land, as were many other Commanders afterwards.

In the Year 1580, the *English* Company fitted out two Ships under the Command of
Captain

1556.
Borough's
Expedition to the
North
East.

1576.
Forbisher

1580.
Pett and
Jackman.

Captain *Arthur Pett*, and Captain *Charles Jackman*, to endeavour the Discovery of a North East Passage to *China* again. They pass'd the Straits of *Waigats*, between *Nova Zembla* and *Russia*, running as far Eastward as they cou'd for the Ice, and then return'd back through the said Straits; but *Arthur Pett* was suppos'd to be lost in his Passage home, being never hear'd of more. The *English* alone frequented the Northern Seas hitherto, but now the *Dutch* began to follow their Steps, coming to *Kola* in *Lapland*, and afterwards into the Bay of *Archangel*. And in the Year 1596, the *Dutch* fitted out four Ships, *William Barents* being their chief Pilot, who sail'd to *Nova Zembla*, pass'd the Straits of *Weigats*, and sail'd to the Eastward, till he was oblig'd by the Ice to return back. The same Captain *Barents* sail'd to the Straits of *Weigats* the following Year with seven Ships, in order to force a Passage through to the Eastern Ocean, but was again prevented by the Ice. Upon the Return of these Ships, the *Dutch* being still confident there must be a North East Passage, sent out *William Barents* with two other Ships, who now stood more to the Northward, and came to an Island in the Latitude of 74, by them call'd *Bear Island*, but by the *English*, *Cherry Island*; from hence they sail'd Northward as high as 80, and saw the Land by them call'd *Spitzbergen*, from its craggy Promontories, but by the *English*, *Greenland*, and here they went on Shore. *Barents* afterwards sail'd back to *Cherry Island*, and from thence to the North East of *Nova Zembla*, till they came into the Latitude of 76, anchoring in *Icehaven*, as they call'd it, where they were block'd up with Ice in *September*, so that there

1596.
Barents.

was

was no getting out, whereupon they went ashore in order to build them an House, and winter there; and found great Store of Timber Trees driven on the Coast for their purpose; though as they observ'd, there were none growing in the Country. By the End of *September* it froze so very hard, that the Nails and Iron they us'd stuck to their Fingers and Lips if they touch'd them. The Sun left them about the fourth of *November*, but then they saw the Moon continually Day and Night, without going down, which with the Snow, furnish'd them with a tolerable Light: By the eighth of *January* they perceiv'd Day Light again, and by the 24th could see the Edge of the Sun, and the 27th the full Body of that Planet was above the Horizon. On the 29th of *April* they saw the Sun to the North, and from that time they had the Sun with them all the twenty four Hours. They staid here till the fourteenth of *June*, and finding no probability of disengaging their Ship from the Ice, ventur'd to Sea in two open Boats, having buried one Man at *Nova Zembla*; another had his great Toe frozen off, and *William Barents* the Pilot, and another of their Company, were fallen dangerously ill. It was with a great deal of Difficulty they made their Way through the Ice in their Boats: In some Places they were forc'd to drag the Boats two or three hundred Paces over it, and on the 20th of *April*, their Pilot *William Barents*; and their other Sick Man dy'd, and the 5th of *July* another of their Company dy'd. The 20th of *August*; having cross'd the *White Sea*, they arriv'd safe on the Coast of *Russian Lapland*; and on the second of *September* came to *Kola* in *Lapland*, where they met with Captain *John*

Corneilson (who sail'd out with them the last Year) and several other *Dutch* Vessels. (From *Ice Harbour* to *Kola*, whither they sail'd in their open Boats, is above a thousand Miles). Here they went on board *Corneilson*, and arrived in *Holland* the first of *November*.

1607.
Hudson's
first Voy-
age to
Greenland.

Notwithstanding the *Dutch* had found such Difficulties in searching for a North East Passage, the *English* Merchants determin'd to attempt it again, and accordingly fitted out a small Ship, of which Captain *Henry Hudson* had the Command, who sail'd from *England* the first of *May*, 1607, and steering to the Northward, arriv'd the 20th of *June* following on the Coast of *Greenland* in the Latitude of 78. The 12th of *July* they found themselves in 80 Degrees, *Greenland* bearing South South West of them 12 Leagues. But the Ice and Fogs they met with made it very troublesome and dangerous Sailing. Here *Hudson* sent some of his People on Shoar, who brought on board Morfes Teeth, Whale Bone, and Deers Horns, having quench'd their Thirst at a Stream of fresh Water they met with by the Sea Side, for it seems the Weather was very hot on the Shoar. Mr. *Hudson* afterwards saw the high Land, extending as he conjectured, as far as 82, and hop'd to have gone round it, but found it impossible, on Account of the great Quantity of Ice to the Northwards, which adher'd to the Land; and he assures us, that between 78 Degrees 30 Minutes, and 82 Degrees this way, there is no Passage.

Capt. *Hudson* set out again from the River *Thames* on the 22d of *April*, 1608. having sixteen Men on board; and the 29th of *May* found himself in 73 Degrees 13 Minutes, when they

they saw the Sun on the North Meridian, 5 Degrees 35 Minutes above the Horizon; and the third of *June* the North Cape of *Norway* bore South West eight Leagues from them. They met with the first Ice on the 9th of *June*, being then in the Latitude 75 Degrees 29 Minutes, and held a North East Course, endeavouring to make their Way through the Ice, till they were got four or five Leagues within it, but found the Ice a Head of them so firm and thick, that they were forc'd to return the Way they went in, and with great Difficulty at length freed themselves from it. They directed their Course afterwards to the Eastward, and being in the Latitude of 72 Degrees odd Minutes, came in Sight of *Swart Cliff* in *Nova Zembla*, which bore South East four Leagues from them, and sailing close to the Land, they sent some People on Shoar, who found Grass, Moss, and Flowers growing. They observ'd a Cross standing by the Sea Side, and a great deal of Timber driven on Shoar, and saw Fires had been made there. They cou'd discover the Foot Steps also of Bears, Deer and Foxes, and brought on board with them some Whale Fins and Horns of Deer. A Day or two after they saw an Herd of White Deer, and kill'd a great many Fowls. Here they observ'd a Current so strong that it carried the Ice and every thing before it. This gave them great Hopes of finding a Passage to the Eastern Ocean, but sounding six or seven Leagues up the Torrent, they found it too shallow for Ships of any Burthen, and hereupon they desisted from any further Attempts, and return'd home. Captain *Hudson* relates, that all the Land he saw in *Nova Zembla* afforded a pleasant Prospect; that

Ccc 2

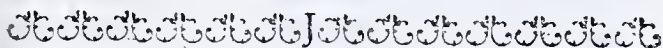
there

there was much high Land with no Snow upon it, and in some Places the Land appear'd Green, with Herds of Deer feeding upon it. He ascribes the great Quantities of Ice in these Seas near the Pole to the many Sounds, Bays and Rivers in *Nova Zembla*, *Greenland*, *Tartary*, *Russia* and *Lapland*, where it is formed; and from hence he concludes, that there can be no navigable Passage to the North East Seas.

1676.
Wood.

The latest Adventurer who attempted the North East Passage is Captain *John Wood*, being fitted out by the Duke of York (afterwards King *James II.*) in the Reign of King *Charles II.* He set sail from the River *Thames* in the *Speedwell*, having another lesser Ship in Company, call'd the *Prosperous Pink*, on the 28th of May, 1676. Captain *Wood* relates, that following the Opinion of *William Barents*, the Dutch Pilot who attempted the same Passage, he steer'd directly North East from the North Cape of *Norway*, in order to fall in between *Greenland* and *Nova Zembla*; but he could find no Sea or Inlet between those Countries; on the contrary, he observ'd the Ice to adhere immovably to the Coast of *Nova Zembla*, and that all the *English* and *Dutch* Pilots had been mistaken in their Conjectures of an open Sea hereabouts, for he cou'd pass no further this Way than to the 76th Degree, of Latitude. Here the Sea was frozen, without any Breach in the Ice, as he cou'd observe in coasting along it, to that Degree that it must have taken up some Centuries to thaw. He concludes therefore that *Greenland* and *Nova Zembla* must be the same Continent; besides, had there been a Passage, says Mr. *Wood*, there wou'd have been some Current, whereas we found

found none, only a small Tide, which rises about eight Foot and Ebbs back again; and as he supposes *Nova Zembla* to join to *Greenland* on the North, so he seems to be of Opinion that *Nova Zembla* joins to *Tartary*, or *Moscovy* on the South, but if it does not, the Strait which divides them is so narrow and choak'd up with Ice that it is unnavigable.



C H A P. III.

Treats of the first Establishment of the Whale Fishery in Greenland by the English; and of the endeavours of the Dutch to deprive them of the Advantages of it.

I Come now to give some Account of the Voyages made to *Greenland*, &c. on Account of the taking Morfes and Whales, which the *English* first observ'd to be in great Numbers in these Seas in their Northern Voyages. The Ships belonging to the *English Russia Company* were the first as far as I can learn that attempted the taking and killing of Morfes, or Sea-Horses on the Ice on the Northern Coast of *Moscovy*, making Oil of their Fat, or Blubber: They also made some Advantage of the Morfes two great Teeth, or Tusks, which were in those Days esteem'd equal to Ivory: But the Morfes being continually hunted on the *Moscovite* Coasts by our Mariners, became very Shy, and in time almost forsook those Shoars. The next Place our People met with Morfes at was *Cherry Island*, discover'd by Captain *Stephen Bennet*, who was fitted out at the Charge of *Sr. Francis Cherry*

Whale
Fishery
first esta-
blish'd
by the
English.

Morfes.

*Cherry
Island.*

*Bennet's
Expedi-
tion to
Cherry
Island.*

Cherry in the Year 1603. And sailing to the Northward from *Kola* in *Lapland* upon Discovery, saw Land in the Latitude of seventy four Degrees odd Minutes, where he went a-Shoar; and finding it to be an Island, gave it the Name of *Cherry Island* in Compliment to his Owner; and observing that the Morfes used these Seas, by some of their Teeth he found on the Shoar, he return'd to *England*, the Season for taking them being past. The next Year, 1604. Captain *Bennet* sail'd to *Cherry Island* again, and found above a thousand Morfes on the Shoar, of which he kill'd several; and the following Year 1605, he made a third Voyage thither, carrying Coppers with him, and made eleven Tuns of Oil of the Morfes Fat, or Blubber; he also brought Home with him great Quantities of their Teeth. The *English* continued these Voyages to *Cherry Island* alone, with great Success till the Year 1610. making more and more Oil every Voyage.

*Poole's Ex-
pedition
to Green-
land.*

In the Year 1610. the *Russia* Company fitted out a Ship call'd the *Amity*, of seventy Tuns, *Jonas Poole* Master, design'd for *Cherry Island*, and to make further Discoveries towards the North Pole. This Adventurer sail'd beyond *Cherry Island* into seventy six Degrees odd Minutes, and had sight of Land, being the same which now goes under the Name of *New Greenland*. He sail'd afterwards into seventy nine Degrees odd Minutes, and came to an Anchor in a good Road, where he sent his Boat on Shoar: His People found some Whale Fins, and great Numbers of Morfes here; and the third of *June* he erected a Cross on the Side of a Hill, from whence the neighbouring Road is still call'd

Cross

Cross Road. And thus he took Possession of the Country call'd *Greenland* for the *English Russia* Company ; and having continued till the latter end of *July* killing *Morses*, and making of *Oil* ; he saw great Numbers of *Whales*, with which he acquainted his Masters at his return, arriving in the *Thames* the last Day of *August*.

The next Year the *Russia* Company fitted out four Ships, two for *Russia*, and two for *Greenland*. The two for *Greenland* were the *Elizabeth* and the *Mary Margaret*, commanded by *Jonas Poole* and *Stephen Bennet* ; and design'd for killing of *Whale* and *Morses* on the Coast of *Greenland* ; for which purpose they entertain'd six or seven *Biscaniers*, who were expert at killing the *Whales*, in their Service ; and appointed *Thomas Edge* to be their Factor, or Supercargo. They set sail from the River *Thames* the 11th of *April* 1611. The *Elizabeth* being appointed to try if it was possible to pass from *Greenland* to the Pole it self. In their Passage to *Greenland* they were much troubled with *Ice*, and saw one Bank of *Ice* to the Eastward of them, above forty Leagues in length (which probably adhered to the Shoar) The two Ships however, the *Elizabeth* and *Mary Margaret* arriv'd safe in *Cross Road* in *Greenland* on the 29th of *May* : Captain *Poole* sail'd from hence as high as the Latitude of eighty, where finding the *Ice* fix'd, and that it was impossible to pass through it ; he steer'd South-West as he found the *Ice* and *Land* lay for above an hundred and twenty Leagues, till he judg'd he was near that part of *Old Greenland* call'd *Hold with Hope*, and ran forty Leagues to the Westward of it, where he saw abundance of *Whales* by the Side of the *Ice*,
which

1611.
The first
Whale
Fishery
in *Green-
land*.

which continu'd all along the Shoar as he sail'd, but finding the Ice tend to the Southwards, and no likelihood of any Passage to the North, he sail'd to *Cherry Island*, where he found some of the Men belonging to the *Mary Margaret* on Shoar, having lost their Ship; tho' they had kill'd several Whales and Morfes, and made a good Quantity of Oil; which was left a-Shoar in *Greenland*; whereupon *Poole* steer'd again for *Greenland* to take in the Effects the *Mary Margaret* had left behind; but while they were preparing to take the Oil and Fins on Board, the *Elizabeth* also unluckily over set, and had not a Hull Ship happen'd to come this way a Whale Fishing, both the Ships Crews had been in Danger of perishing; but the *Hull Ship* took all the Men on Board, with such Goods as they had saved, viz. twenty two Tuns of Oil, ten Tuns of Whale Fins, and five Hogheads of Morfes Teeth. with which they arriv'd safe in *England* on the 8th of *September*; and this was the first beginning of the Whale Fishery in the *Greenland Seas*.

1612.
Poole and
Edge.

The following Year the *Russia Company* fitted out two Ships for *Greenland*, (viz.) the *Whale* and the *Sea-Horse*, commanded by *Jonas Poole* and *Thomas Edge*, who set sail from the River *Thames* the seventh of *April* 1612. and the third of *May* arriv'd at *Cherry Island*, where they found a *Dutch Ship*, which had been piloted thither by *Allen Sallows* an *English Man*, who afterwards sail'd with them towards *Greenland*; but the *English Captains* order'd him to leave those Seas, looking upon the *Greenland Fishery* as their own Property, and accordingly the *Hollander* left them. On the first of *June* the *Whale* and *Sea-Horse* arriving

riving in *Greenland* found an *English* Ship there, commanded by *Thomas Marmaduke*, who took up Captain *Poole* and his Men and carry'd them Home the preceding Year: But *Marmaduke* not belonging to the *Russia* Company, was look'd upon as an Interloper. Captain *Poole* and *Edge* by the Assistance of their *Bistayners* kill'd seventeen Whales besides *Morses* this Year, of which they made one hundred and eighty Tuns of Oil, with which, and the Whale-Bone they got, they freighted their Ships and return'd to *England*. There came a *Spanish* Ship this Year also to fish for Whales in *Greenland*, piloted hither by *Nicholas Woodcock*, an *English* Man, formerly in the Company's Service, who upon Complaint made by the Company of his carrying the *Spaniards* to *Greenland*, was imprison'd sixteen Months on his return to *England*.

Seven or eight Ships were fitted out by the Company the next Year, commanded by *Benjamin Joseph* Admiral, and *Thomas Edge* Vice Admiral, who set sail from the River *Thames* the thirteenth Day of *May*, and arriv'd at *Greenland* the thirtieth; being but eighteen Days in their Passage. Here they found sixteen Sail of Ships, two whereof were *Dutch*, four *English* Interlopers, and the rest *Spaniards*, or *French*; and the Admiral having the King's Commission, which contain'd a Prohibition to all Foreigners, and others who were not of the *Russia* Company to fish upon the Coast, he drove them away, and oblig'd them to return Home empty. The Admiral also set up a Cross of Wood upon a low Point of Land, call'd *Low-ness*, to which he nail'd the King of *Great Britain's* Arms; and having made

1613:
The
English
prohibit
the Dutch
and other
Nations
resorting
to *Greenland*.

several hundred Tuns of Oil of the Whales they took, they return'd Home.

1614.

In the Year 1614. the *English Russia Company* fitted out thirteen Ships, and two Pinaces, commanded by the same Admiral and Vice Admiral as the Year preceeding: And the *Dutch* sent eighteen great Ships to *Greenland*, four of them being Men of War, and finding themselves Stronger than the *English*, they staid and fish'd by Force, whereby the

1615.

English return'd half laden. The next Year also the *English* were inferior to the *Hollanders*,

1616.

and made but a poor Voyage. In the Year 1616. the Company sent eight stout Ships to *Greenland*, commanded by Captain *Thomas Edge*: They made thirteen hundred Tuns of Oil, and brought Home a good Quantity of Whale-Bone, with the Teeth of a thousand Morfes, or Sea-Horses, which they kill'd on *Edge's Island*. This was the first Year that all the Companies Ships return'd full freighted. The *Dutch* had but four Ships in *Greenland* this Year, and made but an indifferent Voyage. There were fourteen Ships fitted out the next Year, of which *Edge* was again made Admiral. He set sail from the River on the twenty fourth of *April* 1617. and arriv'd in *Greenland* the twenty eighth of *May*, where finding some *Dutch* Ships, he took their Blubber from them: And this Year the *English* made nineteen hundred Tuns of Oil, which they brought safe Home.

1617.

1618.

The *Dutch* contest the Right to the Whale Fishery with the *English*.

The following Year the *English East India Company* and the *Russia Company* join'd in the Whale Fishery, setting out thirteen Ships and two Pinaces for *Greenland*, of which *Edge* was Admiral again; but the *Dutch* fitting out a strong Squadron, fell upon one of the *Eng-*

lish

lish Ships in *Greenland* this Year, killing a great many of their Men, and plunder'd the Ship of her Artillery and Effects; burning such Goods as they found a Shoar: They also hindred the rest of the *English* Ships from Fishing; so that they were forc'd to return empty to *England*. This, 'tis observable, was a Year or two after King *James* deliver'd up the Cautionary Towns to the *Dutch*, namely, *Flushing*, the *Brill* and *Ramekins*, which the wise Queen *Elizabeth* his Predecessor always kept as a Check upon those proud Merchants. From the time of the surrender of those Places they began to encroach upon our Trade, and insult the *English* in all Parts of the World. Nor were they content to murder and plunder our People, but revil'd the good natur'd King, and laugh'd at his Commission, when the *English* Captains produc'd their Authority. Indeed in the *English* Court they spoke a softer Language, and prevail'd more by Bribery than Threats: They knew whatever Mischief they did the Nation Abroad, a handsome Present well apply'd at Home wou'd silence, or rather drown the Cries of our Merchants; as they frequently experienc'd in this, as well as in some succeeding Reigns.

The next Year the *Dutch* hindred our People fishing again; so that they return'd half laden. The *Dutch* also to discourage them, sold their Oil at half Price; so that what the *English* had, remain'd a Drug upon their Hands. Whereupon the two Companies finding our Court so extremely easy, and negligent of their Interests; and that no Redress could be had; or any probability of succeeding in this Trade, they transferr'd their Right in

1619.

1726.
South Sea
revive the
Whale
Fishery.

that Fishery to Mr. *Ralph Freeman*, Captain *Edge*, and some other private Adventurers, who had not Patience to see the *Dutch* run away with that gainful Trade, which our Country Men had laid the Foundation of. These Gentlemen continued the Whale Fishery to *Greenland* for several Years with tolerable Success, but were frequently much incommoded by the *Dutch*, who apply'd themselves with all their Might to the Improvement of this Fishery; insomuch that they sent out some Years above an hundred Sail; whereas the *English* till now, have contented themselves with sending out six or seven annually, and have sometimes laid the Trade down for several Years together. Last Year indeed the *South-Sea Company* fitted out twenty four Sail for *Greenland*; but they came Home not half laden. And it must be acknowledg'd that the *Dutch* are better acquainted with those Seas now than we can be, having continually frequented them: They know the Haunts of the Whales also, and have Numbers of better Harponiers than we can pretend to have, who are forc'd to hire such Foreigners as will enter into our Service. But under all these Difficulties, considering what a vast Capital the *South-Sea Company* hath, and the Diligence with which they apply themselves to Trade, great things may be expected from this Undertaking in time; especially as they are supported by an illustrious Prince, whose Ministers are Proof against Corruption.

C H A P. IV.

Contains a Relation of the Hardships Eight English Men underwent who were left a-Shoar in Greenland all the Winter ; with their Observations upon the Place, in the Year 1630.

THREE Ships being fitted out for *Greenland* in the Year 1630. of which the *Salutation* was one, set sail from the River *Thames* on the first of *May*, and arriv'd in *Greenland* the eleventh of *June* following. The Ships soon after dispers'd to several Harbours for the Conveniency of Fishing. And the *Salutation* being something straitned for Provision the latter end of the Year, set eight Men a Shoar at a Place pretty much frequented by Rein-Deer, to kill Venision, leaving them a Boat, and Orders to follow the Ship to *Green Harbour*, which lies to the Southward of the Place where they went a-Shoar. These Men having kill'd fourteen or fifteen Deer, lay that Night a-Shoar, and propos'd next Day to have gone on board a-Ship, but a great Quantity of Ice driving towards the Shoar, oblig'd the Ship to stand so far out to Sea, that when they came to *Green Harbour* she was out of Sight: However, the Ships being to rendezvous in *Bellsund*, further to the Southward ; and being to leave the Country within three Days, our Huntsmen began to be very anxious, lest the Shipping should be gone from thence too before they arriv'd: They thought it proper therefore to sling their Venison into the Sea, in order to lighten the Boat,

Observations on *Greenland* by Eight English Men who were left there.

Boat, and make the best of their way to *Bellsound*, distant from thence about sixteen Leagues; but none of them knowing the Coast very well, they over shot their Port above ten Leagues, when being sensible of their Error they return'd to the Northward; but one of their Company being still positive *Bellsound* lay further to the South, they were induc'd to sail to the Southward again, till they were a second time convinc'd of their Mistake, and then they turn'd their Boat about to the North again, and at length arriv'd at *Bellsound*; but had spent so much time in rowing backwards and forwards, that the Ships had actually left the Coast, and were gone for *England*, to their great Astonishment; being provided neither with Cloaths, Food, Firing, or House to shelter themselves from the peir-
cing Cold they were to expect in so rigorous a Climate. They stood some time looking on one another as Men amaz'd, at the Distress they were on a sudden reduc'd to; but their Consternation being a little abated, they began to think of the properest means to subsist themselves during the approaching Winter; and the Weather being favourable, they agreed in the first Place to go to *Green Harbour* and hunt for Venison, having two Dogs with them very fit for that purpose. On the twenty fifth of *August* therefore they went in their Boat to *Green Harbour*, where they arriv'd in twelve Hours, being about sixteen Leagues to the Northward of *Bellsound*. Here they set up a Tent made with their Boats Sail, the Oars serving for Tent Poles; and having slept a few Hours, went early next Morning to their Sport, killing seven or eight Deer and four Bears, and the Day following they kill'd

twelve Deer more, with which they loaded their Boat, and finding another Boat, which had been left there by the Company, they loaded that with the Greaves of Whales (being the pieces which remain in the Coppers after the Oil is drawn from them) and return'd with their Booty to *Bellsound*. Here happen'd to be set up a large substantial Booth, which the Coopers work'd in at the Fishing Season: It was eighty Foot long, and fifty broad; cover'd with *Dutch Tiles*, and the Sides well boarded. Within this Booth these Sailors determin'd to build another of less Dimensions, being furnish'd with Boards and Timber by pulling down a Booth which stood near the former; and from the Chimneys of three Furnaces us'd for the boiling of Oil, they got a thousand of Bricks: They found also four Hogsheds of very fine Lime, which mingled with the Sand on the Sea-Shoar, made excellent Mortar. But the Weather was now grown so cold, that they were oblig'd to have two Fires to keep their Mortar from freezing. They persisted however in their Work, and rais'd a Wall of a Brick thickness against one of the sides of their innermost Booth; but wanting Bricks to finish the rest in like manner, they nail'd thick Boards on each sides the Timbers, and fill'd up the space between with Sand, by which means it became so tight and close, that the least Breath of Air cou'd not enter in: and their Chimney's Vent was into the greater Booth. The Length of this lesser Booth, or rather House, was twenty Feet, the Breadth sixteen Feet, and the Height ten; their Ceiling being made of Deal Boards five or six times double, and so overlaid that no Air cou'd possibly come in from thence.

Their

Their Door they did not only make as strong and close as possible, but lin'd it with a Bed which they found there; and for Windows they made none, except a little Hole in the Tiles of the greater Booth, by which they receiv'd some little Light down the Chimney of the lesser. Their next Work was to make them four Cabbins, choosing to lie two in each Cabin. Their Bedding was the Skins of the Rein Deer, the same the *Laplander's* use, and they found them exceeding warm: And for Firing they took to pieces some Casks, and seven or eight of the Boats which were left behind (for it seems they use a great many Boats in Whale-fishing, which they leave in the Country every Winter, rather than be at the trouble of carrying them backwards and forwards.) Our Sailors stow'd their Firing between the Beams and the Roof of the greater Booth, in order to make it the warmer, and keep out the Snow, which wou'd have cover'd every thing in the greater Booth, if it had not been for this Contrivance.

Upon the 12th of *September*, observing a piece of Ice come driving towards the Shoar, with two Morfes (or Sea Horses) asleep upon it, they went out in their Boat with a Harping Iron and Spears, and kill'd them both; and on the 19th of the same Month, another, which was some addition to their Food. But taking a very narrow survey of all their Provisions, they found that there was not half enough to serve them the whole Winter; and therefore they stinted themselves to one Meal a Day, and agreed to keep *Wednesdays* and *Fridays* as Fasting Days, allowing themselves then only the Fritters or Greaves of the Whales; which, as has been observ'd already, are

are only the Scraps of the Fat of the Whale, which are flung away after the Oil is gotten out of them, and is very loathsom Food. By the 10th of *October* the Nights were grown long, and the Weather so cold, that the Sea was frozen over; and having no Business now to divert their Thoughts as hitherto, they began again to reflect on their miserable Circumstances; sometimes complaining of the Cruelty of the Master of the Ship, in leaving them behind; and at others excusing him, and bewailing his Misfortune, as believing him to have perish'd in the Ice. At length, putting their Confidence in Heaven, which only cou'd relieve them in their great Distress, they redoubled their Prayers for Strength and Patience to go through the dismal Trial, and receiv'd great Satisfaction from their Devotions, which were no doubt as sincere and fervent as ever were offer'd up to the Deity.

And now having survey'd their Provisions again, they found that the Fritters of the Whale were almost all mouldy, having taken some wet; and of their Bear and Venison there was scarce enough left to afford them five Meals a Week; whereupon it was agreed to live four Days of the Week upon the mouldy Fritters, and the other three to feast upon Bear and Venison: And lest they should want Firing hereafter to dress their Meat, they thought it proper to roast every Day half a Deer and stow it up in Hogheads, and with this kind of Food they fill'd three

Vol. VI. E e e Hogheads

Hogheads and an half, leaving so much raw as would serve to roast every *Sunday* a Quarter, and a Quarter for *Christmas-Day*. It being now the fourteenth of *October* the Sun left them, and they saw it no more till the third of *February*: But they had the Moon all the time, both Day and Night, though very much obscur'd by the Clouds and fowl Weather. There was also a glimmering kind of Day-light for eight Hours the latter end of *October*, which shortned every Day till the first of *December*, from which time to the twentieth of the same Month they could perceive no Day-light at all: It was now one continued Night, there appearing only in clear Weather a little Whiteness, like the Dawn of Day, towards the South. On the first of *January* they found their Day a little to encrease. They counted their Days, it seems, in the dark Season by the Moon, and were so exact, that at the return of the Shipping they were able to tell the very Day of the Month on which the Fleet arriv'd. As for Light within doors, they made them three Lamps of some Sheet-Lead they found upon one of the Coolers, and there happen'd to be Oil enough to supply them left in the Cooper's Tent; for Wicks they made use of Rope-yarns; and these Lamps were one of the greatest Comforts to them in that long dismal Night. But still their Misery was such that they cou'd not forbear sometimes uttering hasty Speeches against the Authors of their Misfortunes: At other times reflecting on their former ill-spent
Lives,

Lives, they look'd upon this as a just Punishment of their Offences ; and at other times they hop'd they were reserv'd as a wonderful Instance of God's Mercy in their Deliverance, and continued constantly to fall down on their Knees two or three times a Day and implore the Protection of the Almighty.

With the New Year the Cold encreased to that Degree that it rais'd Blisters in their Flesh : sometimes, as if they had been burnt, and the Iron they touch'd stuck to their Fingers. When they went abroad for Water the Cold often seiz'd them in such a manner, that it made them sore as if they had been severely beaten. Their Water the first part of the Winter issu'd from a Bay of Ice, and ran down into a kind of Bason or Receptacle by the Sea Side, where it remain'd with a thick Ice over it, which they dug open at one certain place with Pickaxes every Day. This continu'd to the tenth of *January*, and then they drank Snow Water melted with an hot Iron until the twentieth of *May* following.

And now they took another Review of their Provisions, which they found would not last them above six Weeks longer ; but to alleviate their Misery, on the third of *February* they were chear'd again with the bright Rays of the Sun, which shone upon the Tops of the Snowy Mountains with an inconceivable Lustre. To them at least this afforded the most delightful Scene that ever was beheld. And
after

after a Night of many Weeks or Months, what could be imagin'd more glorious or pleasing to a mortal Eye? As an Addition to their Joy also the Bears began to appear again, on the Flesh of which Animal they had made many hearty Meals. But, as the Writer of this Narrative observes, the Bears were as ready to devour our Countrymen, as they were the Bears; and being pinch'd with Hunger in this barren place, came up to their very Door. One of these Creatures with her Cub they met at the Entrance of their Apartment, and gave her such a Reception with their Pikes and Launces, that they laid her dead upon the Spot, and the young one was glad to make his Escape. The Weather was so cold that they could not stay to flay her, but dragg'd the Beast into their House, and there went to work, cutting her into pieces of a Stone Weight, one of which serv'd them for a Dinner, and upon this they fed twenty Days, esteeming her Flesh beyond Venison; only her Liver did not agree with them, for upon the eating it, their Skins peel'd off; tho' one of the Company who was sick, attributes his Cure in part to the eating of it. If it be demanded how they kept their Venison and Bears Flesh without Salt, it is to be observ'd, the Cold is such that no Corps or Carcase ever putrifies, Flesh needs no Salt to keep it here, and that was their Happiness, for had they been flock'd with Salt Provisions, they had infallibly dy'd of the Scurvy, as others did who were left on Shoar much better provided with Liquors and other

other Necessaries than these poor Men were. But to proceed. By that time they had eaten up this Bear, others came about their Booth frequently, to the Number of forty and more, of which they kill'd seven, (one of them six Foot high at least), roasting their Flesh upon Wooden Spits, having no other Kitchen furniture except a Frying-Pan they found in one of the Booths, and having now Plenty of Provision, they eat heartily two or three times a Day, and cou'd find their Strength encrease apace.

It was now the 16th of *March*, and the Days of a reasonable Length, and the Fowls which in the Winter time were fled to the Southward, began to resort to *Greenland* again in great abundance. Here they live and breed in the Summer, feeding upon small Fish. The Foxes also which had kept close in their Holes under the Rocks all Winter, now came abroad and prey'd upon the Fowls, of which our Countrymen having taken some, baited Traps with their Skins, and caught fifty Foxes in them, which they roasted and found to be very good Meat, at least in the Opinion of Men, who had fed hitherto pretty much upon Bears-Flesh. Thus they continued taking Fowls and Foxes till the 1st of *May*, meeting with no further Misfortunes, except the Loss of one of their two Mastiff Dogs, which went from their House one Morning in the Middle of *March*, and was never seen afterwards, being over-power'd probably, and eaten by the Bears.

The

The Weather beginning to grow warm in *May*, they rambled about in Search of *Willocks* Eggs, a Fowl about the Bigness of a Duck, of which they found some, being a Change of Diet they were much pleas'd with. And now the Season coming on for the Arrival of Shipping, they went some of them every Day almost to the Top of a Mountain to see if they could discern the Water in the Sea, which they had no sight of till the 24th of this Month, when it blowing a Storm, and the Wind sitting from the main Ocean, broke the Ice in the Bay, and turning about soon after Easterly, carried great part of the Ice out to Sea, but still the Water did not come within three Miles of their Dwelling. The next Morning, the 25th of *May*, none of their Men happen'd to go abroad ; but one of them being in the outward Booth, hear'd some body hale the House, in the same Manner as Saylor's do a Ship ; to which the Man in the outward Booth answer'd in Seamens Terms, they were then just going to Prayers, and staid but for the Man in the outward Booth to join with them. Sure no Saylor's were ever so devout ! But even Saylor's will address themselves to Heaven in their Distress, when no human Aid can help them ; as Sick Men send for the Priest, when the Physician hath given them over. But to proceed. The Man who hailed them was one of the Boats Crew that belong'd to an *English* Ship just come from *England* ; which our religious Saylor's no sooner understood,

understood, but they put off their Devotions and ran out to meet their Countrymen, looking upon them as so many Angels sent from Heaven to their Relief. And certainly the Transports of Joy they felt on this Occasion, if it may be conceiv'd, can never be express'd. But there was one Mortification still in store, which no Man wou'd have expected: One of the Ships which now arriv'd was commanded by the same Master which left these poor Wretches on Shoar; and he, barbarous Brute! in order to excuse his own Inhumanity, began to revile and curse them, calling them Rogues and Runaways. And this same Man, it seems, had left seven or eight other Men in *Greenland* two Years before, which were never heard of afterwards; for which no doubt, he richly deserv'd the Gallows, tho' our Laws take but little Notice of Offences of this kind. But notwithstanding the Barbarity of their own Captain, the Commander and Officers of the other Ship took care they should be kindly us'd, and brought to *England* when the Season for Whale-Fishing was over; where they receiv'd a Gratuity from the *Russia* Company, and were otherwise well provided for by them. And perhaps there is no Instance in History of a Company of Men in so exquisite a Distress, who shew'd more Courage and Patience, or made a wiser Provision for their Preservation than these did. And, as the Writer of this Narrative observes, *Greenland* belongs to the Crown of *England* now by double Right, for we did not only first discover it,

it, and begin the Whale-Fishery there ; but these our Countrymen did in a wondrous manner a second time take Seizin of the Country for the King's Use, being the first that ever did inhabit it the Year round, and perhaps the last that ever will. And here it may not be improper to record the Names of these eight Heroick *Englishmen*, not one of whom lost either his Life or Limbs, though left destitute of all Necessaries, in a Country within twelve Degrees of the Pole, viz. *William Fakely*, Gunner ; *Edward Pelham*, (the Writer of the Narrative) Gunner's Mate ; *John Wise*, and *Robert Goodfellow*, Seamen ; *Thomas Ayers*, Whale Cutter ; *Henry Bett*, Cooper ; *John Daws*, and *Richard Kellet*, Landmen.



C H A P. V.

Treats of the Plants in New Greenland.

THE Herbs and Moss in *Greenland* grow upon the Girt of the Rocks where the Water runs down, and chiefly on that part of the Mountain which is cover'd from the North and East Winds; and the Dung of the Fowls which resort thither in great Numbers, does not a little contribute to the Growth of them. They soon come to maturity, being scarce Green in *June*, and in *July* most of them are in the Flower, and some their Seeds half ripe: But as there are but few Vegetables here, I shall be more particular in the Description of them than I us'd to be.

There is an Herb grows here with thick, prickly and dark Green Leaves, like those of the Aloes, with a brown naked Stalk half a Finger long, on which hang round Heads of Flesh colour'd Flowers in Bunches, scarce discernible by the Eye, one Plant producing sometimes two Stalks. There is another Plant with indented Leaves, like those of the small Houseleek. They grow about the Root, and betwixt them a small Stalk of a Finger long, round and hairy, without Leaves, except where it emits another Stalk, at which Place it hath one Leaf. The Flowers come out with scaly Heads, and are of a Brown Colour with eight pointed Leaves. Of Crowsfoot there are four Kinds here, distinguish'd only by their Leaves. They have Scurvy Grass also, which produces many Leaves from one Root,

Herbs of
Greenland

The A-
loes Plant

House-
leek.

Crows-
foot.

Scurvy
Grass.

Root, spreading upon the Ground. Out of the Middle of them sprouts a Stalk, with a few Leaves underneath the Sprouts. The Flowers have four White Leaves, and many of them growing on the same Stalk, one above another ; and as one fades another succeeds in the Room. The Seed comes forth in a longish Box, whereas here it is produc'd in a round one. There is great Quantities of it upon the Rocks which are not expos'd to the North or East Winds. It seeds in *July*, and its Leaves have so little Sharpness, that the Seamen eat it as a Sallad in *Greenland*.

Snake-
weed.

There grows also a kind of small Snakeweed here, but it is not very common. The twisted Root shews it to be of the *Bistorta* Kind, and is about the Thickness of a Man's little Finger, with small Fibres, brown without and Flesh colour'd within, and of an astringent Taste.

Perewin-
kle Plant.

They have another Plant, whose Leaves resemble those of a Perewinkle, and grow by Pairs on Stalks creeping on the Ground. The Root is slender, round, woody and knotty, with small branch'd Fibres at the Bottom. A Plant also grows here with three

Strawber-
ry Plant.

cut Leaves at the Extremity of the Stalk, like the Strawberry, and the Flower like it also. The Root is round and thick, with small Fibres, and its taste astringent.

Rock
Plant.

The Rock Plant is the same with that call'd *Fucus*, the Stalk broad and flat, out of which sprout many broad Leaves, like Twigs out of a Tree, at the Top of the Stalk grow five or seven long Yellowish transparent Leaves, and close to these other longish Leaves hollow, and as it were blown up with Wind. The Root grows out of the Rock, from whence it hath its Name, and is found in great Plenty in some

Parts

Parts of the Country. In the *English* Harbour there is a Plant which resembles Sea Grass, growing like it under Water, and is about eight Foot long, with Yellowish Leaves three Fingers broad, and transparent. There are also Plants like the Horse Tail; a kind of White Poppy, and a Red sort of Sorrel. It is observ'd that most of these Plants are good against the Scurvy, the common Distemper of those who go this or other long Voyages, and feed upon Salt Meat; and indeed all manner of Herbs and Garden Stuff almost are Antiscorbuticks.



C H A P. VI.

Treats of the Animals in and about Greenland, whether upon Land or in the Water.

THERE are scarce any Land Fowls or Animals. Birds to be seen in *Greenland*: Those Travellers mention are, 1. The *Snite* or *Strand-Runner*; a Bird about the Bigness of a Lark, and of the same Colour, with three divided Claws before, and a short one behind. They live on Worms and Shrimps, and have not a fishy Taste. 2. The Snow Bird, of the Size of a Linnet, with a long bended Spur, and three divided Claws. Their Backs and Wings are Grey, but from the Head downwards under the Belly to the Tail, they are as White as Snow. They will sometimes light in a Ship, and may be taken with the Hand they are so tame. They are seen chiefly on the Ice and Snow, from whence they are called Snow Birds. 3. The Ice Bird, which is

The Snite

The Snow Bird.

The Ice Bird.

of the Bigness of a small Pidgeon, and her Feathers shining like Gold.

The
Burgher-
master.

The Fowls with broad Feet in *Greenland* have some of them sharp pointed Bills, and others broad Bills like Ducks; some of them also are Birds of Prey, and others not. Of Birds of Prey there are 1. The Burgher-master which obtain'd its Name from the Largeness of his Size, being almost as big as a Stork. He has a crooked, thick, narrow Bill, and a Red Circle about his Eyes, a broad White Tail like a Fan, and his Back and Wings of a pale Colour tipp'd with White. They build their Nests in the Cliffs of the highest Rocks, beyond the reach of any one, but will come down in great Numbers to feed on the Carcase of a dead Whale, and are easily shot. Their Cry is like a Ravens, and they fly like a Stork, feeding upon lesser Birds, Carrion, or the Dung of the Morfes. They frequently light upon the Water to rest themselves, but never dive. 2. The *Ratsher* or Alderman, so call'd

The Rat-
sher.

from his Stately Mien. He is something less than the Burgher-master, and has a sharp thin Bill, three Claws on each Foot, and short black Legs; but the Feathers whiter than the Snow it self, as 'tis said, and the Tail long and broad. It is very fond of Fish, and feeds sometimes upon Morfes Dung. They are so tame that they may be knock'd down with a

Struntjager

Stick. 3. The *Struntjager*, or Dung Hunter, hath a thick Black crooked Bill, short Legs, and three Claws join'd by a Black Skin, and is of the Bigness of a Sea-Mew. 4. The *Kut-*

Kutyeghef.

yeghef, another Kind of Sea-Mew, his Back and Wings Grey, and his Belly as White as Snow. His Food is chiefly the Flesh of Whales, with which the Seamen bait their

Hooks

Hooks, as they do for most other Birds of Prey in these Seas. They swim upon the Water as the rest do with their Heads to the Windward, let it blow never so hard. 5. The *Mallemucke*, the most common Fowl in *Greenland*, the under part of his Bill compos'd of four Pieces, some of them are Grey all over, but others only on the Wings; it is of the size of a great *Mew*, and flies like him; but cannot easily raise himself from the Ground. He will suffer himself to be taken without offering to fly away, from whence he obtain'd the Name of the *Mallemucke*, or the foolish Bird. The Flesh of these Birds of Prey are scarce eatable, unless they are hung up some time till the Train Oil in them is dry'd up.

Mallemucke

Of other Birds there are, 1. The Pidgeon Diver, so call'd from his making a Noise like a young Pidgeon, having no other resemblance to them: It is a beautiful Bird, of the bigness of a Duck, with a sharp pointed Bill about two Inches long, some of them Black, and others py'd on the Back, but White underneath; they fly low like Partridges, and commonly in pairs. 2. The Lumb hath a Bill much like the Pidgeon Diver, and is near the same size; its cry is like that of a Raven: They have the pointed Wings and swiftness of the Swallow, and are very shy; they are pretty fleshy, but dry and tough, and their Fat must be taken away before they can be eaten. 3. The Diving Parrot, so call'd from his hook'd Bill, tho' it otherwise very little resembles a Parrot's; his Legs are short and Red, and he hath three Claws join'd with a Red Skin. 4. The Mountain Duck, of the size of an ordinary Goose, and much such a Bill: It is a beautiful Fowl, with fine spotted Feathers; and dives under Water as Ducks do. The

Pidgeon Diver.

Lumb.

Diving Parrot.

Mountain Duck.

Flesh

Kirmew. Flesh of it is good if the Fat be drain'd away, which tastes of Oil. 5. The Kirmew, which hath a thin sharp pointed Bill as Red as Blood; Its long Wings and Tail make it shew very large, but the Body is not much bigger than a Sparrow's.

Bears. The four footed Land Animals, are Bears, Deer, or Foxes. Some will have their Bear to be an Amphibious Animal: He is White, and more of the Shape of a Dog than a common Bear, and much larger and swifter; he hath long soft Hair, the Nose and Mouth only Black. He swims from one Ice Mountain to another, and will dive after Fish a considerable time under Water: He Feeds also on Fowls and Eggs, and the Carcass of the Whale when he meets with it, and will dig up a Human Corps if it be not buried deep and well secur'd.

Deer. The *Greenland* Deer is of a Greyish Colour, and hath Horns and Cloven Feet much like ours; and his Flesh is well tasted: They are found chiefly about the *Reben Field*, or Deer Field, and upon the Foreland of *Musblehaven*. The Foxes of this Country have Black Heads and White Bodies, but in all other respects resemble those of the more Southern Countries.

The Seale. The Seale is reckon'd an Amphibious Animal: He hath five Claws on each Foot, join'd together with a thick Skin, like that of a Water Fowl; and the Head resembles a Dogs with crop'd Ears, from whence he is sometimes call'd the Sea Dog: The Skin is cover'd with a short Hair and spotted; they seem lamish behind, but make a shift, however to get upon the Ice Hills, where they love to sleep and bask themselves in the Sun. They are from five to eight Foot in length; their Flesh Black, and their Fat yields better Train Oil

Oil than that of any other Fish. The Testaceous Animals of *Greenland* are the Star-Fish, the Prawn, the Craw-Fish, and the Whale-Louse, these last stick so close to the Whale's Skin that they are not to be remov'd without cutting a Piece out of it.

Our Mariners who use these Seas, also mention a Fish about twenty Foot long, which they denominate the Unicorn Fish; but some very Intelligent Gentlemen assure us that these pretended Horns are only the Teeth of a large Fish, which grow a great way out of his Mouth, pointed and turn'd up like a Neats Horn. The Sword-Fish hath a sharp Bone Sword- at the end of his Snout indented like a Saw, Fish, and is a great Enemy to the Whale, pricking him under the Belly with his Sword, or Saw, which forces him into shallow Water to avoid him.

The Morfe, or Sea Horse, is about the The size of an Ox, and hath five Claws on each of Morfe; his Feet; his Skin is very thick, especially about the Neck, and cover'd with a short Reddish or Grey Hair, and sometimes Mouse colour'd. They have two large Teeth, or Tusks, in the Upper-Jaw a Foot or two in length, and sometimes more. Formerly they converted their Fat into Oil, but since Oil has been made of the Whale, that of the Morfe has not been so much valued. These Animals Feed both upon Herbs and Fish; they are seen upon the Ice-Shoals about *Greenland* chiefly about the Month of *July*, and make a dreadful roaring: They sleep upon the Ice, or on the Surface of the Water; and when they are attack'd by the Sea-Men will endeavour to over set the Boats, or make Holes in them with their Teeth; but they do
not

not seem to have near so much Strength or Agility when they are out of the Water upon the Ice, where our People kill them with Spears and Clubs with a great deal of ease; and being sensible how little they are able to defend themselves upon the Ice, when they see the Sea-Men rowing towards them they jump off the Ice-Hills into the Sea with a great deal of Precipitation. When a Morse is struck with the Harpoon they let him run till he is weary and then draw in the Line, he will make a great Resistance after he is brought to the Boat side, but they soon dispatch him with their Spears, and take off his Head, his Teeth being what they most value him for; but these are not so much esteem'd as formerly.

The Whale

The Whales in the *Greenland Seas* are of several kinds and sizes, some of them White and others Black: Of the Black sort some have one and some two Holes in their Heads, out of which they spout the Water to a great height, and may be heard, 'tis said, at a Leagues distance. Of the several kinds of Whales, that call'd the *Grand Bay Whale* is in most esteem, on account of his Bulk, and the great Quantity of Fat they find upon him, which yields Train Oil: The Head of this Animal makes up one third of the whole Fish, but his Eyes are small in Proportion, not much bigger than those of an Ox: Instead of Ears there appears only on each side his Head a Hole, so small that it is scarce discernible, but within the Flesh there is a larger Orifice form'd like an Ear, and he is observ'd to be very quick of hearing. The two Holes, or Pipes, on the top of his Head are for receiving Air as well as for discharging the Water which

which he takes in at his Mouth, and is forc'd upwards through these Holes in very large Quantities. His Tongue is about eighteen Feet long, enclosed in long Pieces of what we call Whale Bone, and these are cover'd thick with a kind of Hair like Horse Hair: On each side of the Tongue are two hundred and fifty Pieces of this Whale Bone, besides the small Whale Bone which lies underneath the Root of the Tongue, which with the rest some reckon amount to eight hundred Pieces of Whale Bone: But there is no Teeth in his Mouth; he is very thick from the Head to the Middle, but grows less from thence towards the Tail; neither his Fins or his Tail stand upright like other Fish when he swims but horizontally. The usual length of the Whale is from sixty to eighty Foot, but there are some, 'tis said, of more than twice that length; and his Form is generally compar'd to that of a Shoemaker's Last. He is slippery as an Eel, but the Flesh being very soft a Man may stand upon a dead one securely to cut him in Pieces. The Penis of the Whale is a strong Sinew six or eight Foot long, and sometimes much more, in Proportion to his Bulk, and is plac'd on the outside of his Body, as that of a Forefooted Animal is; and the Female hath two Breasts with Teats like a Cows, she is said to be larger than the Male, and hath never more than two Young ones. The Bones of the Whale are as hard as those of a Beast, but more Porous; the Lean Flesh is hard as Bull Beef, and very Sinewy; but the *French* who go the *Greenland* Voyage, 'tis said, will eat of it. Their Fat is eight or ten Inches thick upon the Back or Belly, and on the Under Lips two Foot thick: The Fat is

Of the
taking the
Whale.

intermix'd with small Nerves, the other strong Sinews terminate near the extremity of the Tail, which serve this great Fish for a Rudder, as his Fins do for Oars, wherewith he swims with incredible swiftness, leaving a Track in the Sea like a great Ship; and this is call'd his Wake, by which he is often follow'd. When the Sea Men see a Whale spout, or hear him, the Word is immediatly given, *Fall, Fall*, whereupon every one hastens down from the Ship to his Boat, six or eight Men being appointed to each Boat, and there are four or five Boats belonging to every Ship: When they come near the Whale the Harponier, who sits in the Head of the Boat, strikes him in the most convenient Place, and the Monster finding himself wounded, runs swiftly towards the bottom of the Deep, drawing the Rope after him with such a Force that he would certainly carry the Boat with him if they did not give him Line enough, that part of the Rope to which the Harpoon is fastned being six or seven Fathom long, and an Inch thick, is made of the most pliable Materials, and is call'd the Forerunner; the rest of the Line is thicker and stronger, made of Tough Hemp and tarr'd over: This the Line-furnisher veers out as fast as he can, having several hundred Fathom of it coil'd up in the Boat, taking great care that it be not entangled, for the least stop oversets them; and to prevent the Wood of the Boat taking Fire by the violent Motion of the Rope rubbing against it, he wets it constantly with a Mop; the other Men of the Boat also assist in letting out the Line, drawing it in, and coiling it up as there is Occasion, except the Man who steers and is busied in observing which way the

Fish
2. 1. 2. 2

Fish takes : The Iron of the Harpoon is shap'd like a barb'd Arrow, and very broad to take the better hold ; the Harponier endeavours to fix it in the most fleshy and tenderest Parts ; for if he strike him on the Head, which is but thinly cover'd with Fat above the Bone, it usually breaks out. If one Line falls short, those in the next Boat furnish another, which is fasten'd to it, and all would be to little purpose if the Whale could live long under Water ; but after he hath run some hundred Fathoms deep he is forc'd to come up again for Air, and then he makes such a terrible Noise with his spouting, that some have resembled it to be the firing of great Guns : So soon as the Whale appears on the Surface of the Water the other Boats follow him, and the Harponier who has the first Opportunity throws another Harpoon at him, whereupon he plunges into the Deep again ; but when he comes up a second time they make no further use of the Harping Iron, but stick him with small Spears, or Pikes, which are darted at him till he is so wounded and tired that they can approach him with their ordinary Spears, with which they push at him, endeavouring to wound him near his Fins, where they find him most sensible ; and instead of Water, when his Vitals are touch'd he spouts out Streams of Blood as high as a Mast : Whereupon they desist, and the mighty Fish finding himself desperately wounded, rages most furiously, beating the Sea with his Tail and Fins till it is all in a Foam, and the Noise of it may be heard at a great distance ; in the mean time, while the Whale is making his last Efforts, the Boats follow him at a little distance, sometimes for two Leagues toge-

ther, till having lost his Strength, he turns on one side, and when he is dead, upon his Back; when they drag him to the Shoar if they are near it, and if at a distance from Land they haul him to their Ship, where they keep him till he rises in part out of the Water, for the first Day he lies almost even with the Surface, the second he rises six or seven Foot, and the third sometimes as high as the Sides of the Ship. There is on board every Ship a Man whose Business it is to cut open the Fish, who having dress'd himself fit for the Purpose, opens the Belly with a large Knife, which occasions a roaring Noise, and an intolerable Stench: The Whale Cutter proceeds to separate the Flesh from the Bones by Pieces of two or three hundred Weight, which are either convey'd a-Shoar, or on board the Ship, being haul'd up with Pulleys, and there they are cut into lesser Pieces. The Tail of the Animal serves for a Chopping-Block, being so very Nervous and Hard, that it exceeds any Wood whatever for this Purpose: And being thus cut in Pieces, those who have Stages and Conveniencies set up in *Greenland*, extract the Oil there, by boiling the Fat, or Blubber on Shoar, which is put into Hog-heads and brought Home; but those who want those Conveniencies and take a Whale far from the Shoar, barrel up the Pieces, not extracting the Oil till they come to their respective Countries; but this Oil is said to have a more disagreeable Scent, and is consequently not so valuable as that which is drawn off immediately. Every Fish is computed to yield from sixty to an hundred Barrels of Oil, of the Value of three or four Pounds *Sterling*; but that alters as other Things do, by a scarce

or plentiful Season. Every Ship has usually three Harponiers, who have a certain Sum for every Whale they take, to induce them to be diligent, and sometimes a Ship takes eight or ten Whales in one Voyage, but at others they return perfectly empty, as some of ours did the last Year, 1726.

CH A P. VII.

Contains a further Account of the Danish Laws.

THE following Account of the Laws of *Denmark* having been lately communicated to me, I shall take leave to incert them here, before I proceed to the Description of any other Country.

The
Danish
Laws,

The King of *Denmark*, as hath been intimated already, is the great Interpreter of his Laws, and can change or abrogate them at Pleasure. He is the Supreme Judge of the Kingdom, and President of the High Court of Justice, when he pleases to sit there, which is not often : However, whether Present or Absent, the Advocates always address themselves to the King, as is provided by the *Danish Code*.

The Princes of the Blood, the Nobility and Gentry can only be try'd in this High Court ; and the Superintendants, or Bishops, have the same Privilege, where they are charg'd with Heresy, or any other notorious Crime.

Where any Person Calumniates the Government, or the Administration, he is declar'd infamous, and his Goods confiscated :
but

but if such Discourses tend to a Sedition, or Insurrection, they are to be punish'd, say their Law, with the utmost Severity; which in an Arbitrary Government possibly extend to the Life of the Offender. As to those who endeavour to defame a Magistrate, either Civil, or Ecclesiastical, or injure the Reputation of a Person of Honour by writing, or otherwise, they are to pay eighty Rix Dollars to the Party griev'd, and a Fine of three Marks to the Crown, and in default of Payment are condemn'd to the Pillory, and to carry Stones for the Repair of the Fortifications and publick Buildings.

If any Person refuses to take up Arms and serve the Government either by Sea or Land in case of an Insurrection; or Invasion, when he is summon'd to attend the Royal Standard, he is to be declar'd infamous, and to forfeit his Estate. A Person guilty of Theft is not only sentenc'd to be whipp'd and to hard Labour in the publick Works, but to restore double the Value of the Goods stolen to the Owner. Coining is punish'd with the loss of Life and Honour, and Confiscation of the Estate of the Offender: And the same Punishment is inflicted on him who removes an antient Land-Mark.

He who Counterfeits the Hand, or Seal of another, or Forges a Writing for his own Benefit, is sentenc'd to have his Hand cut off, his Goods confiscated, and declar'd infamous. The Torture is seldom us'd in *Denmark* but in cases of High Treason, and then only upon Persons already convicted of the same Crime, in order to make them discover their Accomplices, which is directly contrary to the present Law of England, that will not suffer a Crimi-

not to be Witness against any Person, tho' it was otherwise antiently.

Duels, and even the Challenging another to fight, is punish'd with the loss of Life and Estate ; and Seconds who do not endeavour to prevent it, are punish'd in like manner ; he who is kill'd in a Duel is not suffer'd to be buried in consecrated Ground. Whoever reflects upon another for refusing a Challenge is punishable, and declar'd infamous by the *Danish* Law. Where one hath been guilty of any injurious Language, or struck another with his Hand, he is punishable by Fine and Imprisonment, and where the Offence is very heinous, with the loss of his Estate, according to the Nature of the Offence ; and these Crimes are punish'd by the Governor of the Place, with the Assistance of the Noblemen and Gentlemen of the Neighbourhood.

In Cases of Shipwreck the *Danish* Subjects are requir'd to give all imaginable Assistance to those in Distress, and to preserve the Goods for the Owners Use. The Ships which guard the Coast are directed to save what Effects they can, for which they have a very moderate Reward ; and the Owners are permitted to sell them in the Country, or embark them on board other Vessels. If a Ship or Goods be driven on the Coast and no Body appears to claim them, the King's Officers, or the Lord of the Mannor (as the Case is) takes care to preserve them, or if they are perishable Goods to sell them to the best Advantage, and to restore them to the Owner ; but if they are not reclaim'd within a Year and a Day they become the Property of the King, or the Lord of the Place. If the Master of a Ship finds Goods floating on the Sea, he

is to take care of the same, and deliver them to the next Magistrate, who must keep them a Year and a Day, to see if any one can claim them, and if no Body owns them, they belong to the King: And if any one conceal or embezzle such wreck'd Goods he is to be punish'd as a Felon; and the Law is much the same where a Person finds Goods, or Cattle upon the Road, for he is oblig'd to publish it in the Court of the District, and can have no Property in the Goods till a Year and a Day be pass'd, where no Body comes in to reclaim them.

As to Travelling, which is usually perform'd in a little Waggon drawn by two or four Horses. The Magistrates of every City oblige the Waggoners of the Neighbourhood to form themselves into a Society, and elect one of their Number to preside over them, who is call'd the Waggon-Master, and when a Traveller comes to any Place this Officer is to see him furnish'd with a Waggon without delay, and that no more be extorted for the Hire than is allow'd by the Government: The Rates being set up in all Taverns and publick Houses: If a Waggoner demands more than his due, or refuses to go at the set Price, the Master Waggoner informs the Magistrate with it, and he is severely punish'd; and if the Master Waggoner does not do his Duty in supplying the Traveller with a Carriage and Horses, he may have Justice done him on a Complaint made to the Magistrate; and the Law is the same against Water-Men and Ferry-Men, who demand more than their Fare,

There

There being but one University in *Denmark*, a Divinity Reader is appointed to reside in every Cathedral to expound the Scriptures to the People. And these Divinity Readers, as well as the Masters of Colleges, are examin'd by the Professors of the Royal Academy of *Copenhagen*, before they are admitted to officiate. Private Schools are expressly prohibited by the Laws of *Denmark*, and no other allow'd but those establish'd by publick Authority in the Cities and Great Towns, and they have two or three Masters belonging to each School, who have taken their Degree of Masters of Art at least, as well as the Rector. The first Master or Rector is chosen by the Superintendent or Bishop, having pass'd his Examination before him and the Minister of the Parish. The Under-Masters are appointed by the Rector, with the Approbation of the Minister of the Place. The lesser Schools, where only Writing and Accompts are taught, are appointed by the Magistrate, the Teacher having been first examin'd by the Priest, who is also to take care that they are instructed in the *Lutheran Doctrine*.

No Person may appoint a Tutor to travel with his Son, who hath not been first examin'd by the Superintendent of the Diocese, and found to be Orthodox in the Religion of the Country. And the same is requir'd where one takes a Tutor into his House. The Tutor also ought to be a Student of the University of *Copenhagen*.

As no other Method of Teaching is allow'd than that prescrib'd by the Government, so no other Books may be read but such as are appointed by Authority, which are composed chiefly by the Professors of their University. The

Importation of Books is also prohibited, especially those which treat of any other Persuasion of Religion than that establish'd amongst them. No other Calendars or Almanacks are allow'd to be publish'd, than those made by the Order of the Rector and Senate of the University, on Pain of Confiscation of Goods. They are prohibited also to stuff their Almanacks with Predictions relating to War, Plague or Famine, or any other Calamities.

The Clergy of this Kingdom are divided into three Classes, *viz.* 1. Superintendants, or Bishops. 2. Intendants, which some compare to our Arch-Deacons. And 3. Curates, or Parish Priests. The Superintendant is oblig'd to visit his Diocese once every Year, and to lie in the Parson's House when he comes to any Place, who is to entertain him, his Servants, and four Horses *gratis*. The Superintendants are consecrated by the Bishop or Superintendant of *Zee'land*, assisted by five or six Priests, but nominated by the King. The Peasants who Pay Tyths of all their Corn, Cattle, Poultry, and Bees, pay one third thereof to the Crown, another to the Bishop and other Uses of the Church, and the remaining third to their Parish Priest. But of Grass and Fruits which grow spontaneously, no Tyths are paid, 'tis said. There are some other Dues also, payable to the Clergy by the Peasants for Confession, Burials, Marriages, &c. The Superintendant holds a kind of Synod twice a Year, consisting of the Intendants in his Diocese, where the Governor of the Province presides for the King. The Intendants are chosen by the Parish Priests of each County or District, in Conjunction with the Superintendant. And he is oblig'd to visit all the

Parishes

Parishes under his Inspection once a Year at least; and have a Power of censuring the Lives and Conversations of the Priests in their respective Divisions. They see that the Churches also are kept in Repair, and that their Revenues are not alienated or misapply'd.

No Person can be admitted into Priests Orders till he hath a Cure provided for him. He must have a Certificate also from the Divinity Professor of the University concerning the Progress he hath made in his Studies, and his Qualifications for the Pulpit. And if he do not come immediately from the University; he must have them from the Intendant and Parish Priest where he resides; and if the Superintendant approves of the Clerk; he is instituted and inducted as with us: But their Law requires that none be admitted into Priests Orders, who are under five and twenty Years of Age: And the giving any Money or Consideration, either for Orders, or a Presentment to a Living, is forbidden, as in the Church of *England*. And they are oblig'd to perform Divine Service according to the establish'd Form, or Ritual, observ'd at *St. Mary's in Copenhagen*. They are oblig'd to pray for the King and Magistracy, and for the Propagation of the Gospel, and are prohibited to admit any to the Sacrament, who have not first been at Confession. But the Penitent, 'tis said, need not give an Account of every particular Sin, a general Confession, according to the Order the Commandments stand in, entitles him to Absolution. The Priest is also forbid to take any Money of the Penitent, which the *Lutheran* Ministers frequently do notwithstanding. The Priest may not divulge the Confession of any one where it is particular,

unless in Cases of High Treason, or for the Prevention of some great Mischief by such Discovery, on Pain of Deprivation; and in this Case the Name of the Penitent ought to be conceal'd as long as possible.

The *Danes* look upon all, who have any Service appointed them in the Church, as Ecclesiasticks, and they are accordingly taken from among the Students, whether they be Clerks, Sextons, or Singing-Men, and these wholly depend on the Priest or Curate of the Parish.

The Lands of every Person convicted of turning Papist are forfeited to the next Heir, unless he disposes of them before he changes his Religion, and such an Apostate is to be banish'd the *Danish* Dominions. Whoever hath receiv'd his Education from the Jesuits is disabled to have any Employment Ecclesiastical or Civil; and *Popish* Priests are prohibited to enter the *Danish* Territories on Pain of Death. Nor is the Law less severe against those they are pleas'd to denominate Hereticks. *Jews* are forbid to come into the Kingdom without a Royal License; and whoever discovers a *Jew* is entitled to a Reward of fifty Crowns. Their Laws also are pretty severe against Gypsies and Fortune-tellers, who pretend to foretel future Events, and to be acquainted with the Stars; no less than Banishment being the Pain of the first Offence, and the second Capital.

Blasphemers of God and Religion are sentenc'd, first to have their Tongues cut out, and afterwards to lose their Heads. And if a Priest or Ecclesiastick is guilty of prophaning the Name of God, or any other notorious

Vice,

Vice, his Punishment is double to that of a Layman's.

Their Laws concerning Marriage require that the Consent of the Relations and Guardians be had as well as the Woman's. And if she marries without the Consent of her Guardian, he shall receive the Profit of her Fortune during his Life ; but then if a Guardian neglect to marry his Ward till she is past eighteen Years of Age, the Magistrate is impower'd to relieve her. Their Marriages are dissoluble, and a Divorce may be obtain'd in *Denmark* in three Cases, 1. For Adultery. 2. On a voluntary and malicious Elopement. And 3. For Impotence. But in case of Adultery, the Crime must be well prov'd by Witnesses or Circumstances, the Confession of the offending Party not being deem'd sufficient, since many have falsely accus'd themselves, in order to obtain a Separation. The *Danish* Law also requires that the Party who brings the Accusation be innocent, for otherwise no Divorce can be obtain'd, unless it appear that the ill Usage of the Husband hath occasion'd the Wife to offend. And if the Husband after he has discover'd his Wife to be guilty of Adultery, shall cohabit with her afterwards, a Separation will not be granted. Where a Woman is divorc'd for Adultery, she may marry again after three Years are elaps'd, with a Royal License, provided she hath liv'd chastly during that Time, but she may not marry or reside within the same Town or District where her former Husband liv'd : And the like Law is where the Husband is divorc'd for Adultery committed by him ; but the innocent Party is at Liberty to marry so soon as the Sentence of Divorce is pronounc'd. What they term a
malicious

malicious Elopement, and is a second Cause of Divorce, is where one of the Parties voluntarily absents him or her self from his or her Spouse by the Space of three Years; but if the Party deserted hath cohabited with another in the mean time, a Divorce cannot be obtain'd on this Account. However if it appear that the Party going away from his or her Spouse associate with a third Person, the Party deserted may then immediately marry again, on Account of Adultery. Where a Person is absent on Account of Trade, or War, or other necessary Avocation, this is not deem'd a Desertion, but the Wife is oblig'd to wait seven Years for his Return; after which Time if the Wife marry again and the first Husband return from abroad, he shall not reclaim his Wife again, unless he make it appear that he hath liv'd chastly during his Absence, and hath not associated himself with any other Woman. And he is oblig'd to produce Evidence of the Places he hath resided at, that the Wife may be at Liberty to examine the Matter. But if he produces such Proof as is satisfactory to the Magistrate, the Woman must return to her first Spouse. In the case of Impotence the Woman is oblig'd to prove that the same was previous to the Marriage, and she is to wait three Years at least, to see if it may be remedied: But when that Time is expir'd, if there be no Hopes of Relief, the Marriage is null. Where such a Misfortune happens after Marriage, 'tis said the Party concern'd hath no other Remedy but Patience.

A Man is not allow'd to sell or alienate his Lands before he is five and twenty Years of Age, without the Consent of his nearest Relations

tions. And a Woman, whether she be Maid or Widow, can never part with her Lands, but must leave them to descend as the Law directs.

An uninterrupted Possession of twenty Years is held to make a good Title to an Estate, and they are not permitted to run farther back in a Trial of the Right. All Obligations also and personal Debts are held to be void, if not renew'd within twenty Years. And Notes and Bills of Exchange are of equal Force with an Obligation. But the Law allows eight Days time for all kind of Payments to be made beyond the time prefix'd, and if that time be elaps'd four and twenty Hours, the Creditor may protest it, and have Process either against the original Debtor or Acceptor: But no Person is oblig'd to pay any Money lost at Gaming.

The Tenure of Villainage still prevails in many parts of *Denmark*, and their Vassals or Tenants who hold by this base Tenure, are purchas'd, and descend with the Lands they live upon, as the Fish in the Waters, or Deer in a Park. Nor can these Peasants leave the Lands they belong to and retire elsewhere, if they do, the Lord of the Soil may reclaim them with all their Goods. Nor can any Town or Place receive them, unless they produce a License from their Lord, and a Certificate from the Minister of the Parish where they last inhabited. And if a Peasant of this Class endeavours to conceal himself, his Lord may seize him wherever he finds him, and put him in Prison, or remove him to any other Tenement or Farm, by way of Punishment. If the Wife of one of these Peasants is brought to Bed on the Lands of another Lord, the Child shall
however

however belong to the Lord where the Father Lives. Although the Lord has a Power to enfranchise his Peasant, or to sell him with the land, yet he cannot sell him singly separate from the Glebe.

The Children of Ecclesiasticks of the Peasant Race are free, and so are all Students in the liberal Arts. A Peasant cannot have the Freedom of any Town till he is first enfranchis'd by his Lord. But if he hath resided ten Years in any City unreclaim'd, and becomes a Tradesman or Artificer, or applies himself to the Sea, he is deem'd free. A Peasant also who hath liv'd twenty Years in a foreign Village off of the Lord's Land, has thereby procur'd his Freedom; or if he goes into the Army and obtains a Commission, this gives him his Freedom.

As to their Game Laws, every Freeholder may hunt or fish in his own Grounds, and the Nobility and Gentry have the Privilege of hunting in Common or Waste Grounds, within ten Miles of their Seats, except in the King's Parks, and they may fish in Lakes and Ponds, which are not appropriated to the King's Pleasure. For if any Lord hunt, shoot or fish in any Place set apart for his Majesty, he forfeits for every Stag kill'd one thousand Rix Dollars, for a fallow Deer eight hundred, and for a Hare four hundred, and for every Swan, Goose, Duck, Partridge or other Fowl, two hundred. And whoever is convicted of hunting in another's Lands, forfeits an hundred Ounces of Silver for every Offence.

The People of this Country being pretty much addicted to drinking, all Business is prohibited to be transacted in Taverns, and the

the sitting tipling in publick Houses pretty much discountenanced ; if they will drink it must be at Home ; and the Reason of it a late Writer supposes to be, least the People should in their Cups be too free with the Government. 'Tis observ'd also, that the Subjects usually endeavour to imitate the Court : If it happen to be a sober Reign, the People are less given to excess ; and when they have Vicious Princes and Ministers the lower part of Mankind do not fail to follow the lewd Example their Superiors set them.

If any Person be known to send his Effects or Money out of the Kingdom to be lodg'd in Foreign Banks, the King claims a sixth part of the whole, and the Person is also oblig'd to pay a tenth to the Magistrates of the Town, or the Lord of the Soil where he resides : Even Foreign Merchants have been oblig'd to submit to these Exactions on their returning Home, notwithstanding their respective Sovereigns have insisted upon an Exemption ; and when they have by Importunity, or Threats, been induc'd to make Satisfaction in some particular Cases, they have nevertheless soon after proceeded to extort the like Sums from others.

The Conclusion of the Sixth VOLUME.

And now drawing near to a Conclusion of the Sixth Volume, rather than enter upon the Description of any other Country here, which I could make but a small Progress in, I shall add some useful Digressions which may be acceptable to the Reader, and not Foreign to the Subject I am treating of. And first, I shall observe how the *Dutch* have supplanted

The
English
driven
from the
Whale
Fishery;
&c. by
the Dutch.

us, and driven as from the *Greenland* Fishery, and many valuable Branches of our Commerce, or at least rendred them of very little Value to us. A People fav'd by our Arms, and from the Condition of Oppressed Subjects, advanc'd to the Dignity of Sovereign States, styling themselves LORDS OF THE OCEAN: And representing their Deliverers from *Spanish* Servitude as Slaves and Vassals to their High Mightinesses in every distant Country they visited; our Merchants also were us'd accordingly, their Ships destroy'd, their Agents and Factors imprison'd, tortured and murder'd, till they were compell'd to relinquish the Treasures of *India* into their Hands. What is become of our Trade to *Japan*, to the *Moluccoes*, *Banda*, *Java*, and the other Islands of the East? Of what Advantage are our *African*, *Russian*, and *Greenland* Trades at this Day? Nay, what is the Herring Fishery upon our own Coasts? do not the *Dutch* reap the whole Advantage of it? And do they not with Spices they have monopoliz'd, and the Fish they take in our own Seas, purchase the Merchandize of every Country on the Face of the Globe? The Trade of the World is theirs; they have more Mariners than all the Nations in *Europe* put together, and consequently can fit out greater Fleets; of which their Neighbours would soon be sensible, if their Ambition were equal to their Passion for Gain.

By what treacherous and cruel Methods they obtain'd the Dominion of those rich Islands in *India*, where they have establish'd an Empire equal in Power, if not in Wealth, to any on that side the World; and much Superior at Sea to all of them, hath been

shewn

shown in the three first Volumes of this Work. Their Encroachments on our *Russian* and *Greenland* Trades have been taken Notice of in this. What Right they have to all these mighty Acquisitions at this Day will best appear by examining how Dominion and Property may be justly acquir'd, and whether any length of time, or subsequent Acts can render that Possession Legal which was first obtain'd by an injurious Force.

In the early Ages of the World, says *Puffendorf*, all Things were common, and free for any one that would use them. And the first general Agreement amongst Men in relation to this Matter he supposes was, That what any Person had seiz'd out of the common Store of Things, or out of the Fruits of them with design to apply to his private Occasions, none should rob, or deprive them of. Others held that no such Agreement was necessary, but that the immediate Foundation of all particular Right which any Man has to a thing which was before common, is the first Possession. If it were a Crime, says *Mr. Locke*, to take the least thing which was given by Heaven in common before we had the Consent of all others who had any Right, we might perish with Hunger in the midst of Plenty: And seeing every one is the only Master of his Person and Actions, the Labour of his Body and the Work of his Hands entirely and solely belong to him, as his own proper Goods. A Man who feeds on Acorns he has gather'd under an Oak, or Wild Apples he has gather'd in a Wood, makes them his own by the Pains he has taken for them: 'Tis the same at this Day, with the Stag we have kill'd, the Fish we have taken, or the

Whether Property arise from Compact.

Or Occupancy.

Pearls we have div'd for ; and so many Acres as a Man can Till and Sow, and he has occasion for, properly belong to him, in a Country not already planted, and he hath a right to enclose the same without any Man's Permission ; but it does not follow from hence that we may appropriate to our selves as much Land, or as many Goods as we please ; for the same Law of Nature which hath given every one a particular Right to the Things he hath gotten by his Labour and Industry separate from the Community, hath set certain Bounds to our Right ; if we take what others have Occasion for when our own Necessities are already supply'd, we Seize what does not belong to us ; no private Man is entitled to take more than he can enjoy, to the Prejudice of others, whose real Wants are not satisfied.

The Descendants from Adam derive a Title to their Possessions from him.

Others apprehend that it is plain from Divine Revelation, That there never was a time when all Things were common, but that Adam was Sovereign of the World, and all Things in it, by the Donation of Heaven : That his Children could claim no Property so long as they continued in the Family of their Father, unless he convey'd somewhat to them in the manner of a *Peculium*, or separate Stock ; and that they became Proprietors afterwards, by possessing that Share which he assign'd them when dismiss'd from under his Tuition. And all People who gave any Credit to the History of the Creation, contain'd in the Books of *Moses*, must Acknowledge the Dominion of Adam over the World, and all Things in it ; and that he had a Power of dividing it among his Descendants as he saw fit ; but it is highly probable, in the Infancy of

of the World, when Men were few, and there was so large a Field to range in, that he had little Occasion to exercise his Jurisdiction in this particular, but left his Children to plant such Parts of it as they were most inclin'd to, reserving only the Liberty of determining the Right, where there should happen any Competition among them : Or, in other Words, of exercising that Dominion which God had conferr'd upon him over his Descendants, whenever there should be Occasion to interpose his Authority. And as it is Universally agreed that Government is necessary to the well being of all Societies : It is very rational to suppose that a Colony consisting of any considerable Numbers was never sent abroad to any distance, but a Governor, or Governors, were sent with them, who had the Direction of the Society, and the Power of sharing out the Lands they should enter upon, and determining all Disputes among them : And if so, there is no Reason for the Supposition of a time when all Things were common, or of the Peoples coming to an Agreement, that what every particular Man seiz'd should be his own ; and indeed such Principles as these can proceed only from an Opinion that Men at first sprung out of the Earth like Mushrooms, without any Relation or Dependance on each other.

But altho' it does not appear that *Adam*, or *Noah*, took upon them to divide the World among their Descendants ; but probably left ever Family and Tribe to fix their Seats wherever they saw Convenient ; it seems however to be generally agreed, that whatever People first possess'd themselves of any Lands, or Territories, should be deem'd the Proprietors

Proprietors of them : This was, and is manifestly the Sense of all Mankind ; and whoever endeavours to disturb a People in the actual and peaceable Possession of any Country where it is not evident that some others have a prior Right to it, are universally look'd upon as Robbers, and unjust Invaders of their Neighbours Properties.

A private Man landing on a Desert Shoar, does not entitle him to the whole Country.

But further, in Relation to the Occupancy of Lands, says *Puffendorff*, we are carefully to observe and distinguish whether it be made by one Person only, or by many in Conjunction : One Man is then adjudg'd to be the Occupant of Land when he tills and manures it, or when he encloses it with settled Boundaries and Limits ; but then he ought to grasp at no more than is sufficient for the Support of one Family, however enlarg'd and multiplied ; for should one Man for Instance, with his Wife be cast upon a Desert Island sufficient to maintain Multitudes of People ; he could not without intolerable Arrogance challenge the whole Island to himself in Right of Occupancy, and endeavour to repulse those who should Land on a different part of the Shoar.

His Prince properly the Proprietor.

But when a Number of Men, Subjects of any Prince, or State, take Possession of a void Country in his Name, and it is parcell'd out amongst the Adventurers by the Authority of the Prince, or State, whose Subjects they are, such an Occupancy confers on their Sovereign a Dominion over that Country, and all Things contain'd within the Tract of Land thus possess'd : Nor is it necessary that all Things which are first occupied in this general way should be immediatly divided amongst particular and distinct Proprietors ; but if in a Country

Country thus possess'd, any Thing should be found which is not ascertain'd to a private Owner, it must not immediatly be look'd upon as void and wast ; so that any Person may seize it as his peculiar ; but it is lodg'd in the Community, Prince, or State, to whom the Adventurers are subject.

We may then be said to occupy a Thing, according to *Puffendorff*, when we actually take Possession of it with an Intention of keeping, or using it ; but the bare seeing a Thing, or the knowing where it is, is not judg'd a sufficient Title of Possession. In treating on this Subject our Author takes Occasion to introduce that famous Story in *Plutarch*, where the People of *Andros* and *Chalcis* joining in an Expedition to *Thrace*, to find out new Seats where they might fix and inhabit ; and being inform'd that the Barbarians had deserted the City of *Acanthus*, they sent two Spies to discover the Truth. These Spies as they drew near the Place, judging it to be really forsaken : The *Chalcidian* Spy ran with all his might to take Possession of it in the Name of his People ; but the *Andrian* finding himself not so swift of Foot threw the Spear he had in his Hand at the City Gate, and fixing it there, cried out he had taken Possession of the City in behalf of his Countrymen ; and a Dispute arising hereupon, the Matter was referr'd to the *Eretrians*, *Samians*, and *Parians* : The two former gave Judgment for the *Chalcidians*, and the last for the *Andrians*, which was so resented by the *Andrians*, that they engaged themselves by an Oath never to make any Intermarriages with the *Eretrians*, or *Samians*, for the future. But says a certain Commentator on this Passage ; the Town ought
neither

What amounts to a lawful Possession.

The
Notion
of the
Greeks and
Romans
that the
Barbari-
ans might
be dispos-
sess'd of
their
Seats.
Christian
Princes
of the
same
Opinion.

neither to have been adjudg'd to the *Chalcidians*, or *Andrians*; but as the Spies were deputed and sent thither by both Parties, the City ought to have been equally shar'd between them. And give me leave to add, that as the *Acanthians* were induc'd to leave their City only by the Terror they were under of these *Grecian* Free-booters, who much better deserv'd the Term of Barbarians, than the People they denominated such, the former Inhabitants had the only Legal Right to the Place, notwithstanding they had been frightened out of Possession of it by an armed Force. I must confess, it seems to have been the general Opinion of that Polite People the *Greeks*, as it was afterwards of the *Romans*; That they had a Right to dispossess any Nation of their Seats which they stiled Barbarous: And this Notion also, so far prevail'd afterwards amongst *Christians*, that we find the Pope and *Christian* Princes parcelling out the Dominions of the *Indian* Sovereigns; and exercising an Authority over their Subjects as if they were really their Vassals; which proceeded no doubt from that pious Persuasion, That *Dominion is founded in Grace*; and that People out of the Pale of their particular Church, or Sect, had no Right to possess the good Things of this World, or the next; but Heaven had decreed them to be ruin'd here, and damn'd hereafter. Nor was this only the Opinion of the *Roman Catholics*, but we find even Protestant Princes and States govern'd by the same Principle: And commissioning their Subjects to take Possession of any Countries in Pagan Hands. And as to the *Dutch*, they make no Scruple of seizing any Country, and dispossessing the Inhabitants, whether

Christians

Christian or *Pagan*, if they find it worth the while, and have Power enough to effect it. Our own *Seſtaries* and *Fanaticks* alſo in the times of *Uſurpation*, generally adjudg'd all the *Eſtates* of the prophane *Cavaliers* to be devolved of right on them; declaring that the time was come when the *Saints* alone were to reign upon Earth. But leaving theſe *Jefuitical* and *Fanatical Principles* with that *Contempt* and *Detestation* they deſerve; I return to enquire further into what the *Civilians* ſay as to *Lands*, or other *Things* left, or relinquish'd by their former *Owners*: And, it ſeems, they hold that a *Man* may by *Occupancy* obtain a *Right* to ſuch *Things* as have been relinquish'd voluntarily by a former *Owner*, as well as if he had been the original *Poſſeſſor*. If a *Perſon* without *Compulſion* leave his *Lands*, giving ſufficient *Indications* that he deſigns to retain them no longer: Or, if having firſt loſt the *Poſſeſſion* againſt his will, afterwards gives them over either as deſpairing to recover them, or becauſe the *Recovery* may not countervail his *Trouble*; in theſe *Caſes* they ſeem free for any one. But a *Prince*, or *State*, may actually loſe the *Poſſeſſion* of their *Territories*, and ſtill have a *Right* of regaining them; for if it does not appear that the former *Owner* left the *Poſſeſſion* of them voluntarily, and had no *Intention* of returning and enjoying them again, the ſecond *Occupant* can have no *Title* to them, but is deem'd an *Intruder*, or *Uſurper*.

Occu-
pancy of
Lands re-
linquiſh'd
by their
former
Proprie-
tors.

There are ſtill ſeveral other ways of acquiring *Dominion* over *Men* and *Countries* which are ſaid to be juſt; as that of *Conqueſt*, where the *War* was begun upon good *Grounds*. But how far this may be juſt, af-

Conqueſt
where it
creates a
Title.

ter the injur'd Party hath had Satisfaction offer'd him, or gain'd an Equivalent for the Affront, or Loss he hath sustain'd, may deserve Consideration. It is the Opinion of *Puffendorff*, that where a Prince hath forcibly dethron'd another, and placed himself in his Throne, his Obligation to make Restitution does not expire till the expell'd Prince and his Heirs, who had the Right of succeeding, are all deceas'd; or till such an unfortunate Prince hath quite abdicated, or relinquish'd his Claim to the Kingdom. And this he is presum'd to have done in his Opinion, if in a long Course of time he hath made no Effort towards recovering his Crown.

How a
Subject
ought to
behave
towards a
Usurper.

It is another very difficult Question, as my Author observes, In what manner a Subject ought to behave himself towards an Invader and Usurper, so long as the unjust Cause of his possessing the Throne continues, and he is supported only by Force, there having been no subsequent Cession, or Grant, from the rightful Sovereign to strengthen his Title? To which it is answer'd, That there can be no Obligation to Obedience, unless the Person demanding it hath a lawful Authority over me. Meer Violence may indeed lay on a Man some extrinsical Necessity of doing this, or that; but it cannot impose an Obligation, which is an intrinsical Engagement so binding to the Mind, as to make the Neglect or Omission of it sinful. And therefore where a Person is threatned with Violence from a stronger Hand, he may be compell'd to do those Things to which he hath no Obligation, and which he hates and abhors; but if he afterwards finds an Opportunity, no Man will censure him for breaking his way through these

these unjust Impositions. But what seems hardest to resolve, is, when a Person has driven out the lawful Prince, and seizing the Government, set himself up for King, and compell'd the Subjects to swear Allegiance to him; how shall they behave themselves under two contrary Obligations, one to the lawful Prince expell'd, and the other to the present Possessor? How can a Man owe Fealty to two at the sametime, who are bent upon each other's Destruction? for the Oath taken by the Subjects to the Usurper can never extinguish the Rights and Pretensions of the lawful Sovereign. In which Case the Opinion of *Grotius* is, that whilst a Usurper is in Possession the Acts of Sovereignty which he exerciseth, have a Power of obliging not by Virtue of his Right (for Right he hath none) but because it is in the highest Degree probable that he who hath the just Right to the Throne had rather, as Things now stand, that the Commands of him who is thus in Possession should hold good, than that by the ceasing of all Laws and Justice the Common Wealth should be thrown into utter Confusion. And it, says *Puffendorff*, the lawful Prince be reduc'd to such Streights, that he is not able to affor'd his Subjects due Protection, nor they on the other Hand able to resist the Usurper without imminent Ruin; it must be taken for granted that he hath for a while releas'd his Subjects from their Obligation towards him, till such time as Providence shall open a way to his Restoration. And thus the Fealty promis'd the Usurper seems so far only to be binding, as that it shall be a kind of temporary Engagement, to expire as soon as the expell'd Prince shall recover his Dominions.

But notwithstanding it is truly observ'd, that the Oath of a Subject to an Usurper cannot alter, or affect the Right of his lawful Prince ; and that such an Oath may, and ought to be dispens'd with whenever the Sovereign is in a Condition to recover his Dominion : Yet surely, the Person who swears Allegiance to one when he knows he owes it to another, cannot be altogether Innocent. If it be true indeed, that when a Prince has lost his Possession he hath lost his Right, and that a Possession and Right are the same Thing ; then, indeed, every Usurper by the very Act of Usurpation, becomes a lawful Prince, and consequently the Subject is bound in Conscience to obey, and swear Fealty to him ; but for those who apprehend a Prince may be driven from his Throne, and yet retain a Right to his Dominions and the Subjects Allegiance ; how these can acquit themselves of premeditated Perjury, when they call Heaven to attest their belief that the excluded Prince hath no Right to their Obedience ; and that the wrongful Possessor is their only rightful and lawful Sovereign, may require some subtilty to discover.

Now according to the Notions the great Men above cited, have of Right and Wrong : What Title have the *Spaniards*, the *Portuguese*, or the *Hollanders*, to great part of the Dominions, or Plantations they have possess'd themselves of the last two Centuries ? As to the *Spaniards*, and other Western Planters, I shall observe how they made themselves Masters of the Countries under their Power when I come to treat of *America*, and here only review the Methods the *Portuguese*, *Dutch*, and the *English*, took to establish themselves in the East.

As to the *English*, I believe I may say that what they possess in *India* and the Eastern Seas they acquir'd by Compact, not by Force; nor do the Natives at this Day desire their Removal, finding themselves treated with all imaginable Justice and Humanity where they live under their Jurisdiction. 'Tis evident, Multitudes of them choose rather to live under the Government of the *English*, than under the Princes of the Country, so mild is the Administration in all the *English* Settlements: Whereas the *Portuguese* and *Dutch* treat the Inhabitants as their Slaves and Vassals, properly ruling over them with a Rod of Iron.

If the Discovering a Passage and tracing out the Way to a foreign Country can entitle a People to monopolize the Trade of it, the *Portuguese* had certainly the justest Preterfions of any Nation to engross the Trade of the East, for their Adventurers were employ'd from the Year 1410 to the Year 1497 with infinite Labour and Hazard, in searching the Western Coasts of *Africk*, in order to make their way into the *Indian* Seas. And they had not only the Advantage of being the first Discoverers, but had the Authority of the Pope's Grant, at that Time look'd upon with no small Regard by *Christian* Princes, to support their Claim; the Holy Father thereby constituting the King of *Portugal* and his Successors Lords of all those Countries which shou'd be discovered between *Cape Bajadore*, on the Western Side of *Africk*, and the *East Indies*; and giving them an unlimited Power and Authority over the Natives: with a Proviso notwithstanding, that this Grant shou'd not be understood to affect the Right of any *Christian* Prince, who might be in the Possession
of

of any Country within those Limits. The King of *Spain* also procur'd the like Grant from the *Pope* of the Continent and Islands of *America* on the Discovery of them: And the Sovereigns of *Spain* and *Portugal* by a solemn Treaty, afterwards came to an Agreement, that the Western Discoveries should belong to *Spain*, and the East to *Portugal*. It was not then thought necessary to consult any of the rest of the Princes of *Europe* in the matter. Accordingly the *Portuguese* enjoy'd the sole Trade to *India*, uninterrupted by any other *European* Nation, for about an hundred Years, stiling themselves Lords of the Eastern Seas, and exercising Sovereign Authority over many of the *Indian* Princes and their Subjects.

At their first Arrival in *India* indeed, they only pretended to establish a Trade with the Natives. But being admitted to build Factories and erect Forts, under Pretence of securing their Merchandise, and the Country being at that Time divided amongst a Multitude of petty Princes, they soon found themselves in a Condition to give Laws to the Nations who had afforded them so hospitable a Reception, and assum'd the Government of the People they had so treacherously invaded. The *English* and *Dutch* therefore beginning to frequent those Seas about the Year 1600, the Natives desir'd their Assistance to drive the hated *Portuguese* from their Coasts, which the *English* were not averse to: But when any Advantage was gain'd over their common Enemies the *Portuguese*, the *English* only restor'd the Natives to their former Liberties, and left them to be govern'd by their own Laws: While the *Dutch*, in every Place where they expell'd the *Portuguese*, planted themselves in their Room, and laid

laid a Yoke upon the Natives ten times heavier than that of their former Masters. Nay, they did not always wait for the Natives calling them in to their Assistance, but without any Provocation or Pretence, invaded the *Indian* Princes, destroy'd their Countries, and massacred their Subjects without Mercy ; and if at any time the *English* interpos'd in their behalf, they fell upon them too, tho' at that time their good Allies ; and at length drove them out of all the valuable Trade of the *Molucca's*, the Islands of *Banda* and *Ceylon*, where the Spices only grow ; enslaving many *Indian* Nations, and transplanting both Princes and Subjects to *Batavia*, where the *Dutch* are more Arbitrary than the Great *Turk*, or any Monarch upon Earth. The *English*, at this Day, are only possess'd of some Factories and Settlements upon the Continent of *India*, or the Island of *Sumatra*, by the Consent of the respective Sovereigns, and have never endeavour'd to encroach on the Territories of the neighbouring Princes, or tyrannize over the Natives, who live within their Limits.

But notwithstanding the unjust and barbarous Methods by which the *Dutch* laid the Foundations of their Eastern Empire, a long uninterrupted Possession of many Years, 'tis said, supplies all Defects of Title, and they are now to be deem'd lawful and rightful Sovereigns of that part of the World. For Possession, where none can show a better Title, has often been admitted a good Claim ; and the *Dutch* have taken Care to proscribe and massacre every Family, whose Pretensions might give them any Disturbance ; so that their transcendent Guilt has, in the Opinion of many, given them an indisputable Title to
those

those Countries, which they at first gain'd the Dominion of by the most unjustifiable and detested means. However, while there is any Memory of the Cruelties exercis'd by the *Hollanders* on their first Invasion of these People, and they continue to govern them in a despotick manner, it is not to be wonder'd if they are ready to change their Masters, and join any foreign Adventurers who come upon their Coast; nor can it be look'd upon as Rebellion or High Treason in the Natives, though the *Dutch* denominate it such, and punish every Conspiracy with the most unheard of Tortures. For surely when a People have thus lost their legal Governors, this can never give the Invader a Right to their Allegiance, but they are at Liberty to constitute what Form of Government they please, or put themselves under the Protection of any other Prince or State.

The *English* the true Proprietors of *Greenland* and the Whale Fishery there.

The Right of the *Hollander* to the *Greenland* Whale Fishery, and that of the Herring Fishery on the Coasts of *Britain*, seems equal to that of their other foreign Acquisitions. The *Dutch* cannot but acknowledge that the *English* first began to fish for Morse and Whales in *Greenland*, even before those Seas had been frequented by any other Nation. That the *English* formally took Possession of the Country, by erecting a Cross upon it, with the Royal Arms of *England* affix'd to it, in the Reign of King *James I.* and that King thereupon claimed *Greenland* as part of the Dominions of *Britain*, prohibiting all other Nations to fish upon those Shoars. What the *Dutch* say in answer to this is, that their Countryman *William Barents* discover'd *Greenland* before us, and consequently their Title to it is prior to ours. Now it

must

must be admitted that the *Dutch Pilot, William Barents*, about the Year 1598, did sail as far as *Greenland*, in Expectation of discovering a Passage to *India* that way, and went on Shoat there, but left it again, without pretending to take Possession of it for his Masters, the States, and indeed without Thoughts of ever returning thither again. He never imagin'd that it could be worth their while to take Possession of a Country so far to the North, which yielded nothing of Value, and which could not in all Appearance, have subsisted a Colony. But twelve or fifteen Years afterwards, when the *English* had observ'd that there were more Whales to be met with in those Seas than in any other; and had taken Possession of the Country, and establish'd a Whale Fishery there, then indeed did the *Dutch* pretend to a Right to fish for Whales on that Coast as the first Discoverers, and set up Booths and other Conveniencies there for making Oil of the Whale Blubber, which the *English* constantly oppos'd, till our Ministry were brib'd to wink at the Encroachments of the *Dutch*. And in Answer to this Claim of the *Hollanders*, the *English* reply, That if the bare seeing or setting ones Foot on Shoar in any Country, without intimating a Design to take Possession of it were sufficient to give any People a Right to such Country, then Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, Admiral of the *English*, who is presum'd to have been on the Coast of *Greenland* forty Years before the *Dutch Pilot* above mention'd, (from Journals found on board his Ship) obtain'd a Title to it for his Prince and Country long before the *Hollanders* had seen it. But this seems unnecessary to insist upon, because our Civilians universally hold, That un-

Vol. VI. L11 less

less a Man gives some Intimation of his Design to possess a place, or appropriate it to his own Use, it is free for the next Comer upon his leaving it. And the first Person who takes Possession of it with an Intent to use it, and does actually continue to use it, is the rightful Proprietor of what he so possesses; and therefore the *English* being allow'd by all Nations first to have taken a formal Possession of *Greenland*, and first to have establish'd the Whale Fishery there, are consequently the only true Proprietors of that Country. And here I cannot but take Notice of the exceeding Humility, or rather Ignorance of some of my Country-men, and especially of those who admire every thing that is *Dutch*; according to these one would think that the *Hollanders* were the first Discoverers of every thing that is valuable, and the Inventors of every Art and Science. The *English*, they tell us, are first in nothing; but they will allow them sometimes to be pretty good Imitators of their High and Mighty Masters: Whereas in Truth there is scarce that single Settlement, Plantation, Trade, or Manufacture in the World, which was first discover'd, planted, or undertaken by the *Dutch*. On the contrary, the Discoveries, Settlements, and Trade to the South East and South West, are without Controversy to be ascrib'd to the *Portuguese* and the *Spaniard*, and those on the North East and North West to the *English*: In the last of which I may say, the Bravery and Diligence of our Country-men are inimitable: Peruse but the Voyages of the Captains, Chancellor, *Boroughs*, *Forbisher*, *Petz*, *Jackman*, *Hudson*, *Davis*, *Bassin*, *James*, *Pool*, *Bennet*, *Edge*, *Wood*, &c. and we cannot have a mean Opinion of our own Nation.

On

On the contrary, what have the *Dutch* done, but treacherously supplanted those who were the first Adventurers; and by the basest Calumnies, by Fraud, or Force, without any colour of Justice, planted themselves in their Room. Their uncommon Diligence also us'd in these Exploits frequently becomes the subject of Admiration: but why is not the Industry of Sharpers, of Highwaymen and Pyrates equally admir'd? These Men too watch Day and Night to defraud and dispossess Honest Men of their Rights; and Sleep not, as the Sacred Writings observe, unless they have done some notable Mischief.

In the same Pacifick Reign of *James I.* when the *Dutch* were suffer'd to ruin our Whale Fishery, they were encouraged by our Indolence to insult the very Coasts of *Britain*, and took the Ships of some Nations in Amity with us in our very Roads, in contempt of King *James's* Declarations, which they knew he would never Second with his Arms: For the same Reason also they claim'd a Right of Fishing on our Coasts for Herrings, without making any Acknowledgment for the Privilege: This, his Successor King *Charles I.* resented, and compell'd them to pay a Tribute of thirty thousand Pounds *per Annum*: Whereupon they encourag'd their Friends in *England* to dispute his Right to that inconsiderable Tax of Ship Money; by which he maintain'd that Victorious Fleet which reduc'd them to reason. And how far they contributed to the Confusions that follow'd I shall not take upon me to determine; but thus

L l l 2

much

much is Evident, that if the Nation had not been engaged immediately afterwards in a long Civil War, the *Hollanders* had never been suffer'd to establish themselves in the *British* Settlements in *India* ; or to enjoy the Whale, or Herring Fisheries, without making a suitable Acknowledgment : Nor did we want Men in the Reign of King *James I.* who carefully watch'd and observ'd the Steps the *Dutch* were taking to monopolize the Trade of the World, and supplant the *English* who had rais'd their State; but our Civil Broils follow'd so soon after, and were of that long Continuance, that their Representations were not sufficiently attended to : We contented our selves with Banging them heartily now and then at Sea, and then our Resentment seem'd to drop ; or rather the *Dutch* found means to apply themselves so effectually to those at the Helm, that they were suffer'd to go off with all their ill gotten Acquisitions ; tho' the People had vow'd never to be Friends with them without Re-sitution was made.

St. *Wil-*
liam Mon-
son's Ob-
servati-
ons on
the
practises
of the
Dutch.

Amongst others who observ'd the Practices of the *Dutch* so early as the Reign of King *James* the first, and foretold their future Grandeur, was Sir *William Monson* : Our Eyes and Senses make it clearly appear, says that Gentlemen, that the cunning Practices of the *Dutch* tend to the Impoverishing this glorious Kingdom ; I shall therefore unmask their Craft, and discover the Subtilty of their *English* Friends to intrap us under the false Colours and pretence of *Security to the State* : They lay it down as a Maxim, *That the Security of*
England

England depends on the Fortunes of Holland. A foul Imputation, says that worthy Knight, do they cast upon us; when we remember the noble and victorious Actions of our Fore-fathers, who made other Nations tremble, but fear'd none themselves. But this Maxim has been devis'd to serve the Purposes of private Men. Then he proceeds to discover some of the insolent and indirect Practices of the *Hollanders*: After, says he, they had in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* engaged us in a War with *Spain*, and in pursuance thereof all Traffick was forbidden with that Kingdom: The *Dutch* notwithstanding continued to Trade with *Spain* as in time of Peace; and supply'd our Enemies with Ammunition, Shipping, Seamen, and Intelligence against us; and by this means engross'd all the Trade of that Kingdom to themselves. Their Drift was to keep us at Variance, and prolong the War, that they might enjoy the sole Benefit of this Commerce. This was the beginning of their Rising and of our Ruin; and who can help observing here, how extremely this resembled their Conduct in the late War with *France*, does it not seem to confirm what is generally said, That the *Dutch* have gain'd more than ever they lost by their Wars. And what Security did we gain, says that Gentleman, when with an Expence of more Men and Money than we have conquer'd Kingdoms heretofore; we maintain'd their Principality, making Mechanick Persons equal with Princes, rais'd a Rabble Common Wealth against their Monarch; and train'd up their People in the Discipline of War? From a mean timorous
Generation

Generation we inspir'd them with Valour, taught them the Knowledge of Arms, and put them in their Hands : In return whereof, do they not requite us with some ill turn wherever we meet them. How came we to part with *Flushing* and the *Brill*, the Cautionary Towns, that were heretofore a Bridle to their Insolence ? by them we could either Curb, or give them the Rein : Till the time we parted with them they durst not publicly have affronted us. By this false Position, *That England's safety must depend on Holland's Prosperity*, were we driven into a War and ruin'd our Commerce : But the greatest Mischief of all others, was the tolerating their Fishing on our Coasts ; by Reason whereof we have resign'd our Weapons, which are the Ships encreas'd by it, into their Hands : Had our Watchmen in their Wisdoms, foreseen this and prevented it, by enjoying the Fishery themselves ; then had *England* kept the same Strength at Sea which *Holland* hath since attain'd to : Then would not *England* only have been Superior to them, but to all the World besides, in the Strength of her Shipping and the Wealth of her Subjects ; and consequently become the Admiration and Terror of our Neighbours : But now are we brought to reproach and scorn by that mean Nation of *Holland* in remote Countries, even as far as the *East Indies*, where they cast upon us the Imputation of a petty Nation, a beggarly People ; stiling themselves Sovereigns and Kings of this part of the World.

The same Writer gives us the following Account of the Advantage the Herring Fishery was to the *Dutch* in his time, he says, they vend'd annually at four Towns within the Sound, viz. at *Coningsburg*, *Stetin*, *Dantzick*, and ——— between thirty and forty thousand Lafts of Herrings, amounting to above six hundred and twenty thousand Pounds. In *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Sweden*, and *Livonia*, ten thousand Lafts of Herrings, worth an hundred and sixty thousand Pounds. In *Russia* fifteen hundred Lafts, amounting to twenty seven thousand Pounds. At *Stade*, *Humburgh*, *Bremen*, and *Emden*, six thousand Lafts, amounting to an hundred thousand Pounds. In *Germany*, two and twenty thousand Lafts of Herrings, amounting to four hundred and forty thousand Pounds. In the *Spanish Neither Lands*, eight or nine thousand Lafts, amounting to an hundred and sixty thousand Pounds. At *Roan*, five hundred Lafts, worth ten thousand Pounds. So that here he has reckon'd up above a million and half *Sterling* made of Herrings by the *Dutch* an hundred Years ago; besides a vast Quantity spent in their own Country, to the amount of several hundred thousand Pounds more: and no doubt it is now encreas'd to many millions; and with these, and the other Fish they take, and the Spices of the East, they Purchase the Merchandize of the several Countries of *Europe*: Whatever any Country yeilds they take in lieu of them, having seldom Occasion to export any other Treasure. In *Holland* there is a Staple of all Commodities, their Ships continually going out

The Advantages of the Herring Fishery.

out and coming in to and from every Country on the Face of the Globe, bring them in an inestimable Profit.

He proceeds to acquaint us, that on the two and twentieth, or three and twentieth of *June* annually, there resorts to the Islands of *Shetland* on the North of *Scotland* (which were transferr'd to King *James III.* on his marrying a Daughter of *Denmark*) two thousand *Dutch* Fishing Vessels, and that on the twenty fourth of the same Month they put to Sea, being prohibited under a severe Pain to take any Herrings sooner, because they are not in their full Prime till then. Every one of these Vessels on that Day directs his Course to find out the Shoals of Herrings; and having Laden their Busses they return home to *Holland*, leaving them on Shoar to be sent immediately into the *Sound*, and other Countries where they are vended: And being furnish'd again with Victuals, Cask, and Salt, they return to Sea in quest of the Shoal they left, and load again, returning to *Holland* as before; and this they repeat a third time each Season, every Vessel being computed to take an hundred Lasts of Herrings at least, which being then valued at ten Pounds the Last, or eighteen Shillings the Barrel, amounts to a thousand Pounds *Sterling* for each Bus: and sometimes this Fleet is attended by other Vessels, call'd Yawgers, which carry Salt, Cask and Victuals to truck with the Busses for their Herrings, and carry them directly to the *Baltick*, without returning to *Holland*; for those which come first to Market bear the greatest Price:

Price : But the States, 'tis said, sometimes make an Order that no Herrings shall be carried to a Foreign Market till they are first landed in *Holland*.

Here he sets down the Price of a Buſs new from the Stocks, which he computes will laſt about twenty Years, with the Value of her Nets, Tackling, Salt, Victuals, Caſk, Seamen's Wages, and all other Charges belonging to her; with the Profit gain'd by her four Months Fiſhing annually.

	L.	
And firſt, he computes that a Buſs,	}	500
with her Furniture and Tackling		
will coſt	}	
2. One hundred Laſts of Caſk,	}	90
which ſhe will want, at eighteen		
Shillings the Laſt,	}	
3. Thirty Weigh of Salt, at 3 l.	}	105
10 s. the Weigh,		
4. Beer for the Crew for four Months,	}	16
at a Gallon a Day,		
5. Bread after the ſame Proportion,		12
6. Butter, Cheeſe, Billets,		20
7. Wages for four Months,		88
Total	L	<u>831 00 0</u>

He computes alſo, that every Buſs will take an hundred Laſts of Herrings in a Seaſon, which at a very moderate Eſtimate will amount to a thouſand Pound; ſo that there is gain'd by a Buſs the very firſt Year, clear of all

Vol. VI. M m m Charges;

Charges, about an hundred and sixty nine Pounds; and every succeeding Year five hundred Pounds at least, making Allowances for Wear and Tare.

The
Herring
Fishery
might be
made
more Ad-
vantagi-
ous to the
English
than the
Dutch.

He observes further, that the *English* can Build and Rig out and Victual a Buss cheaper than the *Hollanders*; because their Country affords scarce any of the Materials. They fetch from Foreign Countries, their Timber, Planks, Iron, Hemp, Cordage, Pipestaves, Bread and Malt: Whereas *England* does, or may be made to produce most of these. The Hazards also, and the Difficulties of the *Dutch* in this Fishing Voyage must be much greater than ours, because they art at a great distance from their Ports; whereas we have Harbours all along the Coasts where the Shoals of Herrings lie, and can send them sooner to Market into the *Baltick*, where most of them are vended, then the *Dutch* possibly can. A further Advantage he takes Notice, would be the enlarging and improving many of our Manufactures, and employing constantly a-bundance of Hands; and thereby clearing the Country of Vagrants and idle People: Six Trades particularly would be concern'd in this Undertaking, which are at present but little us'd, *viz.* Hempsters, Spinsters, Carders, Rope-makers, Weavers of Sail Cloth, and Net-makers; and besides these, there would be fuller Employment for Coopers, Smiths, Shipwrights, Caulkers, Sawyers, Seamen, Fishermen, Basket-makers, and many other Trades. These Fish also would be to us as they are to the *Dutch*, instead of

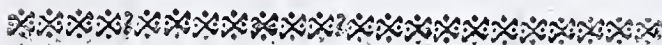
Treasure,

Treasure, we might Purchase with them the Merchandize of every other Country. And what is of as great Consequence to us as any other Consideration, we should never want twenty or thirty thousand Seamen upon our own Coasts ready to serve their Country; whereas the Mariners employ'd in other Voyages, are most part of the Year at a great distance from Home, and cannot be serviceable to us on any sudden Emergency. He Proposes also, that when the Herring Busses are not employ'd in Fishing for Herrings, they may fish for Cod on the North of *Scotland* and *Ireland*, which is an Advantage the *Dutch* cannot so conveniently take.

These are some of the many great Advantages which has been long observ'd might accrue to *Britain*, by establishing a Fishery on our Coast; tho' we should not prohibit the *Dutch* to fish in our Seas: But surely it cannot be unreasonable to demand some small Tribute, or Acknowledgement from that People, for these mighty Advantages they gain by this Privilege. 'Tis true, the Seas are free for all Nations to pass and repass about their Affairs, as Desarts, Forests, and other Waste Grounds are, where the neighbouring Inhabitants can suffer no Damage, or run any Hazard by permitting it. But surely the Pearls, the Oysters, the Lobsters, and other Fish taken in our Waters may be appropriated; and Foreign Nations prohibited to meddle with them, as well as they may be from Hunting and Hawking in a Desert bordering upon us: And in Fact, we see all Na-

tions do insist upon their Right to these Things. Where is there a Pearl Fishery open to all Foreigners? Or who will permit their Oysters to be carry'd off by Strangers if they can oppose it? For notwithstanding, 'tis said, such Things cannot be appropriated, That the Fish in the Sea are free for every Body: Do we not enter into Treaties concerning them? And have not the *French* and other Nations yielded to us the Fishery of *New Foundland*? And will any one presume to say, that the Fishery of *Newfoundland*, which lies so many hundred Leagues distance from us, may be appropriated; but that the Herring Fishery, which lies within two or three Leagues of our Coast, cannot? Besides, when the *Dutch* so lately as the Reign of *Charles I.* agreed to pay thirty thousand Pounds *per Ann.* by way of Tribute for this Privilege, and actually paid it, tho' they took advantage of our Civil Broils to discontinue it; Shall these People pretend they have as good a Right to fish in our Seas as the Natives of *Britain*? We may, and have wink'd at it a great while indeed, under a Notion, that the *Dutch* were necessary to us, and that we cannot subsist without their Friendship; but do they not stand much more in need of ours? What a Figure had they made, if they had not been supported by us against *Spain* in their Infancy, and against *France* in the late Wars? And can we suppose they would ruin their own State in Order to distress us? What then should hinder as from encouraging our own People in the Fishery, and expecting an equal Share of Trade in all other parts of the World? I would

would by no means be thought to endeavour to create any Misunderstanding between the two Nations ; I am convinc'd their Interests ought to be inseparable from ours ; but surely it does not follow that we are to resign all the Advantages of our Situation, and give up the valuable Branches of Commerce, for fear of disobliging any Nation upon Earth. Let our Trade flourish, and Riches will not fail to flow in upon us of Course, on which Power ever attends. And the better Condition our Friends find us in, they will be the more inclin'd to care for us, and do us Justice. We must never expect to gain the Esteem, or Friendship of our Neighbours by tamely yielding up our undoubted Rights.



An

An Account of Seven Dutch Saylor's who were left in Greenland to make Observations on the Country; and of Seven others who made a Second Experiment of the like Nature.

7 Dutch-
men left
in Green-
land.

THE Dutch Greenland-Company, to be the better inform'd of the State of *Greenland*, and make Astronomical Observations during the Winter there, order'd their Fleet at the Expiration of the Season for Whale-fishing, to propose to their Sailors, that if any seven of them would remain in the Country till the Return of the Shipping the following Year, they should be furnish'd with all Necessaries, and handsomely rewarded. Whereupon seven of the boldest and ablest Seamen in the Fleet voluntarily offer'd to stay there during the Winter, and the Dutch Fleet accordingly left them in the Island of *St. Maurice in Greenland*, on the 26th of *August*, 1633.

The Journal these unhappy Mariners left behind them contains an Account of the Wind and Weather every Day, and of

of such other things as they apprehended most necessary to be known. From whence it may be gather'd, that there is very little settled Weather in Winter Time in this part of the World. In *September* and the Beginning of *October* it rain'd, and was tolerably warm for some Days; on others it snow'd and froze, but so little, that they had no Occasion to keep Fires till the ninth of *October*. It was so warm, particularly on the ninth of *September*, that they were at play on the Side of a Hill in the Sun Shine without their Shirts: But by the Middle of *October*, when the Cold grew very severe, they found a Dizziness in their Heads, and a great Alteration in their Bodies; but this probably proceeded rather from their shutting themselves up in a close Place with a Fire, than from the Intenseness of the Cold; for the same thing happen'd to the *Dutch-men* who winter'd at *Nova Zembla*, who were soon reliev'd by throwing open the Door of their Hut. The fifteenth of *October* in the Morning they saw two Whales cast on Shoar, and went out with their Harping Irons and Launces to take them, but they got away from them on the Tides coming in. By the last of *October* the Sea was frozen so far, that they could not discern the Water:
And

And by the eighth of *November*, the Spring which was near their Huts was frozen up, and they were forc'd to drink melted Snow. It is not said in what manner they form'd their Dwellings, but it appears every Man had his particular Hutt; and all of them seem to have been plac'd under one great Booth or Roof, us'd by the Seamen in the Season for making Oil, or other Occasions; for if there had not been a Roof or Shed which cover'd all their Hutts, the Snow and stormy Weather would have prevented their coming to, or assisting one another sometimes. In *November* they saw a great many Bears, but had not the good Fortune to kill more than two or three of them. By the 19th of *November* the Sun left them, but it was still so light without Doors, that they could see to write or read: And notwithstanding it is related that the Sea was frozen as far as they could discern the Beginning of this Month, we find by the latter End of it the Ice was in Motion again, and for four or five Days the Weather was as moderate as in *Holland*: And so it prov'd also the Beginning of *December*; but they observ'd that the South Winds were always the warmest. The 23d of *January* they went out of their Hutts to a Hill on the South Side
of

of the Island to view the Height of the Sun, which now began to visit them again; but it was too cloudy to make an Observation. The 30th being a clear calm frosty Day, they climb'd with a great deal of Difficulty up the same Hill, and the Sun appear'd about an Hour and half high. In the Middle of *February* they were visited by a great many Geese and Falcons, shy to be taken. They set Traps also for Foxes, but without any Success; and having eaten very little fresh Provisions, were much afflicted with the Scurvy. About the latter end of *March* they saw Whales enough about the Coast to have loaden a Fleet with their Oil. The third of *April* there were but two of the Company in tolerable Health, the rest being crippled with the Scurvy. The fifth they saw Whales in abundance. *April* 16th, being *Easter* Day, their Clerk dy'd, and all the rest were sick. The 19th they grew worse, and having no Provisions left, were out of Hopes of Recovery; for not being able to use any Exercise, they were almost frozen. The 23d there was but one able to help himself, who was the Person that continued the Journal after the Death of their Clerk. He help'd their Commander out of his Cabbin with the Pangs of Death upon him the same Day, he

being desirous to be remov'd. The 27th he kill'd their Dog for want of other fresh Provision. He continues the Journal to the last of *April*, which he says was a clear Sun-shiny Day; and the only Word he wrote afterwards was [Die]. 'Tis probable however some of them might live two or three Days in *May*, without being able to stir. It was the fourth of *June* before the *Dutch* Fleet return'd to *Greenland* this Year, where they found every one of these unfortunate Men dead in his own Hutt, he that dy'd first being laid in a Coffin. Near one of them stood some Biscuit and Cheefe; another had a Box of Ointment by him, with which he had rubb'd his Teeth and Joints, and a Prayer-Book lay near him. It is pretty evident from the whole, that the Scurvy was the Foundation and principal Cause of their Deaths, for it appears the Weather was so moderate that they went to the Top of a Hill almost every Day, till the last Month or two; but when they were not able to stir, the Cold, no doubt, contributed to hasten their End.

The *Dutch Greenland-Company* not knowing of the Misfortune which had befallen the first seven Men left in *Greenland*, sent seven others to relieve them,
and

and remain there the following Winter, which they readily agreed to do, notwithstanding the Fate of their Country-Men. These last seven having Meat, Drink, Herbs, Physick, and all other Necessaries provided for them, were left in the Country by the Fleet the 11th of *September*, 1634. When they went in search of the Bears, Foxes, and Herbs the Country afforded, but could meet with none. By the 20th of *October* the Sun left them: (From whence it is to be presum'd they were further North than the other seven, who did not lose the sight of the Sun, according to their Journal, till the nineteenth of *November*.) And not being able to get any Fresh Meat, or Herbs, they began to be over-run with the Scurvy. The fourteenth of *January* one of their Company died; on the 15th of the same Month another died, and the 17th a third: The remaining four had just strength enough to make Coffins for their Bretheren. The seventh of *February* they took a Fox; but were so far gone in their Distemper that nothing could recover them: If the whole Number had been living and in Health, there came such Numbers of Bears about their Dwelling soon after, that they could not have wanted Fresh Meat; but they were too weak now to master those

Animals; and could not so much as bite their Biscuit: They were afflicted also with tormenting Pains in their Loins and Bellies, which encreas'd with the Cold. The 23d, they kept close in their Cabins, recommending themselves to the Mercy of God. The 24th of *February*, according to the Journal, they saw the Sun again. The 26th the Journal concludes in this manner, (*viz.*) Four of us who are still alive, lie flat upon the Ground in our Huts: We believe we could still eat if there was one amongst us who could stir out of his Hut to get our Meat ready, but our Pains prevent us: We spend our time in constant Prayers, imploring God in his Mercy to deliver us out of this Misery; being ready whenever he pleases to call us: We are certainly not able to live without Food, or Fire, till the Shipping arrives: We cannot assist one another, but every one bears his own Burthen. When the Fleet arriv'd from *Holland* in 1635. they found them lying dead in their House close shut up, that the wild Beasts might not devour their dead Bodies, as is suppos'd. Three of them they found put into Coffins, two others lying in their respective Cabins, and the remaining two on a piece of Sail-Cloth on the Floor. After these two fatal Experiments, I

don't

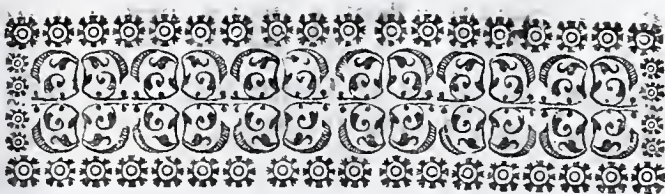
don't meet with any other Persons who have been ambitious of the Honour of spending a Winter in *Greenland*: tho' I am far from thinking it impracticable, if they carried live Cattle, Hogs, and Sheep thither for them to live upon, or if they could kill Rein-Deer, Foxes and Fowls in the Country sufficient for their Subsistence. For it hath been observ'd already, that no Flesh Corrupts, or Putrifies in the Winter, and therefore may be kept without Salt; consequently they would not be in any danger of the Scurvy; and it is evident from these Instances, that the Cold alone would not destroy them.

ERRATA.

WHEREAS in treating of the *Danish Islands* it is said that those of *Shetland* were transferr'd to King *James* the Sixth of *Scotland* on his Marriage with a Daughter of *Denmark*; please to read *James* the Third, instead of *James* the Sixth.

T H E





THE
TABLE
OF THE
Sixth Volume.

A

A	Ggerhuy's, <i>a Province of Norway</i>	P. 295
Aland,	<i>an Island of Sweden</i>	190
Altena,	<i>a Danish Town near Hamburgh</i>	291
Angermania,	<i>a Province of Old Sweden</i>	168
Anhout,	<i>a Danish Island</i>	283
Archangel	<i>in Russia, the Situation of it</i>	8
Arhusen,	<i>a Province of North Jutland</i>	285
	Arroe,	

The T A B L E.

Arroe, <i>an Island of Denmark</i>	283
Asoph <i>taken by the Russians,</i>	121
<i>surrendred to the Turks again</i>	123
Aurora Borealis, <i>or the Northern Light</i>	367

B

Barents, William, <i>his Attempts to discover</i> <i>a North East Passage</i>	376
Batogs, <i>a Russian Punishment</i>	148
Belozero, <i>a Russian Province</i>	31
Belgorod, <i>a Province of Russia, the Ca-</i> <i>pital of the same Name</i>	41
Bennet, Capt. <i>his Expedition to Cherry-</i> <i>Island</i>	382
Berghen, <i>a Province of Norway, the</i> <i>Capital of the same Name</i>	296
Bleking, <i>a Province of Sweden</i>	166
Bornholm, <i>a Danish Island in the Baltick</i>	283
Boroughs, Captain, <i>his Attempt to discover</i> <i>a North-East Passage to India</i>	375
Bremen and Verden <i>transferr'd to Han-</i> <i>nover</i>	164, 353, 357
Bulgar, <i>a Province of Russia, the Capital</i> <i>of the same Name</i>	40

The T A B L E.

C

Calmar, a Port of Sweden	166
Calmuck Tartars <i>subject to Russia</i>	135
Carelia, a Province <i>surrendred to the Russians by the Swedes</i>	189
Carolstat, the Capital of Wormlandia in Sweden	167
Casan, a Province of Russia, the Capital of the same Name	39
Carlescroon, the Harbour where the Swedish Fleet is laid up	166
Chancellor, Captain, his Discovery of the Bay of Archangel in Russia	81
Charles Gustavus Conquers several Danish Provinces	230
Charles XI. King of Sweden, made an absolute Prince	232
Charles XII. King of Sweden	233
Cherry Island, in 74 Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude	382
Christianople, a Province of Bleking in Sweden	166
Christiana, Queen of Sweden, resigns her Crown	23
Christian Religion planted in Sweden by the English	249
Colmogorod, a City of Russia	10
Columnia, a City of Russia	39
Copenhagen; the Capital of Denmark describ'd	277
Vol. VI.	O o o
	Cossacks

The T A B L E.

Cossacks <i>between the Palus Meotis and the River Don</i>	41, 134
Cronenburgh Castle <i>in the Sound</i>	280
Cronslot Island, <i>the Rendezvous of the Russian Fleet</i>	20
Czar <i>travels to the Courts of Europe</i>	95
<i>An Abstract of his Life and Actions</i>	119
Czarina <i>declar'd Successor to the Czar</i>	125
<i>Her Person &c. describ'd</i>	127
Czernihow, or Zernigof, <i>a Province of Russia</i>	42

D

Daleburg, <i>the Capital of Dalia in Sweden</i>	167
Dalecarlia, <i>a Province of Old Sweden</i>	168
Dalia, <i>a Province of West Gothland</i>	165
Danes and Swedes <i>the last War between them</i>	347
Delmenhorst, <i>a Province in Germany, belonging to Denmark</i>	292
DENMARK, <i>the Situation and Boundaries</i>	271
<i>The Air and Seasons</i>	272
<i>The Seas, particularly the Sound</i>	273
<i>Grand Division of Denmark</i>	277
<i>Provinces and chief Towns</i>	ibid.
<i>Dutchies</i>	

The T A B L E

<i>Dutchies of Sleswick and Holstein</i>	286,
	289
<i>Norway divided into four Provinces</i>	293
<i>Iceland, the Situation and Extent</i>	296
<i>Persons and Habits of the Danes</i>	298
<i>Their Genius and Temper</i>	298, 300
<i>Their Food and Liquors</i>	300
<i>Travelling and Diversions</i>	301
<i>Nature of the Soil, Plants and Animals</i>	302
<i>Their Manufactures and Trade</i>	306
<i>Forces of the King of Denmark</i>	307
<i>Revenues of the Crown</i>	310
<i>Coins, Weights and Measures</i>	313
<i>Courts of Justice and Laws</i>	314
<i>A further Account of their Laws</i>	413
<i>Religion and Universities</i>	317
<i>Marriages and Funerals</i>	320
<i>Constitution Antient and Modern of the Kingdom of Denmark</i>	321, 323
<i>Succession of the Danish Princes</i>	332
<i>Denmark and Norway United</i>	336
<i>Swedes throw off the Danish Yoke</i>	ibid.
<i>The Reformation begun in Denmark</i>	338
<i>The King of Denmark Seizes the Duke of Holstein's Territories</i>	338
<i>The late War between Denmark and Sweden</i>	347
<i>Bremen and Verden transferr'd to Hanover</i>	353

The T A B L E.

<i>The Treaty of Peace between Denmark and Sweden, Anno 1720</i>	356
<i>Arms of the King of Denmark</i>	357
<i>His Stile and Family</i>	358
<i>Nobility, and Orders of Knighthood</i>	359
<i>The Condition of Denmark, with Relation to other Powers of Europe</i>	361
<i>Denmark and Sweden make Peace</i>	357
<i>Discoveries Northern</i>	372
<i>Ditmarsh, a Province belonging to Denmark</i>	290
<i>Donetskoi, the chief Town of the Don Cossacks</i>	42
<i>Don Cossacks, their Situation</i>	41
<i>Dorpt, a City of Livonia</i>	27
<i>Drontheim, a Province of Norway</i>	294
<i>Dunamunder Fort in Livonia</i>	28
<i>Dwina, two Rivers of that Name in the Russian Dominions</i>	6

E

<i>Edge and Pool, their Voyages to Cherry Island and Greenland</i>	384
<i>Edward VI. King of England, Commissions his Subjects to make new Discoveries</i>	82
<i>Elfinor, a Town on the narrowest part of the Sound</i>	280
<i>Enköping, a Province of Sweden</i>	173

The T A B L E.

F

Falster, <i>an Island of Denmark</i>	282
Fero, <i>Islands</i>	305
Finland, <i>a Province of Sweden</i>	14
<i>Most of it restor'd to Sweden by the Mos-</i> <i>covites on the last Peace</i>	161
Fredericksburgh, <i>a Town of Denmark</i>	280
Frederickshall, <i>the King of Sweden kill'd</i> <i>before it</i>	355
Frozen Ocean, <i>no Passage through it, either</i> <i>to the East or West</i>	4
Funen, <i>one of the most considerable Islands of</i> <i>Denmark</i>	281

G

Gestricia, <i>a Province of Sweden</i>	168
Gevalia, <i>the Capital of Gestricia in Sweden</i>	174
Gluckstat, <i>a City of Germany belonging to</i> <i>the Dane</i>	291
Gothland, <i>a Province of Sweden</i>	164
Gothland <i>Island</i>	190
Gottenburgh, <i>the Capital of West Goth-</i> <i>land</i>	167
Gottorp, <i>a City of Sleswick, the Residence</i> <i>of the Duke of Holstein</i>	287
GREENLAND <i>describ'd</i>	364, 372
<i>Belongs to Britain</i>	385
	The

The T A B L E

<i>The Right to it contested by the Dutch</i>	386
<i>An Examination of the Right the Dutch have to the Whale and Herring Fishery, and to their Foreign Settlements</i>	426
Gustavus Adolphus	239

H

Halland, a Province of Sweden	166
Halmstat, the Capital of Halland in Swe- den	167
Hannover, purchases Bremen and Verden	353
Hedmora, the chief Town of Dalecarlia	174
Helsingburgh, a Town upon the Sound	166
Helsingia, a Province of Sweden	168
Hesse, Prince of, elected King of Sweden	240
Holstein, Dutchy, describ'd	289
Holstein, seiz'd by the Dane	338 346
Huena, an Island of Sweden	191
Hundswickwald, the Capital of Helsingia	174

I

Jenkoping, a Town in Gothland	166
Jeresslaw, a Province of Russia	33
Ilmen Lake	4
	Ingria,

The T A B L E.

Ingria, <i>a Province of Russia</i>	16, 162
Irtis River	6

K

Kafikermen, <i>a Town in Budziack Tartary, near the Mouth of the Nieper</i>	
	43
Knout, <i>a Russian Punishment</i>	149

L

Ladoga Lake	5
Landscreon, <i>a Town in Gothland</i>	166
Lapland, Russian	11
<i>Sir Hugh Willoughby lost there</i>	85
Laplanders, <i>their Skill in Magick enquir'd into</i>	180
Lapland, Swedish	164
Livonia, <i>the Situation and chief Towns</i>	25
<i>Yielded to the Moscovites</i>	162
Lunden, <i>a City of Gothland in Sweden</i>	166

M

Magick of the Laplanders examined	180, 185
Malmo, <i>a Port Town of Sweden</i>	166
Marienstat, <i>a Town of Sweden</i>	167
Meseen, <i>a Province of Moscovy</i>	8
Mona,	

The T A B L E.

Mona, <i>an Island of Denmark</i>	282
Morses, or Sea-Horses, <i>taken in the North Seas</i>	381
Moscow, <i>a Province of Russia</i>	34
Moscow City, <i>the Capital of the Province</i>	ibid.
Moscovy, <i>see RUSSIA.</i>	I

N

Narva, <i>a Town of Livonia</i>	25
Nericia, <i>a Province of Sweden</i>	168
Nieper, or Boristhenes River	6
Norkoping, <i>a Town of Sweden</i>	167
<i>Northern Crowns united</i>	336
<i>Northern Discoveries first made by the English</i>	372
Norway, <i>invaded by Charles XII. of Sweden</i>	354
Norway, <i>describ'd</i>	272, 293
Norway <i>and Denmark united</i>	336
Notteburgh, <i>a Town in Ingria, near Petersburgh</i>	16
Novogrod, <i>a Province of Russia, the capital City of the same Name</i>	29
Novogrod Nise, or Little Novogorod, <i>a Province of Russia</i>	39
Nycopping, <i>the Capital of Indermania in Sweden</i>	173

The T A B L E.

O

Oby River, <i>the Boundary of Asia and Europe</i>	6
Ocean, Frozen	4
Oeland, <i>an Island of Sweden</i>	191
Oldenburgh, <i>Family, made Sovereigns of Denmark</i>	336
Onega Lake	6

P

Parnaw, <i>a Town of Livonia</i>	27
Perisslaw, <i>a City and Province of Russia</i>	38
Permia, <i>a Province of Russia</i>	10
Peter, <i>the Great Emperor of Russia</i>	119
Petersburgh, <i>the Capital of Russia</i>	17
Pett and Jackman, <i>their Attempt to discover a North East Passage to India</i>	376
Pine, <i>a Russian Torture</i>	149
Pleskow, <i>a Province of Russia</i>	31
Pomerania, <i>Swedish, parcell'd out among the neighbouring Princes</i>	164, 189
Poole's Expedition to Greenland	382
Pruth Battle	123
Pultowa Battle	ibid;

R

Reformation begun in Sweden	250
Rezan, <i>a Province of Moscovy</i>	40
Ripen, <i>a Province of North Jutland</i>	285
Vol. VI.	P p p
	Rostow

The T A B L E.

Rostow, a Province of Russia, the Capital of the same Name	38
Rubininska, a Province of Russia	11
Rugen Island, situate over against Strals- fund in the Swedish Pomerania	192

RUSSIA, or MOSCOVY, the Situation and Extent of it

The Climate	2
The Seas of Moscovy	4
The Lakes and Rivers	5
The Provinces and chief Towns	7
The City of Petersburg	17
The City of Mosco	34
The Persons and Habits of the Russians	44, 45
Their Genius and Temper	46
Food and Liquors	51
Salutations and Ceremonies	53
Bathing, Exercises and Diversions	55
Dwarfs and Jesters	58
Festivals	59
The first Voyages to Russia	81
King Edward VI. his general Letters to all Princes to invite them to traffick with his People	82
The first Patent to the Russia Company granted by Philip and Mary	87
The late Czar Peter's Attempts to im- prove Navigation	96, 99
The Advantages and Disadvantages of the Russians in point of Trade	100
Their	

The T A B L E.

<i>Their Coins</i>	105
<i>The Arms and Imperial Stile of Russia</i>	107
<i>The antient and present Constitution of the Government</i>	110
<i>The Succession of their Princes for the last seven hundred Years</i>	115
<i>An Abstract of the late Czar's Life and Actions</i>	119
<i>The late Czarina, an Account of her</i>	126
<i>The Nobility of Russia</i>	128
<i>Their Councils and Senate</i>	129
<i>Their Forces</i>	130
<i>The Revenues of the Empire</i>	137
<i>The Civil Government, Laws and Punishments in Russia</i>	144
<i>Their Language and Characters</i>	151
<i>Their Religion</i>	154
<i>Their Marriages and Funerals</i>	159
<i>Russia New, a Province of Russia</i>	31

S

<i>St. Nicholas, a Port of Russia</i>	10
<i>Scandinavia, part of the antient Scythia</i>	321
<i>Scara, a Town of Sweden</i>	167
<i>Seefsk, a Province of Russia, the Capital of the same Name</i>	42
<i>Shippund, a Swedish Weight of 300 lb.</i>	204

The T A B L E.

<i>Sleswick Dutchy, under the Dominion of the</i>	
<i>Dane and the Duke of Holstein</i>	286
<i>Smaland, a Province of Gothland in Swe-</i>	
<i>den</i>	165
<i>Smolensko, a Province of Russia</i>	34
<i>Sound, the Strait at the Entrance of the</i>	
<i>Baltick</i>	273
<i>Staria, a Province of Russia</i>	31
<i>Stralsund, the chief Town of Swedish Po-</i>	
<i>merania</i>	189, 353
<i>Suderkoping, a Town of Sweden</i>	167
<i>Sudermania, a Province of Sweden</i>	167
<i>Susdal, a Province of Russia, the Capital</i>	
<i>of the same Name</i>	38

SWEDEN, the Boundaries and Extent of it

<i>Ingria, Livonia, and most of the Ger-</i>	
<i>man Provinces lost</i>	162
<i>The Mountains, Rivers, Lakes and Seas</i>	
<i>of Sweden</i>	162
<i>The Air and Seasons</i>	163
<i>Grand Division of Sweden</i>	164
<i>Provinces and chief Towns</i>	167
<i>Swedish Lapland</i>	174
<i>Mines of Lapland</i>	177
<i>Magick of the Laplanders</i>	180
<i>Swedish Pomerania</i>	189
<i>Swedish Islands</i>	190
<i>Persons and Habits of the Swedes</i>	193
<i>Their Genius and Temper</i>	194
<i>Food and Exercises</i>	197
	<i>Page</i>

The T A B L E.

<i>Face of the Country and Nature of the Soil</i>	199
<i>Fruits and Trees</i>	200
<i>Animals</i>	201
<i>Mines and Manufactures of Sweden</i>	203
<i>Forces of Sweden</i>	210
<i>Revenues</i>	217
<i>The Antient Constitution of Sweden</i>	219
<i>The four Estates</i>	221
<i>The King made absolute</i>	226
<i>Gustavus Adolphus</i>	230
<i>Queen Christina</i>	230
<i>The Crown becomes Elective again</i>	235
<i>Limitations put upon the Sovereign</i>	238
<i>Prince of Hesse elected King</i>	240
<i>The Senate, Councils, and Courts of Justice</i>	242
<i>Religion of Sweden</i>	249
<i>Their Learning and Universities</i>	257
<i>Their Marriages and Funerals</i>	259
<i>The Arms and Stile of the Kings of Sweden</i>	262
<i>Duke of Holstein next in Blood</i>	263
<i>Difficulties of the Swedes, as to the Succession</i>	264
<i>The Interest of Sweden, in relation to other Courts</i>	266
<i>Sweden Proper, a Province of Sweden</i>	167
<i>Swedish Lapland</i>	174
<i>Syrianes, a Province of Russia</i>	10

The T A B L E.

T

Tonninghen, a Town of Sleswick, belonging to the Duke of Holstein	2
Torne, a Province of Lapland, the Capital of the same Name	176
Trade of England with Russia	104
Tweer, a Province of Russia	33

V

Verden and Bremen, late Swedish Provinces, now annex'd to Hanover	164 353
Veronize, a City of Russia	41
Veronize, a River of Russia, made navigable, whereby a Communication is made between the Don and the Wolga	ibid.
Ukrain, a Frontier Province of Moscovy to- wards Turkey	42
Ulrica Eleonora elected Queen of Sweden	235
Uma, a Town of West Bothnia in Sweden	174
Upland, a Province of Sweden	166
Usedom, an Island in the Baltick, at the Mouth of the River Oder	192

W

Wardhuys, or Finmark, usally call'd the Norwegian Lapland, being the most Nor- thern Province of Norway	293
Wermeland, a Province of Sweden	165
Westmania, a Province of Sweden	168
A Whale Fishery first establish'd by the English	381
White	

The T A B L E.

White Sea, <i>or Bay of Archangel</i>	74
White Lake	6
Wiburg, <i>a Province of Jutland</i>	284
Wiburg, <i>the chief Town of Carelia, now under the Dominion of Moscovy</i>	15
Willoughby, Sr. Hugh, <i>his Voyage for Northern Discoveries</i>	81, 85
Wisby, <i>the Capital of the Island of Gothland</i>	190
Witchcraft of the Laplanders enquired into	180
	185
Wollin, <i>an Island in the Baltick at the Mouth of the River Oder</i>	192
Wolga River	6
Wolodimer, <i>a Province of Moscovy, the Capital City of the same Name</i>	38
Wologda, <i>a Province of Moscovy, whereof Wologda City is the Capital</i>	32

Z

Zeland, <i>the chief Island of Denmark, on which Copenhagen stands</i>	277
Zernigof, <i>or Czernihow, a Province of Russia</i>	42

F I N I S.

